DBR AUTOMATION

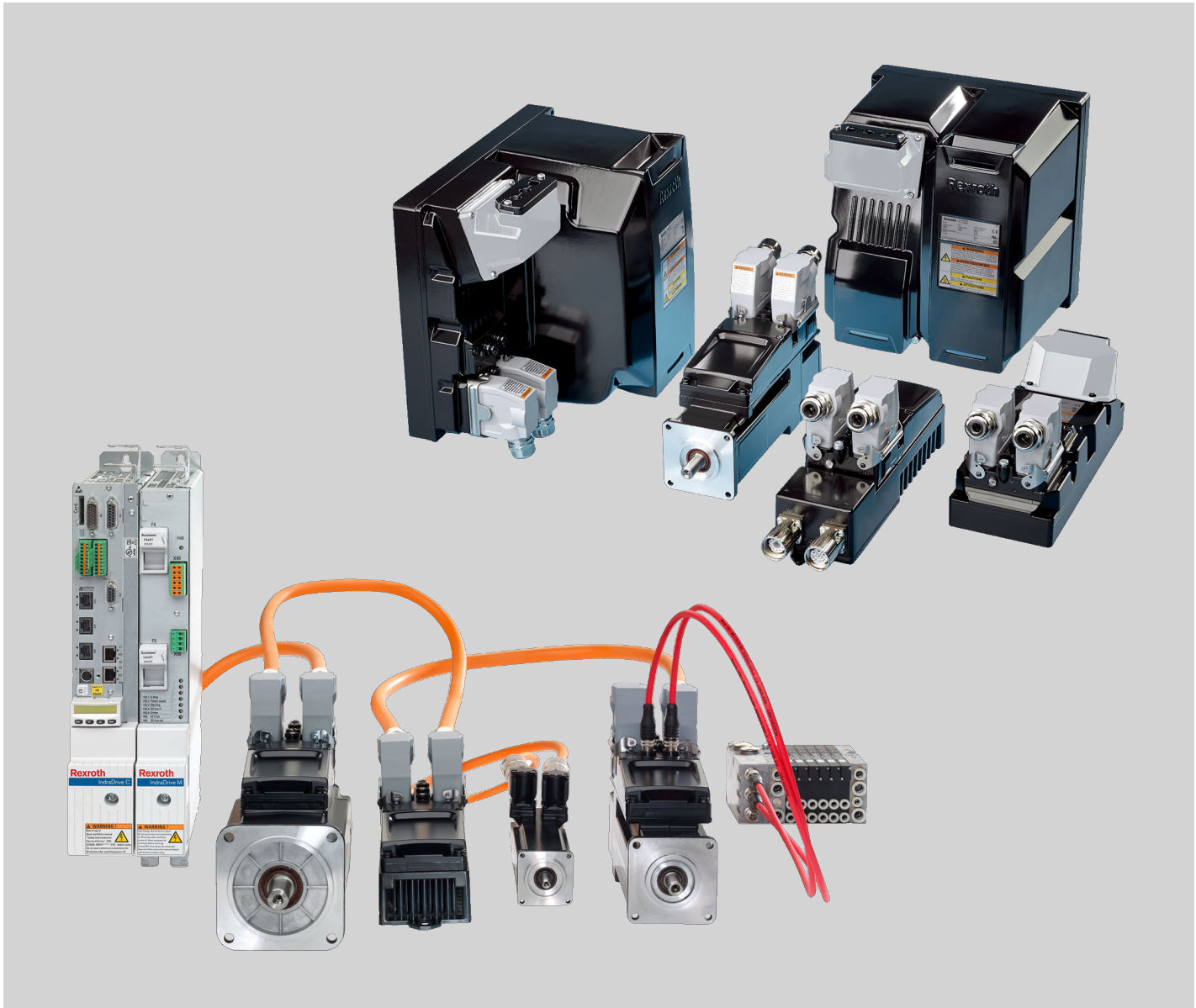
rexroth
A Bosch Company

IndraDrive Mi

Drive Systems with
KCU02, KSM02, KMS02/03, KMV03, KNK03, KLC03

Project Planning Manual
R911335703

Edition 05



Title	IndraDrive Mi Drive Systems with KCU02, KSM02, KMS02/03, KMV03, KNK03, KLC03
Type of Documentation	Project Planning Manual
Document Typecode	DOK-INDRV*-KCU02+KSM02-PR05-EN-P
Internal File Reference	RS-447a9cdbb5102eb30a6846a001f6e846-5-en-US-4
Record of Revisions	See chapter 1.4.1 "Editions" on page 26.
Copyright	
Liability	The specified data is intended for product description purposes only and shall not be deemed to be a guaranteed characteristic unless expressly stipulated in the contract. All rights are reserved with respect to the content of this documentation and the availability of the product.
Editorial Department	Engineering Drives [JoGo, HoSc, ArFe, ReMa (UdSt; BaBo)]

Table of Contents

Page

Page

Page

Page

Page

Page

Page

Page

Page

Page

1 System presentation

1.1 Introduction

1.1.1 IndraDrive Mi

IndraDrive Mi is an innovative system solution within the Rexroth IndraDrive platform with

- **KSM02** motor-integrated servo drives

  ⇒ Synchronous servo motors (on the basis of Rexroth IndraDyn S) with integrated inverters and control sections
- **KMS02** and **KMS03** near motor servo drives

  ⇒ Very compact inverters with control sections
- **KCU02** drive connection box

  ⇒ Component used to connect the servo drives to supply units or converters
- **KMV03** supply unit

  ⇒ Component used to supply servo drives
- **KNK03** mains filter (with integrated mains choke)

  ⇒ Mains connection component for KMV03 supply units
- **KLC03** DC bus capacitor unit

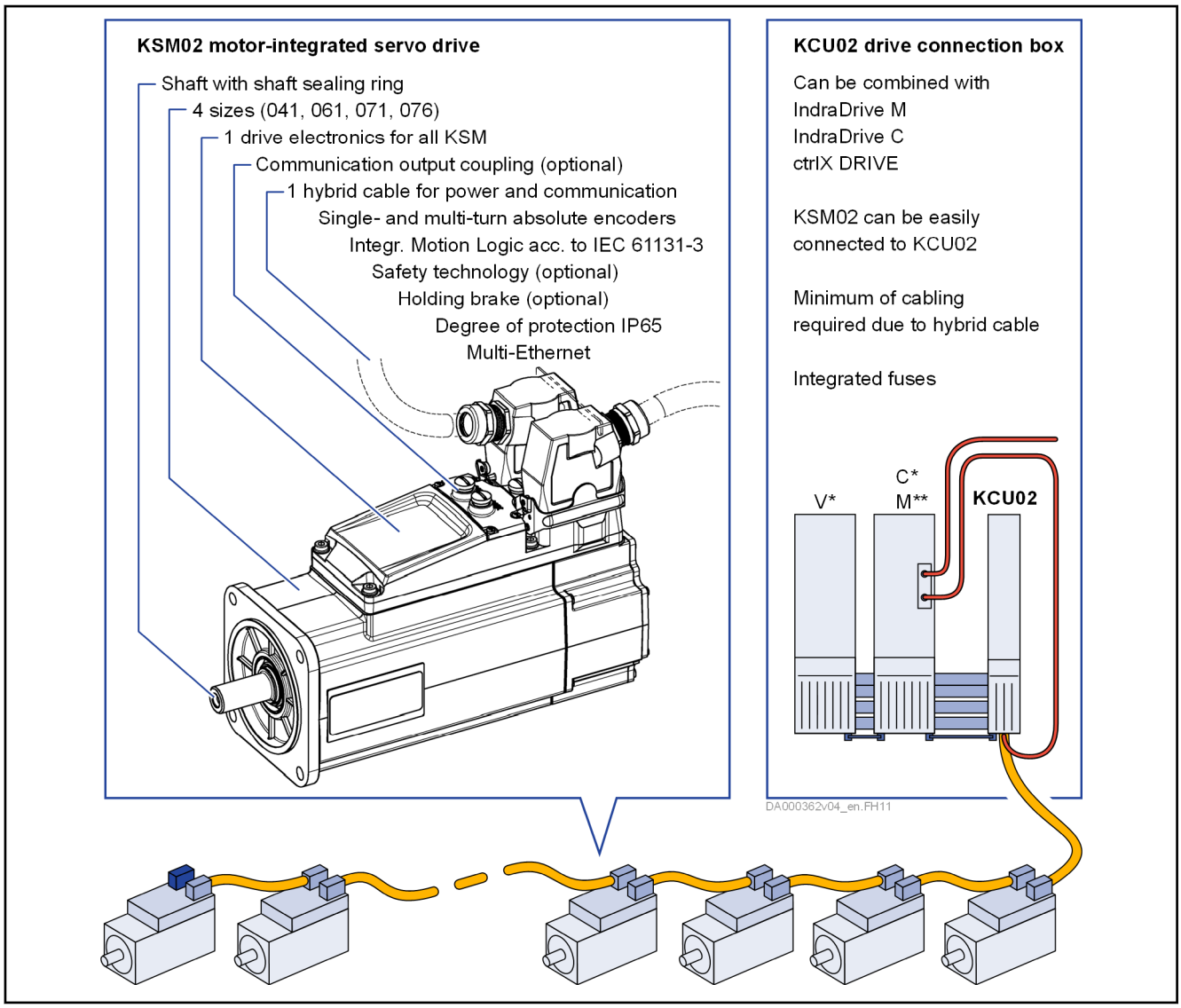
  ⇒ Component used to buffer the DC bus voltage

Components of the IndraDrive Mi product range allow a drive system to be designed **without** a control cabinet.

Supplying the drives with supply units (such as HMV or XVR) or drive controllers (such as HCS or XCS) requires a control cabinet.

1.1.2 Features

KSM02 motor-integrated servo drive

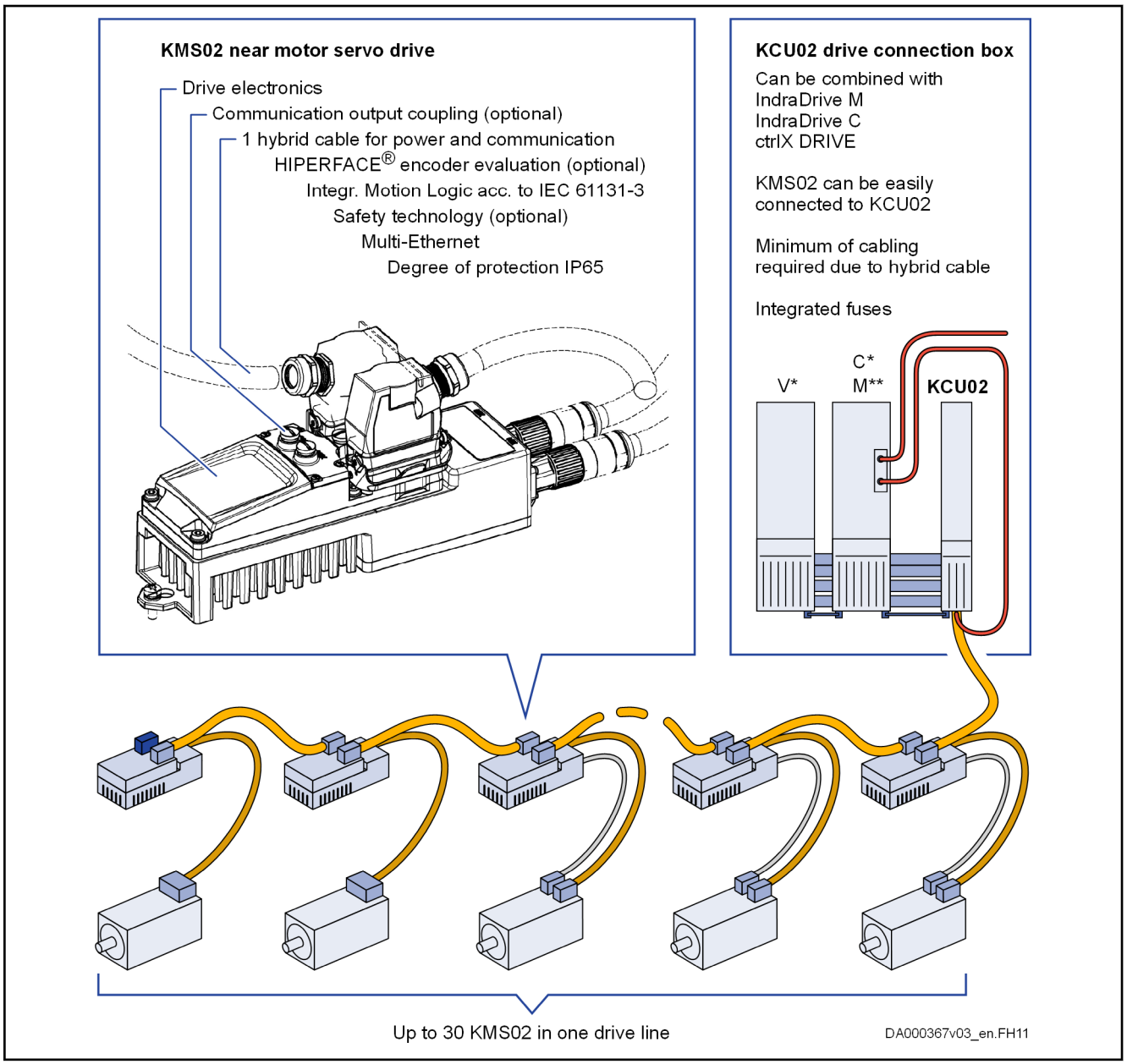


* The drives are supplied with power via supply units (V*: HMV, XVR, …) or converters (C*: HCS, XCS, …); alternative power supply: KMV

** Inverters (M**: HMS/XMS, HMD/XMD): optional

Fig. 1-1: IndraDrive Mi with KSM02 – Features

KMS02 near motor servo drive

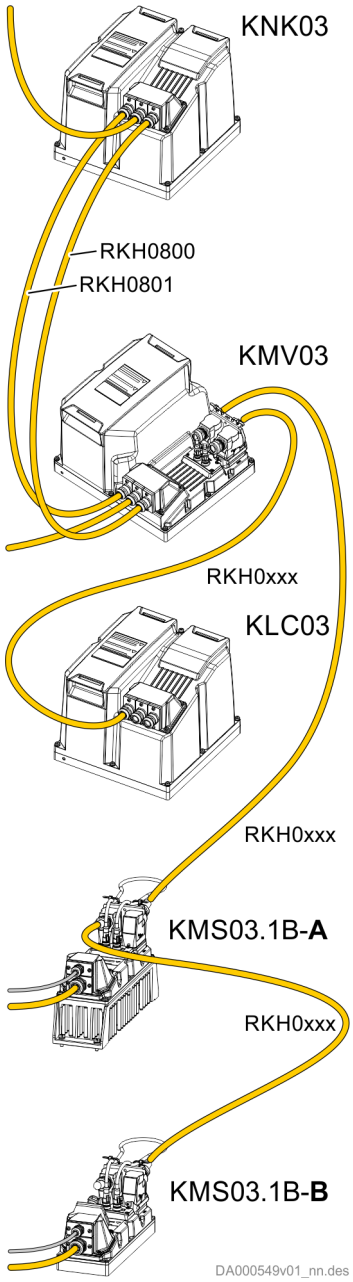


* The drives are supplied with power via supply units (V*: HMV, XVR, …) or converters (C*: HCS, XCS, …); alternative power supply: KMV

** Inverters (M**: HMS, XMS, HMD, XMD, …): optional

Fig. 1-2: IndraDrive Mi with KMS02 – Features

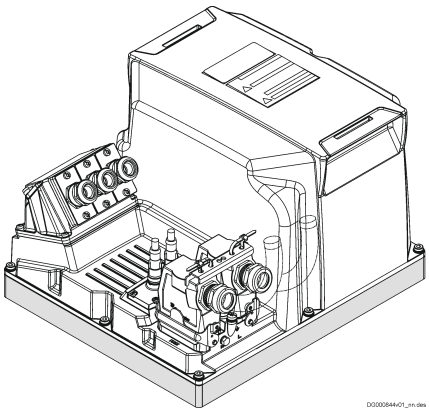
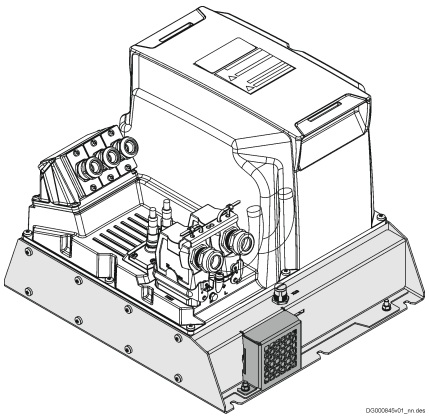
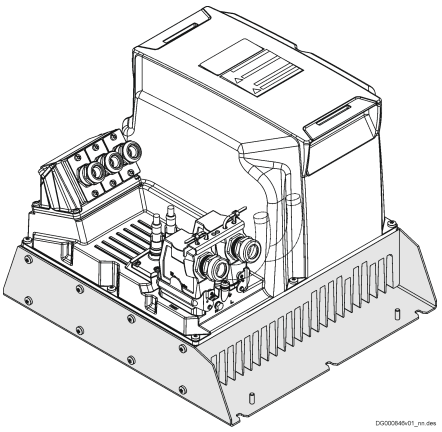
KNK03 mains filter, KMV03 supply unit, KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit, KMS03 near motor servo drive

Components	Features
	**Cabinet free, distributed drive technology** *KNK03, mains filter* • Degree of protection IP65 • Integrated mains choke • Integrated mains contactor • Cooling types: natural convection, forced cooling with fan, cold plate mounting, insulated mounting *KMV03, supply unit* • Degree of protection IP65 • Integrated brake chopper • Multi-Ethernet communication • KSM02 and KMS02 can also be supplied • Cooling types: natural convection, forced cooling with fan, cold plate mounting, insulated mounting *KLC03, DC bus capacitor unit* • Degree of protection IP65 • Integrated overload protection • Cooling types: natural convection, forced cooling with fan, cold plate mounting *KMS03, near motor servo drive* • Degree of protection IP65 • With heat sink (KMS03.1B-**A**) • With thermal interface for cold plate mounting (KMS03.1B-**B**) • MultiEncoder interface: Hiperface, Endat 2.1/2.2, SSI, Safety 4 Wire, 1 V_{pp} • 4 digital inputs and outputs, two thereof can be used as fast probe inputs • Multi-Ethernet communication • External Multi-Ethernet communication (optional) • Multi-Ethernet communication output coupling (optional) • Safe Torque Off or Safe Motion safety technology (optional) • Integrated Motion Logic in accordance with IEC 61131-3

Components	Features
	RKH, hybrid cable • *RKH0xxx* – DC bus connection – Control voltage and signal exchange cable – Communication cable • *RKH0800* – Mains voltage – Mains contactor • *RKH0801* – Mains choke – Mains voltage synchronization • The hybrid cable is supplied in ready-made form with connectors. The bulk cable (hybrid cable without connector) is named **REH0800** (hybrid cable incl. communication) or **REH0803** (hybrid cable without communication; devices with external communication (ES option) use separate cables for communication).

Tab. 1-1: IndraDrive Mi with KMS03 – Features

Cooling types

Thermal interface (cold plate, insulated mounting)	Forced cooling	Natural convection
		

Tab. 1-2: Cooling types (example: KMV03)

Maximum number of drives per drive line

Power supply	Drive	Maximum number
HMV, XVR, … supply unit HCS, XCS, … converter	KSM02, KMS02, KMS03	≤ 30 [1)]
KMV03 supply unit	KSM02, KMS02, KMS03	≤ 14 [1)]

1) The maximum number of drives per drive line depends on the following factors: DC bus power, power requirement of control voltage, Y-capacitance and leakage capacitance of axes, cable lengths. The module bus always limits the maximum number to 30.

Tab. 1-3: Maximum number of drives per drive line

1.2 IndraDrive Mi drive system

1.2.1 Components

KCU02 drive connection box

The KCU02 drive connection box

- supplies the KSM motor-integrated servo drives and KMS near motor servo drives
  - with power (from the DC bus connection to a supply unit or converter)
  - with 42V control voltage
- with integrated fuses protects the RKH hybrid cable against electric overload
- allows the higher-level control unit to communicate with the KSM motor-integrated servo drives and KMS near motor servo drives

⇒ chapter "KSM02 motor-integrated servo drive" on page 2

⇒ chapter "KMS02 near motor servo drive" on page 3

KMV03 supply unit

The KMV03 supply unit

- supplies the KSM motor-integrated servo drives and KMS near motor servo drives
  - with power
  - with 42V control voltage
- allows the higher-level control unit to communicate with the KSM motor-integrated servo drives and KMS near motor servo drives

⇒ chapter "KNK03 mains filter, KMV03 supply unit, KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit, KMS03 near motor servo drive" on page 4.

KNK03 mains filter

Mains filters reduce radio interference and mains pollution.

⇒ chapter "KNK03 mains filter, KMV03 supply unit, KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit, KMS03 near motor servo drive" on page 4.

KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit

DC bus capacitor units buffer energy in the DC bus of the drive system.

⇒ chapter "KNK03 mains filter, KMV03 supply unit, KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit, KMS03 near motor servo drive" on page 4.

KSM motor-integrated servo drive

The KSM motor-integrated servo drive consists of:

- Servo motor (on the basis of Rexroth IndraDyn S)
- Drive electronics, consisting of control section and power section

⇒ chapter "KSM02 motor-integrated servo drive" on page 2

KMS near motor servo drive

The KMS near motor servo drive consists of control section and power section.

⇒ chapter "KMS02 near motor servo drive" on page 3

RKH hybrid cable

The RKH hybrid cable replaces the following individual cables:

- DC bus connection
- Control voltage and signal exchange cable
- Communication cable

  (Devices with external communication (ES option) use separate cables for communication. For this case, hybrid cables without communication lines are available.)

The hybrid cable is supplied in ready-made form with connectors.

The bulk cable (hybrid cable without connector) is named **REH0800** (hybrid cable incl. communication) or **REH0803** (hybrid cable without communication).

⇒ chapter 5.9 "RKH hybrid cable" on page 117

1.2.2 Series

See section "Type code"

- KCU02 drive connection box
- KSM02 motor-integrated servo drive
- KMS02 near motor servo drive
- KMS03 near motor servo drive
- KMV03 supply unit
- KNK03 mains filter
- KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit

1.2.3 Firmware

Firmware required to operate an IndraDrive Mi drive system:

Product Series	Supported from firmware version
KSM02	MPB-17V08 "Safe Motion" safety technology: MPB-18V08
KMS02	MPB-17V10 "Safe Motion" safety technology: MPB-18V08
KMS03	MPB-20VRS
KMV03	PSB-20VRS

Tab. 1-4: Required firmware versions

1.2.4 System structure

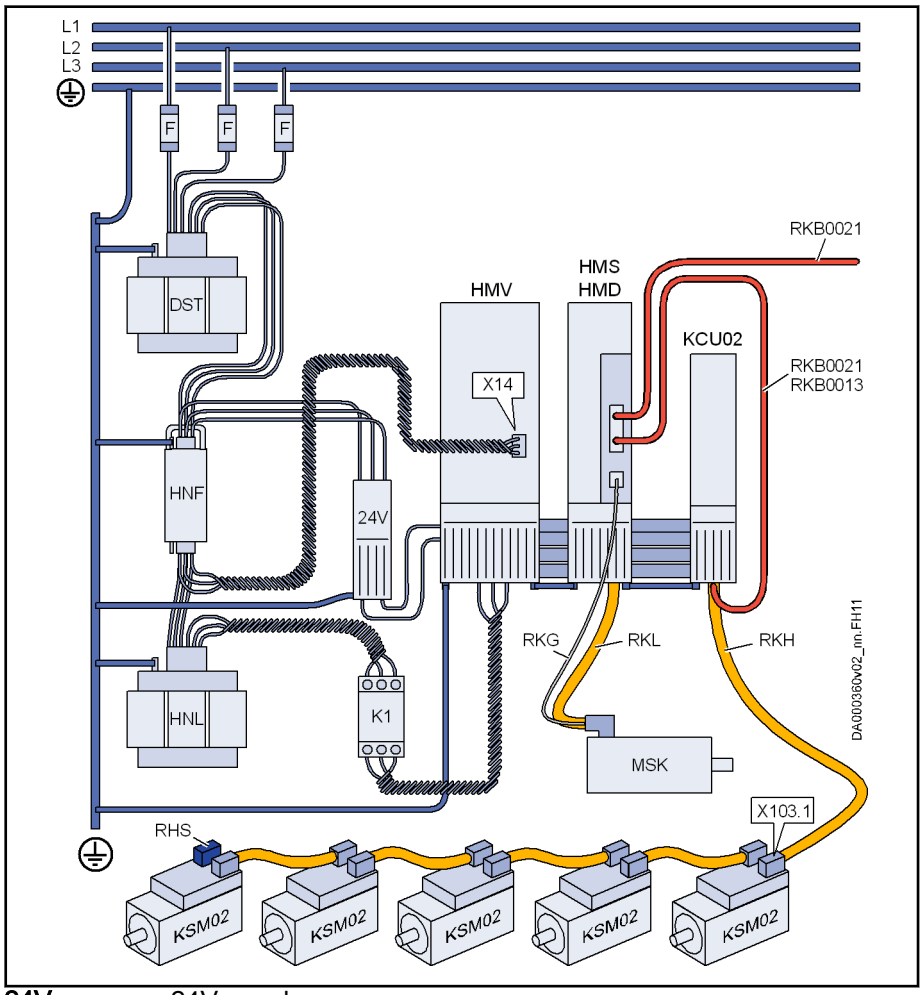
The supply unit that is used significantly defines the system structure.

Possible supply units:

- IndraDrive **HMV01.1E/R** or **HMV02.1R supply unit**
- IndraDrive **HCS02.1E** or **HCS03.1E converter**
- IndraDrive **converter HCS01.1E-W0054 + HAS05.1-023**
- IndraDrive **KMV03.1R supply unit**
- ctrlX DRIVE **XVE/XVR supply unit**
- ctrlX DRIVE **XCS/XCD converter**

☞ The IndraDrive Mi drive system in the figure below contains KSM motor-integrated servo drives. This system structure also applies to IndraDrive Mi drive systems with KMS near motor servo drives.

IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV01 supply unit:



24V	24V supply
DST	Transformer (optional)
F	Fuses
HMD, HMS	Inverter (optional)
HMV01	Supply unit
HNF	Mains filter
HNL	Mains choke
K1	Mains contactor (only for supply units without integrated mains contactor, e.g. HMV01.1R-W0120)
KCU02	Drive connection box
KSM02	Motor-integrated servo drive (alternative: KMS02 near motor servo drive and motor)
MSK	Servo motor (optional)
RHS	Terminal connector
RKB0021	Ethernet cable of variable length
RKB0013	Ethernet cable of defined length (max. 0.55 m)
RKG	Encoder cable (optional)
RKH	Hybrid cable
RKL	Motor cable (optional)
X14	Mains synchronization (only with regenerative HMVs)
X103.1	Connection of RKH hybrid cable at first KSM02

Fig. 1-3: IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV01

Illustrations of IndraDrive Mi drive systems with different supply units:

- HMV01:

  fig. 9-4 "IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV01" on page 297
- HMV02:

  fig. 9-7 " IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV02" on page 300
- HCS01:

  fig. 9-8 "IndraDrive Mi system with HCS01.1E-W0054" on page 301
- HCS02:

  fig. 9-5 "IndraDrive Mi drive system with HCS02" on page 298
- HCS03:

  fig. 9-6 "IndraDrive Mi drive system with HCS03" on page 299
- KMV03:

  fig. 9-10 "IndraDrive Mi drive system with KNK03, KMV03, KMS03" on page 303
- ctrlX DRIVE

  fig. 9-9 "IndraDrive Mi drive system with ctrlX DRIVE" on page 302

1.2.5 Overview of functions

Firmware functions (functional packages)

For the available firmware functions, see chapter "Functional packages" in the Functional Description of the firmware used.

Hardware-related functional restrictions as compared to drive controllers with separate control sections:

- Safety technology: not all safety functions available
- No analog inputs or outputs
- No digital and analog I/O extensions
- No additional encoder evaluations or encoder emulations

1.3 Type code

1.3.1 Introduction

The type code is the basis of each purchase order of a Rexroth product.

The type code unequivocally describes all variants:

- **KSM02** motor-integrated servo drive
- **KMS02/KMS03** near motor servo drive
- **KCU02** drive connection box
- **KMV03** supply unit
- **KNK03** mains filter
- **KLC03** DC bus capacitor unit
- **MPB/PSB** firmware (observe the allowed firmware versions; see chapter 1.2.3 "Firmware" on page 10).

Product selection information

For product selection and purchase order, take the following aspects into account:

- Observe detailed information and instructions in chapter 5 "Technical data of the components" on page 63 and chapter 7 "Notes on project planning" on page 225
- Before placing a purchase order, have our sales representative check whether individual options are available

The figure illustrates the basic structure of the type code. Our sales representative will help you with the current status of available versions.

1.3.2 KSM02 motor-integrated servo drive

KSM02 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	S	M	0	2	.	1	B	-	0	6	1	C	-	3	5	N	-	M	1	-	H	P	0	-	E	T	-	N	N	-	D	7	-	N	N	-	F	W	
	①			②			③	④		⑤			⑥		⑦		⑧		⑨			⑩	⑪	⑫		⑬			⑭			⑮			⑯			⑰		

①	**Product:** KSM = KSM
②	**Series:** 02 = 2
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Performance:** B = Basic
⑤	**Size:** 041 = Size 041 061 = Size 061 071 = Size 071 076 = Size 076
⑥	**Length:** C = Length C
⑦	**Winding:** 24 = Winding 24 35 = Winding 35 42 = Winding 42 61 = Winding 61
⑧	**Cooling type:** N = Natural convection
⑨	**Encoder:** S1 = Optical encoder, Hiperface single-turn, 128 signal periods S3 = Capacitive encoder, Hiperface single-turn, 16 signal periods M1 = Optical encoder, Hiperface multi-turn absolute, 128 signal periods M3 = Capacitive encoder, Hiperface multi-turn absolute, 16 signal periods
⑩	**Electrical connection:** H = Connector, hybrid
⑪	**Shaft:** G = Plain shaft with shaft sealing ring P = Shaft with keyway according to DIN 6885-1 with shaft sealing ring

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	S	M	0	2	.	1	B	-	0	6	1	C	-	3	5	N	-	M	1	-	H	P	0	-	E	T	-	N	N	-	D	7	-	N	N	-	F	W	
	①			②			③	④		⑤			⑥		⑦		⑧		⑨			⑩	⑪	⑫		⑬			⑭			⑮			⑯			⑰		

⑫	**Holding brake:** 0 = Without holding brake 2 = Holding brake, DC 24 V, electrically releasing
⑬	**Master communication:** ET = Multi-Ethernet
⑭	**Safety option:** L3 = Safe Torque Off (STO) NN = Without safety technology S3 = Safe Motion (without SBC) SD = Safe Motion (with SBC)
⑮	**Supply voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V
⑯	**Other design:** ES = External master communication Multi-Ethernet (2 × M12) NN = None TO = Multi-Ethernet output coupling (2 × M12)
⑰	**Firmware:** FW = Firmware has to be ordered as a separate subposition

Tab. 1-5: KSM02 type code

Size	Length	Winding			
		24	35	42	61
041	C	–	–	✓	–
061	C	–	✓	–	✓
071	C	✓	✓	–	–
076	C	–	✓	–	–

Tab. 1-6: Winding

Size	Other design					
	TO	NN	ES	AT	AN	AE
041	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
061	✓	✓	✓	–	–	–
071	✓	✓	✓	–	–	–
076	✓	✓	✓	–	–	–

Tab. 1-7: Other design

Encoder	Safety option			
	NN	L3	S3	SD
S1	✓	✓	✓	✓
M1	✓	✓	✓	✓
S3	✓	✓	–	–
M3	✓	✓	–	–

Tab. 1-8: Safety option

1.3.3 KMS02 near motor servo drive

KMS02 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	M	S	0	2	.	1	B	-	A	0	1	8	-	P	-	D	7	-	E	T	-	E	N	H	-	L	3	-	T	O	-	F	W							
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥				⑦		⑧			⑨			⑩				⑪			⑫			⑬									

①	**Product:** KMS = KMS
②	**Series:** 02 = 2
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Performance:** B = Basic
⑤	**Cooling type:** A = Natural convection (exterior heat sink)
⑥	**Maximum current:** 018 = 18 A
⑦	**Degree of protection:** P = IP65
⑧	**Nominal DC bus voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V
⑨	**Master communication:** ET = Multi-Ethernet
⑩	**Encoder interface:** ENH = Encoder Hiperface® NNN = Without [3) 4)] ENA = Encoder ACURO®link [3)]
⑪	**Safety option:** L3 = Safe Torque Off (STO) S3 = Safe Motion (without SBC) [1) 3)] SD = Safe Motion [1)] NN = Without

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	M	S	0	2	.	1	B	-	A	0	1	8	-	P	-	D	7	-	E	T	-	E	N	H	-	L	3	-	T	O	-	F	W							
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥				⑦		⑧			⑨			⑩				⑪			⑫			⑬								

⑫	**Other design:** NN = Without TO = Multi-Ethernet output coupling (2 × M12) ES = External master communication Multi-Ethernet (2 × M12) WN = Angular connector (motor and encoder connection) [2)] WT = Angular connector (motor and encoder connection), Multi-Ethernet output coupling (2 × M12) [2)] WE = Angular connector (motor and encoder connection), external master communication Multi-Ethernet (2 × M12) [2)]
⑬	**Firmware:** FW = Firmware has to be ordered as a separate subposition

1) Only if encoder interface = ENH, ENA
2) Only if encoder interface = ENH
3) Only if other design ≠ WN, WT, WE
4) Only if safety option = L3, NN

Tab. 1-9: KMS02 type code

1.3.4 KMS03 near motor servo drive

KMS03 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	M	S	0	3	.	1	B	-	A	0	3	6	-	P	-	D	7	-	E	T	-	E	N	D	-	L	3	-	T	O	-	F	W							
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥				⑦		⑧			⑨			⑩				⑪			⑫			⑬									

①	**Product:** KMS = KMS
②	**Series:** 03 = 3
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Performance:** B = Basic
⑤	**Cooling type:** A = Natural convection (exterior heat sink) B = Thermal interface
⑥	**Maximum current:** 036 = 36 A
⑦	**Degree of protection:** P = IP65
⑧	**Nominal DC bus voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V
⑨	**Master communication:** ET = Multi-Ethernet
⑩	**Encoder interface:** END = Encoder Hiperface and digital encoder
⑪	**Safety option:** L3 = Safe Torque Off (STO) SD = Safe Motion NN = Without

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	M	S	0	3	.	1	B	-	A	0	3	6	-	P	-	D	7	-	E	T	-	E	N	D	-	L	3	-	T	O	-	F	W							
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥				⑦		⑧			⑨			⑩				⑪			⑫			⑬								

⑫	**Other design:** ES = External master communication Multi-Ethernet (2 × M12) NN = Without TO = Multi-Ethernet output coupling (2 × M12) 1E = Ext. MCM, 1 cable mot. A M23 (external master communication Multi-Ethernet, single-cable motor connection M23, ACURO®link outgoing direction A) 1N = 1 cable mot. A M23 (single-cable motor connection M23, ACURO®link outgoing direction A) 1T = Outp. coup. MCM, 1 cable mot. A M23 (output coupling master communication Multi-Ethernet, single-cable motor connection M23, ACURO®link, outgoing direction A) 2E = Ext. MCM, 1 cable mot. B M23 (external master communication Multi-Ethernet, single-cable motor connection M23, ACURO®link, outgoing direction B) 2N = 1 cable mot. B M23 (single-cable motor connection M23, ACURO®link outgoing direction B) 2T = Outp. coup. MCM, 1 cable mot. B M23 (output coupling master communication Multi-Ethernet, single-cable motor connection M23, ACURO®link, outgoing direction B)
⑬	**Firmware:** FW = Firmware is required to operate the device

Tab. 1-10: KMS03 type code

1.3.5 KCU02 drive connection box

KCU02.2 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	C	U	0	2	.	2	N	-	E	T	-	E	T	*	-	0	2	5	-	N	N	-	N	-	N	N	-	N	W											
	①			②			③	④		⑤			⑥				⑦				⑧			⑨		⑩			⑪												

①	**Product:** KCU = KCU
②	**Series:** 02 = 2
③	**Design:** 2 = 2
④	**Configuration option:** N = Fixed configuration
⑤	**Master communication (input):** ET = Multi-Ethernet
⑥	**Master communication (output):** ET* = Multi-Ethernet
⑦	**DC fuse:** 025 = Nominal current: 25 A
⑧	**Interface:** NN = None
⑨	**Control panel:** N = Without
⑩	**Other design:** NN = None
⑪	**Firmware:** NW = Without firmware

Tab. 1-11: Type code KCU02.2

KCU02.2 vs. KCU02.1 KCU02.2 is fully downward compatible with version KCU02.1 and completely replaces this type.

1.3.6 KMV03 supply unit

KMV03 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	M	V	0	3	.	1	R	-	B	0	0	0	7	-	P	-	D	7	-	E	T	-	N	N	N	N	-	F	W										
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥					⑦		⑧			⑨			⑩						⑪											

①	**Product:** KMV = Supply module
②	**Series:** 03 = 3
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Power supply unit:** R = Regenerative
⑤	**Cooling type:** A = Natural convection (exterior heat sink) B = Thermal interface (cold plate mounting) I = Thermal interface (insulated mounting) W = Forced cooling (exterior heat sink, mounted fan)
⑥	**Rated power:** 0007 = 7.5 kW [1)] 01K5 = 1.5 kW [2)] 05K0 = 5 kW [3)] 06K0 = 6 kW [4)]
⑦	**Degree of protection:** P = IP65
⑧	**Nominal DC bus voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V
⑨	**Master communication:** ET = Multi-Ethernet
⑩	**Other design:** NNNN = None
⑪	**Firmware:** FW = Firmware is required to operate the device

1) Rated power "0007" only with cooling type "B"
2) Rated power "01K5" only with cooling type "I"
3) Rated power "05K0" only with cooling type "A"
4) Rated power "06K0" only with cooling type "W"

Tab. 1-12: KMV03 type code

1.3.7 KNK03 mains filter

KNK03 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	N	K	0	3	.	1	A	-	N	R	-	B	0	0	1	2	-	P	-	U	2	2	6	-	A	4	-	N	N	N	N									
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥		⑦	⑧					⑨		⑩					⑪			⑫												

①	**Product:** KNK = Mains filter with integrated mains choke
②	**Series:** 03 = 3
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**EMC area:** A = Category C3 in accordance with DIN 61800-3
⑤	**Application:** N = Standard
⑥	**Supply system:** R = For regenerative devices only
⑦	**Cooling type:** A = Natural convection (exterior heat sink) B = Thermal interface (cold plate mounting) I = Thermal interface (insulated mounting) W = Forced cooling (exterior heat sink, mounted fan)
⑧	**Nominal current:** 0002 = 2.3 A [1)] 0008 = 8.1 A [3)] 0010 = 9.5 A [4)] 0012 = 12 A [2)]
⑨	**Degree of protection:** P = IP65
⑩	**Leakage capacitance:** U226 = 226 nF
⑪	**Mains connection voltage:** A4 = 3 × AC 380 V -10% … 3 × AC 500 V +10%
⑫	**Other design:** NNNN = None

1) Nominal current "0002" with cooling type "I" only
2) Nominal current "0012" with cooling type "B" only
3) Nominal current "0008" with cooling type "A" only
4) Nominal current "0010" with cooling type "W" only

Tab. 1-13: KNK03 type code

1.3.8 KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit

KLC03 type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	K	L	C	0	3	.	1	N	-	B	0	4	M	7	-	P	-	D	7	-	N	N	N	N																	
	①			②			③	④		⑤	⑥					⑦		⑧			⑨																				

①	**Product:** KLC03 = DC bus capacitor unit
②	**Series:** 03 = 3
③	**Design:** 1 = 1
④	**Other properties:** N = None
⑤	**Cooling type:** A = Natural convection (exterior heat sink) B = Thermal interface (cold plate mounting) W = Forced cooling (exterior heat sink, mounted fan)
⑥	**Nominal capacitance:** 04M7 = 4.7 mF
⑦	**Degree of protection:** P = IP65
⑧	**Nominal DC bus voltage:** D7 = DC 750 V
⑨	**Other design:** NNNN = None

Tab. 1-14: KLC03 type code

1.3.9 Firmware

Type code: see Functional Description of firmware

1.4 About this documentation

1.4.1 Editions

Edition	Release date	Notes
01	2012-03	First edition
02	2014-02	Changes in comparison to previous edition: • Changed names of the KSM02 and KMS02 components: – KSM02: "motor-integrated servo drive" (previously: "distributed servo drive") – KMS02: "near motor servo drive" (previously: "distributed drive controller") • Included "Safe Motion" safety option • Updated type code • Revised E-Stop function • Revised sizing of hybrid cable length and control voltage power consumption • Included information on locking pins at connectors and connection points of hybrid cables • Included conductor colors of hybrid cable for connection points X52, X53 and X54 • Included internal design of digital inputs/outputs (X37, X38)
03	2016-03	Changes in comparison to previous edition: *New contents* • KMS03 (near motor servo drive) • KMV03 (supply unit) • KNK03 (mains filter with integrated mains choke) • ES option (external communication) • HAS05.1-018, -019, -020 accessories • Hybrid cable without communication lines (REH0803) • Drive systems with HCS01.1E-W0054 supply unit *Modified contents* • KSM02 type code • KMS02 type code • Allowed maximum number of KCU02 + KMS02/KSM02 devices per drive line increased from 20 to 30

Edition	Release date	Notes
04	2019-09	Changes in comparison to previous edition: *New contents* • KLC03: DC bus capacitor unit • KMV03: new variants with different cooling type • KNK03: new variants with different cooling type • KMS02: – new variant with single-cable connection (KMS02.1B-xxxx-x-xx-xx-**ENA**-xx-xx-xx) – new variant with angular connector (KMS02.1B-xxxx-x-xx-xx-xxx-xx-**WN/WT/WE**-xx) fig. 5-20 "Dimensions (with angular connector for motor and encoder connection)" on page 86 • KSM02.1B-041C-xxx-xx-xxx-xx-xx-xx-**AE/AN/AT**-xx (ATEX design): included dimensional drawing • HAS05.1-021: Hybrid joint • HAS05.1-023: HCS01 adapter • HAS05.1-024: Passive 42 V supply unit • RKH09xx: Hybrid cable with circular connector • RH2-030: Hybrid cable KMS02 - MS2N • Sizing mains filters for drive systems with IndraDrive Mi/C/M/Cs • System type plate for modules of configured variants • Two-piece connection cover for KMV03, KNK03, KLC03, KMS03 *Modified contents* • KSM02 type code • KMS02 type code • KMS03 type code • KMV03 type code • KNK03 type code • RKB0011 replaced by RKB0021 • External communication (X118, X119) described in greater detail
05	2022-03	Changes in comparison to previous edition: *New contents* • Coupling IndraDrive Mi devices with ctrlX DRIVE devices • KMV03: Fuse • KLC03: Fuse • RKH0910: Interconnection diagram • RH2-020BB: Hybrid motor cable KMS02 - MS2N (M17) *Modified contents* • KMS02: Dimensional drawing • REH0800: Updated technical data on travel distance, velocity, acceleration • Removed ATEX devices

Tab. 1-15: Editions

1.4.2 Documentations

Drive systems, system components

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)]	Material number
IndraDrive Mi Drive Systems with KCU02, KSM02, KMS02/03, KMV03, KNK03	Project Planning Manual	DOK-INDRV*-KCU02+KSM02-PRxx-EN-P	R911335703
IndraDrive Drive Systems with HMV01/02 HMS01/02, HMD01, HCS02/03	Project Planning Manual	DOK-INDRV*-SYSTEM*****-PRxx-EN-P	R911309636
IndraDrive Cs Drive Systems with HCS01	Project Planning Manual	DOK-INDRV*-HCS01******-PRxx-EN-P	R911322210
IndraDrive Supply Units, Power Sections HMV, HMS, HMD, HCS02, HCS03	Project Planning Manual	DOK-INDRV*-HMV-S-D+HCS-PRxx-EN-P	R911318790
IndraDrive Drive Controllers Control Sections CSB01, CSH01, CDB01	Project Planning Manual	DOK-INDRV*-CSH********-PRxx-EN-P	R911295012
IndraDrive Drive Controllers Control Sections CSE02, CSB02, CDB02, CSH02	Project Planning Manual	DOK-INDRV*-Cxx02******-PRxx-EN-P	R911338962
IndraDrive Additional Components and Accessories	Project Planning Manual	DOK-INDRV*-ADDCOMP****-PRxx-EN-P	R911306140
ctrlX DRIVE Drive Systems	Project Planning Manual	DOK-XDRV**-X**********-PRxx-EN-P	R911386579

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: PR01 is the first edition of a Project Planning Manual)

Tab. 1-16: Documentations – overview

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)]	Material number R911…
Automation Terminals of the Rexroth Inline Product Range	Application Manual	DOK-CONTRL-ILSYSINS***-AWxx-EN-P	317021

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: AW01 is the first edition of an Application Manual)

Tab. 1-17: Documentations – overview

Motors

Title Rexroth IndraDyn …	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-MOTOR*-…	Material number R911…
A Asynchronous Motors MAD / MAF	Project Planning Manual	MAD/MAF****-PRxx-EN-P	295781
H Synchronous Kit Spindle Motors	Project Planning Manual	MBS-H******-PRxx-EN-P	297895

Title Rexroth IndraDyn …	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-MOTOR*-…	Material number R911…
L Synchronous Linear Motors	Project Planning Manual	MLF********-PRxx-EN-P	293635
S Synchronous Servo Motors MSK	Project Planning Manual	MSK********-PRxx-EN-P	296289
T Synchronous Torque Motors	Project Planning Manual	MBT********-PRxx-EN-P	298798

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: PR01 is the first edition of a Project Planning Manual)

Tab. 1-18: Documentations – overview

Cables

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-…	Material number R911…
Rexroth Connection Cables IndraDrive and IndraDyn	Selection Data	CONNEC-CABLE*INDRV-CAxx-EN-P	322949

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: CA02 is the second edition of the "Selection Data" documentation)

Tab. 1-19: Documentations – overview

Firmware

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-INDRV*-…	Material number R911…
IndraDrive MPx-21 Functions	Application Manual	MP*-21VRS**-APxx-EN-P	385758
IndraDrive MPx-20 Functions	Application Manual	MP*-20VRS**-APxx-EN-P	345608
IndraDrive MPx-20 Version Notes	Release Notes	MP*-20VRS**-RNxx-EN-P	345606
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-21 Functions	Application Manual	PSB-21VRS**-APxx-EN-P	385754
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-21 Version Notes	Release Notes	PSB-21VRS**-RNxx-EN-P	385752
IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-20 Functions	Application Manual	PSB-20VRS**-APxx-EN-P	345610

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-INDRV*-…	Material number R911…
Rexroth IndraDrive Power Supply Basic PSB-19 Functions	Application Manual	PSB-19VRS**-APxx-EN-P	345602
Rexroth IndraDrive MPx-18 Functions	Application Manual	MP*-18VRS**-APxx-EN-P	338673
Rexroth IndraDrive MPx-18 Version Notes	Release Notes	MP*-18VRS**-RNxx-EN-P	338658
Rexroth IndraDrive MPx-17 Functions	Application Manual	MP*-17VRS**-APxx-EN-P	331236
Rexroth IndraDrive MPx-17 Version Notes	Release Notes	MP*-17VRS**-RNxx-EN-P	331588
IndraDrive MPx-16 to MPx-21 and PSB Parameters	Reference Book	GEN1-PARA**-RExx-EN-P	328651
IndraDrive MPx-16 to MPx-21 and PSB Diagnostics	Reference Book	GEN1-DIAG**-RExx-EN-P	326738
Rexroth IndraDrive Integrated Safety Technology "Safe Torque Off" (as of MPx-16)	Application Manual	SI3-**VRS**-APxx-EN-P	332634
IndraDrive Integrated Safety Technology "Safe Motion" (MPx-18 and above)	Application Manual	SI3*SMO-VRS-APxx-EN-P	338920
Rexroth IndraDrive Rexroth IndraMotion MLD Libraries as of MPx-17	Reference Book	MLD-SYSLIB2-RExx-EN-P	332627
IndraDrive Rexroth IndraMotion MLD Libraries as of MPx-18	Reference Book	MLD-SYSLIB3-RExx-EN-P	338916

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)] DOK-INDRV*-…	Material number R911…
Rexroth IndraDrive Rexroth IndraMotion MLD as of MPx-17	Application Manual	MLD2-**VRS*-APxx-EN-P	334351
IndraDrive IndraMotion MLD MPx-18 and above	Application Manual	MLD3-**VRS*-APxx-EN-P	338914

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: RE02 is the second edition of a Reference Book)

Tab. 1-20: Documentations – firmware

1.4.3 Your comments

☞ Your experience is important for our improvement processes of products and documentations.

If you find any mistakes in this documentation or have suggestions for changes, please send your feedback to the following address:

Bosch Rexroth AG
Dept. DC-AE/EPI5
Bürgermeister-Dr.-Nebel-Str. 2
97816 Lohr am Main, Germany
Email: dokusupport@boschrexroth.de

2 Important directions for use

2.1 Intended use

2.1.1 Introduction

Rexroth products are developed and manufactured to the state-of-the-art. The products are tested prior to delivery to ensure operational safety and reliability.

⚠ WARNING **Personal injury and property damage by using products incorrectly!**

The products have been designed for use in an industrial environment and may only be used as intended. Failure to use them in the intended way may cause situations resulting in property damage and personal injury.

☞ Rexroth as the manufacturer shall not honor any warranty, liability or compensatory claims for damages resulting from unintended use of the products. The user alone shall bear the risks of unintended use of the products.

Before using Rexroth products, make sure that all the prerequisites for an intended use of the products are satisfied:

- Personnel that in any way, shape or form uses our products must first read and understand the relevant safety instructions and be familiar with their intended use.
- Leave hardware products in their original state, i.e., do not make any structural modifications. It is not permitted to decompile software products or alter their source codes.
- Do not install damaged or faulty products or put them into operation.
- Make sure that the products have been installed as described in the relevant documentation.

2.1.2 Areas of use and application

Drive controllers by Rexroth are designed to control electric motors and monitor their operation.

Controlling and monitoring the drive controllers may require additional sensors and actuators.

☞ The drive controllers may only be used with the accessories and attachments specified in this documentation. Components that are not expressly mentioned may neither be attached nor connected. The same applies to cables and lines.

Operation is only allowed in the specified configurations and combinations of the components using the software and firmware as specified in the relevant functional descriptions.

Drive controllers have to be programmed before commissioning to ensure that the motor executes the functions specific to the application.

Drive controllers of the IndraDrive Mi platform have been developed for use in single-axis and multi-axis drive and control tasks.

Device types with different drive power and interfaces are available for using the drive controllers in specific applications.

Typical applications include, for example:

- Handling and mounting systems
- Packaging and food machines
- Printing and paper converting machines
- Machine tools

Drive controllers may only be operated under the assembly and installation conditions specified in this documentation, in the specified position of normal use and under the specified ambient conditions (temperature, degree of protection, humidity, EMC, etc.).

2.2 Unintended use

"Unintended use" refers to using the drive controllers outside of the operating conditions, technical data and specifications described in this documentation.

Drive controllers must not be used, if …

- they are exposed to operating conditions that do not meet the specified ambient conditions. This includes, for example, operation under water, under extreme temperature fluctuations or extreme maximum temperatures.
- Furthermore, drive controllers may not be used in applications that have not been expressly authorized by Rexroth. Therefore, please carefully follow the specifications outlined in the general safety instructions!

☞ Components of the IndraDrive Mi system are **products of Category C3** (with restricted distribution) in accordance with IEC 61800-3. This Category comprises EMC limit values for line-based and radiated noise emission. Compliance with this Category (limit values) requires the appropriate measures of interference suppression to be used in the drive system (e.g., mains filters, shielding measures).

These components are not provided for use in a public low-voltage mains supplying residential areas. If these components are used in such a mains, high-frequency interference is to be expected. This can require additional measures of interference suppression.

---

3 Safety instructions for electric drive and control systems

3.1 Definitions of terms

Application documentation Application documentation comprises the entire documentation used to inform the user of the product about the use and safety-relevant features for configuring, integrating, installing, mounting, commissioning, operating, maintaining, repairing and decommissioning the product. The following terms are also used for this kind of documentation: Operating Instructions, Commissioning Manual, Instruction Manual, Project Planning Manual, Application Description, etc.

Axis processor The axis processor is a micro processor in which the control algorithms to operate the actor (e.g. a motor) are running.

B sample To a large extent, the B sample comes with the technical function. However, there are restrictions, e.g. insufficient testing. Therefore, errors or product variations are to be expected. The product may only be used after a prototype agreement was signed.

Compatibility Compatibility of a new function or functional enhancement means that, for example, a parameter file from a previous version can be used in the new firmware.

Component A component is a combination of elements with a specified function, which are part of a piece of equipment, device or system. Components of the electric drive and control system are, for example, supply units, drive controllers, mains choke, mains filter, motors, cables, etc.

Control system A control system comprises several interconnected control components placed on the market as a single functional unit.

Device A device is a finished product with a defined function, intended for users and placed on the market as an individual piece of merchandise.

Drive A drive (electric drive) consists of a drive controller with an electric motor.

Electrical equipment Electrical equipment encompasses all devices used to generate, convert, transmit, distribute or apply electrical energy, such as electric motors, transformers, switching devices, cables, lines, power-consuming devices, circuit board assemblies, plug-in units, control cabinets, etc.

Electric drive system An electric drive system comprises all components from mains supply to motor shaft; this includes, for example, electric motor(s), motor encoder(s), supply units and drive controllers, as well as auxiliary and additional components, such as mains filter, mains choke and the corresponding lines and cables.

Grid system A grid system is a large-scale, supraregional network of power plants (with respect to electric power). It is operated by a power supply company that is responsible for the mains and thus also specifies the rules for mains supply.

Incompatibility Incompatible new functions or incompatible functional enhancements produce a device behavior which does not correspond to the previous version.

Installation An installation consists of several devices or systems interconnected for a defined purpose and on a defined site which, however, are not intended to be placed on the market as a single functional unit.

Island grid An island grid supplies a limited area and is not connected to the public grid system or other power networks. The power supply company has to control the balance between consumed and generated power in the island grid. An

energy storage system can be used. The operator of an island grid can determine individual standards for the island grid. These standards can deviate from rules of public power supply companies.

Machine A machine is the entirety of interconnected parts or units at least one of which is movable. Thus, a machine consists of the appropriate machine drive elements, as well as control and power circuits, which have been assembled for a specific application. A machine is, for example, intended for processing, treatment, movement or packaging of a material. The term "machine" also covers a combination of machines which are arranged and controlled in such a way that they function as a unified whole.

Mains operation / island grid mode Mains operation and island grid mode are differentiated. In mains operation, the grid system defines the grid properties. Supply units that supply a grid system have to synchronize their voltages and frequencies to the existing grid system. In island grid mode, however, the supply unit defines the properties of the island grid. The supply unit controls the voltage and frequency in the island grid and thus assumes a "grid generator function". The power output is determined by the loads and, where applicable, other supply units in the island grid.

Manufacturer The manufacturer is an individual or legal entity bearing responsibility for the design and manufacture of a product which is placed on the market in the individual's or legal entity's name. The manufacturer can use finished products, finished parts or finished elements, or contract out work to subcontractors. However, the manufacturer must always have overall control and possess the required authority to take responsibility for the product.

Patch A patch corrects errors in the firmware.

Product Examples of a product: Device, component, part, system, software, firmware, among other things.

Project Planning Manual A Project Planning Manual is part of the application documentation used to support the sizing and planning of systems, machines or installations.

Qualified personnel for handling functionally safe products Individuals configuring, commissioning and operating functionally safe products must have the knowledge specified under "Qualified persons". Additionally, these individuals must be familiar with technical safety concepts as well as prevailing standards and regulations in the field of functional safety.

Qualified persons In terms of this application documentation, qualified persons are those individuals who are familiar with the installation, mounting, commissioning and operation of the components of the electric drive and control system, as well as with the hazards this implies, and who possess the qualifications their work requires. To comply with these qualifications, it is necessary, among other things,

- to be trained, instructed or authorized to switch electric circuits and devices safely on and off, to ground them and to mark them.
- to be trained or instructed to maintain and use adequate safety equipment.
- to attend a course of instruction in first aid.

Release, firmware/Runtime release With a new firmware release, compatible functional enhancements are provided or errors in the firmware were corrected. The firmware release is encrypted in the type code at position "RS" in AXS-V-VS**RS**.

Technology Function The ctrlX DRIVE Technology Function refers to the PLC firmware function which allows the axis processor of the ctrlX DRIVE system to use customized PLC programs or ready-made technology apps.

User A user is a person installing, commissioning or using a product which has been placed on the market.

Version, firmware/Runtime version A new firmware version comprises basic changes in the scope of functions compared to the previous version. The scope of functions may also contain incompatible changes. The firmware version is encrypted in the type code at position "VS" in AXS-V-**VS**RS.

3.2 General information

3.2.1 Using the Safety instructions and passing them on to others

Do not attempt to install and operate the components of the electric drive and control system without first reading all documentation provided with the product. Read and understand these safety instructions and all user documentation prior to working with these components. If you do not have the user documentation for the components, contact your responsible Rexroth sales partner. Ask for these documents to be sent immediately to the person or persons responsible for the safe operation of the components.

If the component is resold, rented and/or passed on to others in any other form, these safety instructions must be delivered with the component in the official language of the user's country.

Improper use of these components, failure to follow the safety instructions in this document or tampering with the product, including disabling of safety devices, could result in property damage, injury, electric shock or even death.

3.2.2 Requirements for safe use

Read the following instructions before initial commissioning of the components of the electric drive and control system in order to eliminate the risk of injury and/or property damage. You must follow these safety instructions.

- Rexroth is not liable for damages resulting from failure to observe the safety instructions.
- Read the operating, maintenance and safety instructions in your language before commissioning. If you find that you cannot completely understand the application documentation in the available language, please ask your supplier to clarify.
- Proper and correct transport, storage, mounting and installation, as well as care in operation and maintenance, are prerequisites for optimal and safe operation of the component.
- Only qualified persons may work with components of the electric drive and control system or within its proximity.
- Only use accessories and spare parts approved by Rexroth.
- Follow the safety regulations and requirements of the country in which the components of the electric drive and control system are operated.
- Only use the components of the electric drive and control system in the manner that is defined as appropriate. See chapter "Appropriate Use".
- The ambient and operating conditions given in the available application documentation must be observed.
- Applications for functional safety are only allowed if clearly and explicitly specified in the application documentation "Integrated Safety Technology". If this is not the case, they are excluded. Functional safety is a safety concept in which measures of risk reduction for personal

safety depend on electrical, electronic or programmable control systems.

- The information given in the application documentation with regard to the use of the delivered components contains only examples of applications and suggestions.

  The machine and installation manufacturers must

  – make sure that the delivered components are suited for their individual application and check the information given in this application documentation with regard to the use of the components,

  – make sure that their individual application complies with the applicable safety regulations and standards and carry out the required measures, modifications and complements.
- Commissioning of the delivered components is only allowed once it is sure that the machine or installation in which the components are installed complies with the national regulations, safety specifications and standards of the application.
- Operation is only allowed if the national EMC regulations for the application are met.
- The instructions for installation in accordance with EMC requirements can be found in the section on EMC in the respective application documentation.

  The machine or installation manufacturer is responsible for compliance with the limit values as prescribed in the national regulations.
- The technical data, connection and installation conditions of the components are specified in the respective application documentations and must be followed at all times.

National regulations which the user has to comply with

- European countries: In accordance with European EN standards
- United States of America (USA):
  – National Electrical Code (NEC)
  – National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), as well as local engineering regulations
  – Regulations of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
- Canada: Canadian Standards Association (CSA)
- Other countries:
  – International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
  – International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)

3.2.3 Hazards by improper use

- High electrical voltage and high working current! Danger to life or serious injury by electric shock!
- High electrical voltage by incorrect connection! Danger to life or injury by electric shock!
- Dangerous movements! Danger to life, serious injury or property damage by unintended motor movements!
- Health hazard for persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants and hearing aids in proximity to electric drive systems!

- Risk of burns by hot housing surfaces!
- Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of batteries!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of pressurized lines!

3.3 Instructions with regard to specific dangers

3.3.1 Protection against contact with electrical parts and housings

☞ This section concerns components of the electric drive and control system with voltages of **more than 50 volts**.

Contact with parts conducting voltages above 50 volts can cause personal danger and electric shock. When operating components of the electric drive and control system, it is unavoidable that some parts of these components conduct dangerous voltage.

High electrical voltage! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock or serious injury!

- Only qualified persons are allowed to operate, maintain and/or repair the components of the electric drive and control system.
- Follow the general installation and safety regulations when working on power installations.
- Before switching on, the equipment grounding conductor must have been permanently connected to all electric components in accordance with the connection diagram.
- Even for brief measurements or tests, operation is only allowed if the equipment grounding conductor has been permanently connected to the points of the components provided for this purpose.
- Before accessing electrical parts with voltage potentials higher than 50 V, you must disconnect electric components from the mains or from the power supply unit. Secure the electric component from reconnection.
- With electric components, observe the following aspects:

  Always wait **30 minutes** after switching off power to allow live capacitors to discharge before accessing an electric component. Measure the electrical voltage of live parts before beginning to work to make sure that the equipment is safe to touch.
- Install the covers and guards provided for this purpose before switching on.
- Never touch any electrical connection points of the components while power is turned on.
- Do not remove or plug in connectors when the component has been powered.
- Under specific conditions, electric drive systems can be operated at mains protected by residual-current-operated circuit-breakers sensitive to universal current (RCDs/RCMs).
- Secure built-in devices from penetrating foreign objects and water, as well as from direct contact, by providing an external housing, for example a control cabinet.

High housing voltage and high leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!

- Before switching on and before commissioning, ground or connect the components of the electric drive and control system to the equipment grounding conductor at the grounding points.

- Connect the equipment grounding conductor of the components of the electric drive and control system permanently to the main power supply at all times. The leakage current is greater than 3.5 mA.
- Establish an equipment grounding connection with a minimum cross section according to the table below. With an outer conductor cross section smaller than 10 mm^2 (8 AWG), the alternative connection of two equipment grounding conductors is allowed, each having the same cross section as the outer conductors.

Cross section outer conductor	Minimum cross section equipment grounding conductor Leakage current ≥ 3.5 mA	
	1 equipment grounding conductor	2 equipment grounding conductors
1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)	10 mm^2 (8 AWG)	2 × 1.5 mm^2 (16 AWG)
2.5 mm^2 (14 AWG)		2 × 2.5 mm^2 (14 AWG)
4 mm^2 (12 AWG)		2 × 4 mm^2 (12 AWG)
6 mm^2 (10 AWG)		2 × 6 mm^2 (10 AWG)
10 mm^2 (8 AWG)		-
16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	16 mm^2 (6 AWG)	-
25 mm^2 (4 AWG)		-
35 mm^2 (2 AWG)		-
50 mm^2 (1/0 AWG)	25 mm^2 (4 AWG)	-
70 mm^2 (2/0 AWG)	35 mm^2 (2 AWG)	-
...	...	...

Tab. 3-1: Minimum cross section of the equipment grounding connection

3.3.2 Protective extra-low voltage as protection against electric shock

Protective extra-low voltage is used to allow connecting devices with basic insulation to extra-low voltage circuits.

On components of an electric drive and control system provided by Rexroth, all connections and terminals with voltages up to 50 volts are PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage") systems. It is allowed to connect devices equipped with basic insulation (such as programming devices, PCs, notebooks, display units) to these connections.

Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock! High electrical voltage by incorrect connection!

If extra-low voltage circuits of devices containing voltages and circuits of more than 50 volts (e.g., the mains connection) are connected to Rexroth products, the connected extra-low voltage circuits must comply with the requirements for PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage").

3.3.3 Protection against dangerous movements

Dangerous movements can be caused by faulty control of connected motors. Some common examples are:

- Improper or wrong wiring or cable connection
- Operator errors
- Wrong input of parameters before commissioning
- Malfunction of sensors and encoders
- Defective components
- Software or firmware errors

These errors can occur immediately after equipment is switched on or even after an unspecified time of trouble-free operation.

The monitoring functions in the components of the electric drive and control system will normally be sufficient to avoid malfunction in the connected drives. Regarding personal safety, especially the danger of injury and/or property damage, this alone cannot be relied upon to ensure complete safety. Until the integrated monitoring functions become effective, it must be assumed in any case that faulty drive movements will occur. The extent of faulty drive movements depends upon the type of control and the state of operation.

Dangerous movements! Danger to life, risk of injury, serious injury or property damage!

A **risk assessment** must be prepared for the installation or machine, with its specific conditions, in which the components of the electric drive and control system are installed.

As a result of the risk assessment, the user must provide for monitoring functions and higher-level measures on the installation side for personal safety. The safety regulations applicable to the installation or machine must be taken into consideration. Unintended machine movements or other malfunctions are possible if safety devices are disabled, bypassed or not activated.

To avoid accidents, injury and/or property damage:

- Keep free and clear of the machine's range of motion and moving machine parts. Prevent personnel from accidentally entering the machine's range of motion by using, for example:
  - Safety fences
  - Safety guards
  - Protective coverings
  - Light barriers
- Make sure the safety fences and protective coverings are strong enough to resist maximum possible kinetic energy.
- Mount emergency stopping switches in the immediate reach of the operator. Before commissioning, verify that the emergency stopping equipment works. Do not operate the machine if the emergency stopping switch is not working.
- Prevent unintended start-up. Isolate the drive power connection by means of OFF switches/OFF buttons or use a safe starting lockout.
- Make sure that the drives are brought to safe standstill before accessing or entering the danger zone.

- Additionally secure vertical axes against falling or dropping after switching off the motor power by, for example,
  - mechanically securing the vertical axes,
  - adding an external braking/arrester/clamping mechanism or
  - ensuring sufficient counterbalancing of the vertical axes.
- The standard equipment **motor holding brake** or an external holding brake controlled by the drive controller is **not sufficient to guarantee personal safety**!
- Disconnect electrical power to the components of the electric drive and control system using the master switch and secure them from reconnection ("lock out") for:
  - Maintenance and repair work
  - Cleaning of equipment
  - Long periods of discontinued equipment use
- Prevent the operation of high-frequency, remote control and radio equipment near components of the electric drive and control system and their supply leads. If the use of these devices cannot be avoided, check the machine or installation, at initial commissioning of the electric drive and control system, for possible malfunctions when operating such high-frequency, remote control and radio equipment in its possible positions of normal use. It might possibly be necessary to perform a special electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) test.

3.3.4 Protection against electromagnetic and magnetic fields during operation and mounting

Electromagnetic and magnetic fields!

Health hazard for persons with active implantable medical devices (AIMD) such as pacemakers or passive metallic implants.

- Hazards for the above-mentioned groups of persons by electromagnetic and magnetic fields in the immediate vicinity of drive controllers and the associated current-carrying conductors.
- Entering these areas can pose an increased risk to the above-mentioned groups of persons. They should seek advice from their physician.
- If overcome by possible effects on above-mentioned persons during operation of drive controllers and accessories, remove the exposed persons from the vicinity of conductors and devices.

3.3.5 Protection against contact with hot parts

Hot surfaces of components of the electric drive and control system. Risk of burns!

- Do not touch hot surfaces of, for example, braking resistors, heat sinks, supply units and drive controllers, motors, windings and laminated cores!
- According to the operating conditions, temperatures of the surfaces can be **higher than 60 °C** (140 °F) during or after operation.
- Before touching motors after having switched them off, let them cool down for a sufficient period of time. Cooling down can require **up to 140**

minutes! The time required for cooling down is approximately five times the thermal time constant specified in the technical data.

- After switching chokes, supply units and drive controllers off, wait **15 minutes** to allow them to cool down before touching them.
- Wear safety gloves or do not work at hot surfaces.
- For certain applications, and in accordance with the respective safety regulations, the manufacturer of the machine or installation must take measures to avoid injuries caused by burns in the final application. These measures can be, for example: Warnings at the machine or installation, guards (shieldings or barriers) or safety instructions in the application documentation.

3.3.6 Protection during handling and mounting

Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!

- Observe the relevant statutory regulations of accident prevention.
- Use suitable equipment for mounting and transport.
- Avoid jamming and crushing by appropriate measures.
- Always use suitable tools. Use special tools if specified.
- Use lifting equipment and tools in the correct manner.
- Use suitable protective equipment (hard hat, safety goggles, safety shoes, safety gloves, for example).
- Do not stand under hanging loads.
- Immediately clean up any spilled liquids from the floor due to the risk of falling!

3.3.7 Protection against pressurized systems

According to the information given in the Project Planning Manuals, motors and components cooled with liquids and compressed air can be partially supplied with externally fed, pressurized media, such as compressed air, hydraulics oil, cooling liquids and cooling lubricants. Improper handling of the connected supply systems, supply lines or connections can cause injuries or property damage.

Risk of injury by improper handling of pressurized lines!

- Do not attempt to disconnect, open or cut pressurized lines (risk of explosion).
- Observe the respective manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Before dismounting lines, relieve pressure and empty medium.
- Use suitable protective equipment (safety goggles, safety shoes, safety gloves, for example).
- Immediately clean up any spilled liquids from the floor due to the risk of falling!

Environmental protection and disposal! The agents (e.g., fluids) used to operate the product might not be environmentally friendly. Dispose of agents harmful to the environment separately from other waste. Observe the national regulations of your country.

3.4 Explanation of signal words and the Safety alert symbol

The Safety Instructions in the available application documentation contain specific signal words (DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION or NOTICE) and, where required, a safety alert symbol (in accordance with ANSI Z535.6-2011).

The signal word is meant to draw the reader's attention to the safety instruction and identifies the hazard severity.

The safety alert symbol (a triangle with an exclamation point), which precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION, is used to alert the reader to personal injury hazards.

⚠ DANGER

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **will** occur.

⚠ WARNING

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **could** occur.

⚠ CAUTION

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, minor or moderate injury could occur.

NOTICE

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, property damage could occur.

4 General data and specifications

4.1 Acceptance tests and approvals

Declaration of conformity

Declarations of conformity confirm that the components comply with the valid EN standards and EC directives. If required, our sales representative can provide you with the declarations of conformity for components.

CE DX000011v01_en.FH11	Standard	Declaration of conformity*)
Low Voltage Directive 2014/35/EU	EN 61800-5-1	DCTC-30317-022
EMC Directive 2014/30/EU	EN 61800-3	
Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC	EN ISO 13849-1 EN 62061 EN 61800-5-1 EN 61800-5-2 EN 61508-1 … 7	DCTC-30129-003
RoHS Directive	2011/65/EU	RoHS-Declaration
*) Declaration of conformity in Bosch Rexroth media directory: www.boschrexroth.com/mediadirectory, search term e.g. "DCTC-30317-022"		

Tab. 4-1: CE - applied standards

C-UL-US listing

The components are listed by **UL** (Underwriters Laboratories Inc.®).

Proof of certification can be found online. Enter the terms "UL" and "databases" in a search engine to get to the relevant UL web page. With the file number you will find the proof of certification.

UL ratings

When using the component in the scope of CSA / UL, observe the UL ratings for each component.

Only the following components have been approved in the scope of CSA / UL for supplying KSM and KMS components:

- HMV01.1E
- HMV01.1R
- HMV02.1R
- HCS01.1E
- HCS02.1E
- HCS03.1E
- KMV03.1R
- XVE
- XVR
- XCS
- XCD

HMV, HCS, XVE, XVR, XCS, XCD additionally require a KCU control module.

Make sure that the specified **short-circuit current rating SCCR** is not exceeded, e.g. by providing appropriate fuses in the mains connection of the supply unit.

UL wiring material

In the scope of CSA / UL, use copper 60/75 °C only; class 1 or equivalent only.

Allowed pollution degree

Comply with the allowed pollution degree of the components (see "Ambient and operating conditions").

c UL us **Listed** **POW. CONV. EQ.** **97Y4**	**Company Name** BOSCH REXROTH AG Category Name: Power Conversion Equipment
	File numbers IndraDrive Mi components: • E134201 • E227957

Tab. 4-2: C-UL listing

C-UR-US listing

The components are listed by **UL** (Underwriters Laboratories Inc.®).

Proof of certification can be found online. Enter the terms "UL" and "databases" in a search engine to get to the relevant UL web page. With the file number you will find the proof of certification.

 CUR_Zeichen.fh11	• UL standard: UL 1004-1 • CSA standard: C22.2 No. 100
	Company Name BOSCH REXROTH AG Category Name: Servo and Stepper Motors - Component
	File numbers MSK, MSM motors: E335445

Tab. 4-3: C-UR listing

UL wiring material (ready-made Rexroth cables)

In the scope of CSA / UL, use copper 60/75 °C only; class 6 or equivalent only.

Allowed pollution degree

Comply with the allowed pollution degree of the components (see "Ambient and operating conditions").

CCC (China Compulsory Certification)

The CCC mark is a compulsory certification of safety and quality for certain products mentioned in the product catalog "First Catalogue of Products Subject to Compulsory Certification" and in the CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue" and put in circulation in China. This compulsory certification has existed since 2003.

CNCA is the Chinese authority responsible for certification guidelines. When a product is imported in China, the certification will be checked at customs using the entries in a database. Three criteria are typically critical for certification being required:

1. Customs tariff number (HS code) according to CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue".
2. Area of application according to CNCA document "Application Scope for Compulsory Certification of Products acc. first Catalogue".
3. For the IEC product standard used, a corresponding Chinese GB-standard must exist.

For the drive components by Rexroth described in this documentation, **certification is currently not required**, so they are not CCC certified. Negative certifications will not be issued.

4.2 Transport and storage

4.2.1 Transporting the components

Ambient and operating conditions - transport

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Temperature range	T_{a_tran}	°C	-20 … +70
Relative humidity		%	5 … 95

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Absolute humidity		g/m^3	1 … 60
Climatic category (IEC 721)			2K3
Moisture condensation			Not allowed
Icing			Not allowed

Tab. 4-4: Ambient and operating conditions - transport

4.2.2 Storing the components

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the *KCU drive connection box* from long-term storage!**

The KCU drive connection box contains electrolytic capacitors which may deteriorate during storage. When storing the KCU drive connection box for a longer period of time, run it **once a year for at least 1 hour** at 24 V control voltage U_{N3}.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the *KMV supply unit* from long-term storage!**

The KMV supply unit contains electrolytic capacitors which may deteriorate during storage. When storing the KMV supply unit for a longer period of time, run it **once a year for at least 1 hour** at mains voltage U_{LN}.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the *DC bus capacitor unit KLC* from long-term storage!**

The DC bus capacitor unit KLC contains electrolytic capacitors which may deteriorate during storage. When storing the DC bus capacitor unit KLC for a longer period of time, run it **once a year for at least 1 hour** at DC bus voltage U_{DC}.

Ambient and operating conditions - storage

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Temperature range	T_{a_store}	°C	-20 … +55
Relative humidity		%	5 … 95
Absolute humidity		g/m^3	1 … 29
Climatic category (IEC721)			1K3
Moisture condensation			Not allowed
Icing			Not allowed

Tab. 4-5: Ambient and operating conditions - storage

KSM: Storage times

Additional measures must be taken on commissioning to preserve proper functioning – irrespective of the storage time which may be longer than the warranty period of our products. However, this does not involve any additional warranty claims.

Motors

Storage time / months			Measures for commissioning
> 1	> 12	> 60	
■	■	■	Visual inspection of all parts to be damage-free
■	■	■	Resurface the holding brake
	■	■	Check the electric contacts to verify that they are free from corrosion
	■	■	Let the motor run in without load for one hour at 800 ... 1000 rpm
	■	■	Measure insulation resistance. Dry the winding at a value of < 1kohm per volt rated voltage.
		■	Replace bearing
		■	Replace encoder

Tab. 4-6: Measures before commissioning motors that have been stored over a prolonged period of time

Cables and connectors

Storage time / months			Measures for commissioning
> 1	> 12	> 60	
■	■	■	Visual inspection of all parts to be damage-free
	■	■	Check the electric contacts to verify that they are free from corrosion
		■	Visually inspect the cable jacket. Do not use the cable if you detect any abnormalities (squeezed or kinked spots, color deviations, ...).

Tab. 4-7: Measure before commissioning cables and connectors that have been stored over a prolonged period of time

4.3 Installation conditions

4.3.1 Ambient and operating conditions

Check that the ambient conditions, in particular the control cabinet temperature, are complied with by calculating the heat levels in the control cabinet. Afterwards, make the corresponding measurements to verify that the ambient conditions have actually been complied with.

In the technical data of the individual components, the power dissipation is specified as an important input value for calculating the heat levels.

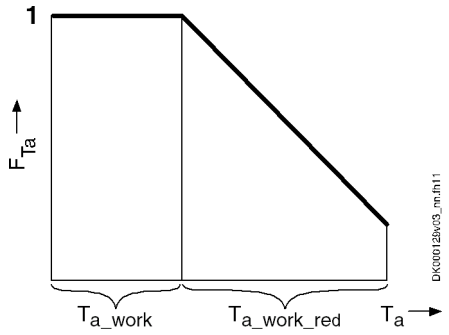
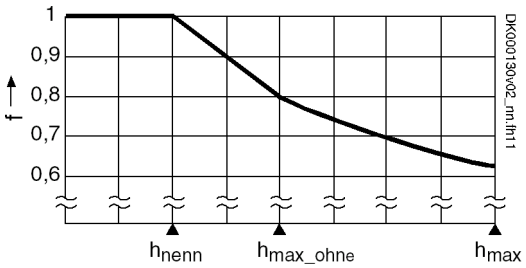
Devices with the degree of protection IP65 are designed for use near the machines and are not installed in control cabinets.

ctrlX DRIVE

See Project Planning Manual "ctrlX DRIVE Drive Systems" (R911386579).

Ambient and operating conditions (HCS, HMV, HMS, HMD, HCQ, HCT, KCU, HLC, HNF)

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Conductive dirt contamination	-	-	Not allowed Protect the devices against conductive dirt contamination by mounting them in control cabinets with the degree of protection IP54 (in accordance with IEC529).
Degree of protection of the device (IEC529)	-	-	IP20
Use within scope of CSA / UL	-	-	For use in NFPA 79 Applications only!
Temperature during storage	-	-	See chapter 4.2.2 "Storing the components" on page 50
Temperature during transport	-	-	See chapter 4.2.1 "Transporting the components" on page 49
Allowed mounting position Definition of mounting positions: See chapter "Mounting positions of components" on page 59	-	-	G1 [3)]
Installation altitude	h_{nenn}	m	1000
Ambient temperature range	T_{a_work}	°C	0 … 40

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Derating vs. ambient temperature: The performance data are reduced by the factor F_{Ta} in the ambient temperature range $T_{a\_work\_red}$: $F_{Ta} = 1 - [(T_a - 40) \times f_{Ta}]$ Using a KCU drive connection box reduces the rated power (P_{out}) at the 42 V control voltage output. The rated power at the power section output (P_{DC_cont}) is not reduced.			
	$T_{a\_work\_red}$	°C	40 … 55
	f_{Ta}	%/K	2.0
Derating vs. installation altitude: At an installation altitude h > h_{nenn}, the available performance data are reduced by the **factor f**[2)]. At an installation altitude in the range h_{max_ohne} to h_{max}, an isolating transformer has to be installed at the drive system mains connection. Operation above h_{max} is not allowed!			
	h_{max_ohne}	m	2000
	h_{max}	m	4000
Simultaneous derating for ambient temperature **and** installation altitude	Allowed; reduce performance data with the product f × F_{Ta}		
Relative humidity	-	%	5 … 95
Absolute humidity	-	g/m^3	1 … 29
Climatic category (IEC 60721-3-3)	-	-	3K3
Allowed pollution degree (EN 50178)	-	-	2
Resistance to chemically active substances (IEC 60721-3-3)	-	-	Class 3C1
Vibration sine: amplitude (peak-peak) at 10 … 57 Hz [1)]	-	mm	0.15
Vibration sine: acceleration at 57 … 150 Hz [1)]	-	g	1
Overvoltage category	-	-	III (according to IEC 60664-1)

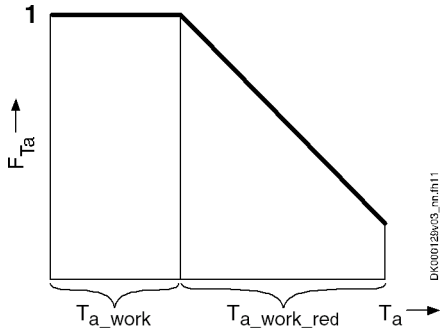
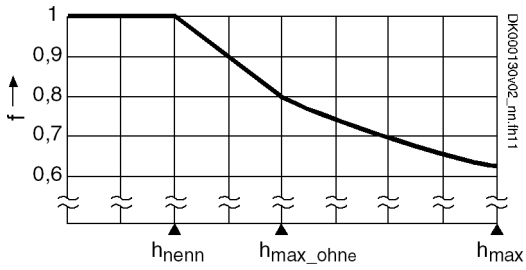
1) According to EN 60068-2-6

2) Reduced performance data for drive controllers: allowed DC bus continuous power, braking resistor continuous power, continuous current; additionally for HCS01, HCQ, HCT drive controllers: allowed mains voltage

3) Some components can be operated in mounting positions other than G1. The allowed mounting positions are specified in the technical data of the components.

Tab. 4-8: Ambient and operating conditions (HCS, HMV, HMS, HMD, HCQ, HCT, KCU, HLC, HNF)

Ambient and operating conditions (KSM)

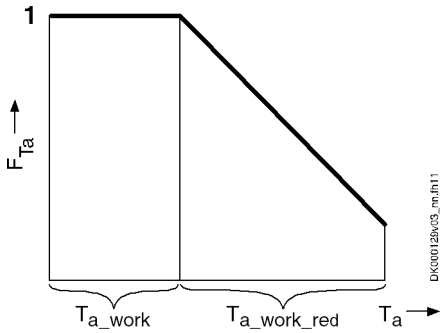
Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Degree of protection (IEC 60529)	-	-	IP65
Use within scope of CSA / UL	-	-	For use in NFPA 79 Applications only!
Temperature during storage	-	-	See chapter 4.2.2 "Storing the components" on page 50
Temperature during transport	-	-	See chapter 4.2.1 "Transporting the components" on page 49
Allowed mounting position Definition of mounting positions: See chapter "Mounting positions of components" on page 59	-	-	IM B5, IM V1, IM V3
Installation altitude	h_{nenn}	m	1000
Ambient temperature range	T_{a_work}	°C	0 … 40
Derating vs. ambient temperature: The performance data are reduced by the factor F_{Ta} in the ambient temperature range $T_{a\_work\_red}$: $F_{Ta} = 1 - [(T_a - 40) \times f_{Ta}]$ Example: With an ambient temperature T_a = 50 °C and a capacity utilization factor f_{Ta} = 3 %/K, the rated power is reduced to $P_{DC\_cont\_red} = P_{DC\_cont} \times F_{Ta} =$ $P_{DC\_cont} \times (1 - [(50 - 40) \times 0.03]) = P_{DC\_cont} \times 0.7$ Operation at ambient temperatures outside of T_{a_work} and $T_{a\_work\_red}$ is not allowed!			
	$T_{a\_work\_red}$	°C	40 … 55
	f_{Ta}	%/K	3
Derating vs. installation altitude: At an installation altitude h > h_{nenn}, the available performance data are reduced by the **factor f**[2) 3)]. At an installation altitude in the range h_{max_ohne} to h_{max}, an isolating transformer has to be installed at the drive system mains connection. Operation above h_{max} is not allowed!			
	h_{max_ohne}	m	2000
	h_{max}	m	4000
Simultaneous derating for ambient temperature **and** installation altitude	Allowed; reduce performance data with the product of factors f and F_{Ta} (f × F_{Ta})		
Relative humidity		%	5 … 95
Absolute humidity		g/m³	1 … 29
Climatic category (IEC721)			3K4
Allowed pollution degree (IEC 60664-1)			3 (only with connectors plugged in)

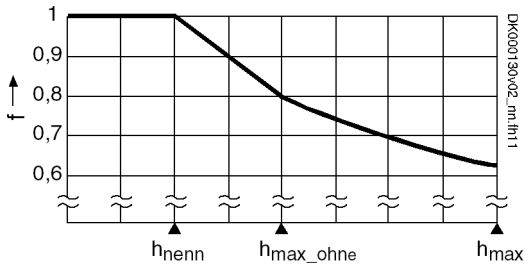
Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Maximum concentration of corrosive gases			According to degree of protection
Vibration sine: axial acceleration at 10 … 2000 Hz [1)]	-	g	1
Vibration sine: radial acceleration at 10 … 2000 Hz [1)]	-	g	1 With HAS10.1-001-001-NN accessories: 3
Overvoltage category	-	-	III (according to IEC 60664-1)

1) According to EN 60068-2-6
2) Reduced performance data for drive controllers: allowed DC bus continuous power, braking resistor continuous power, continuous current
3) Reduced performance data for motors: performance, torque S1 and S3

Tab. 4-9: Ambient and operating conditions (KSM)

Ambient and operating conditions (KMS, KMV, KNK, KLC)

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value	
Degree of protection (IEC 60529)	-	-	IP65	
Use within scope of CSA / UL	-	-	For use in NFPA 79 Applications only!	
Temperature during storage	-	-	See chapter 4.2.2 "Storing the components" on page 50	
Temperature during transport	-	-	See chapter 4.2.1 "Transporting the components" on page 49	
Allowed mounting position Definition of mounting positions: See chapter "Mounting positions of components" on page 59	-	-	KMS	arbitrary
			KMV, KNK, KLC	Cooling types B and I: G1, G2, G3, G4 Cooling types A and W: G1
Installation altitude	h_{nenn}	m	1000	
Ambient temperature range	T_{a_work}	°C	0 … 40	
Derating vs. ambient temperature: The performance data are reduced by the factor F_{Ta} in the ambient temperature range $T_{a\_work\_red}$: $F_{Ta} = 1 - [(T_a - 40) \times f_{Ta}]$ Example: With an ambient temperature T_a = 50 °C and a capacity utilization factor f_{Ta} = 3 %/K, the rated power is reduced to $P_{DC\_cont\_red} = P_{DC\_cont} \times F_{Ta} =$ $P_{DC\_cont} \times (1 - [(50 - 40) \times 0.03]) = P_{DC\_cont} \times 0.7$ Operation at ambient temperatures outside of T_{a_work} and $T_{a\_work\_red}$ is not allowed!				
	$T_{a\_work\_red}$	°C	40 … 55	
	f_{Ta}	%/K	3	

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value	
Derating vs. installation altitude: At an installation altitude h > h_{nenn}, the available performance data are reduced by the **factor f**. At an installation altitude in the range h_{max_ohne} to h_{max}, an isolating transformer has to be installed at the drive system mains connection. Operation above h_{max} is not allowed!				
	h_{max_ohne}	m	2000	
	h_{max}	m	4000	
Simultaneous derating for ambient temperature **and** installation altitude	Allowed; reduce performance data with the product of factors f and F_{Ta} (f × F_{Ta})			
Relative humidity	-	%	5 … 95	
Absolute humidity	-	g/m^3	1 … 29	
Climatic category (IEC721)	-		3K4	
Allowed pollution degree (IEC 60664-1)	-		3 (only with connectors plugged in)	
Maximum concentration of corrosive gases	-		According to degree of protection	
Vibration sine: axial KMS: acceleration at 10 … 2000 Hz [1)] KMV/KNK/KLC: acceleration at 5 … 200 Hz [2)]	-	g	KMS	1 With HAS10.1-001-001-NN accessories: 3
		-	KMV, KNK, KLC	3M6
Vibration sine: radial KMS: acceleration at 10 … 2000 Hz [1)] KMV/KNK/KLC: acceleration at 5 … 200 Hz [2)]	-	g	KMS	1 With HAS10.1-001-001-NN accessories: 3
		-	KMV, KNK, KLC	3M6
Overvoltage category			III (according to IEC 60664-1)	

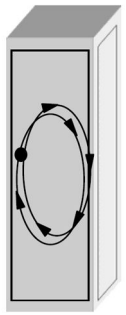
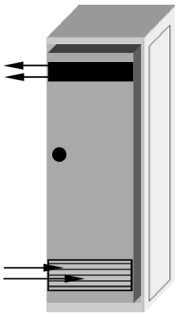
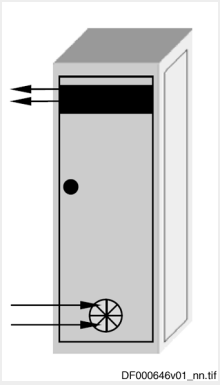
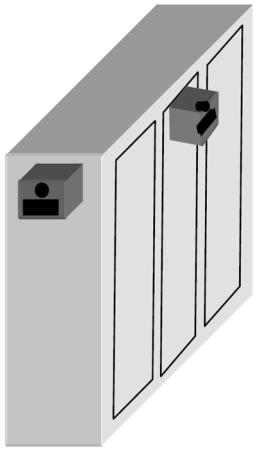
1) According to EN 60068-2-6
2) According to EN 60721-3-3

Tab. 4-10: Ambient and operating conditions (KMS, KMV, KNK, KLC)

4.3.2 Control cabinet design and cooling

☞ G1 is the only mounting position allowed for supply units and drive controllers installed in control cabinets.

Possible ways of heat dissipation

Closed control cabinet with air circulation	Closed control cabinet with heat exchanger	Control cabinet with fan	Closed control cabinet with air conditioning unit
 DF000644v01_nn.tif	 DF000645v01_nn.tif	 DF000646v01_nn.tif	 DF000647v01_nn.tif
P_Q ~ 400 W	P_Q ~ 1700 W	P_Q ~ 2700 W	P_Q ~ 4000 W

P_Q Dissipated heat output

Tab. 4-11: Possible ways of heat dissipation

The section below describes the "control cabinet with fan".

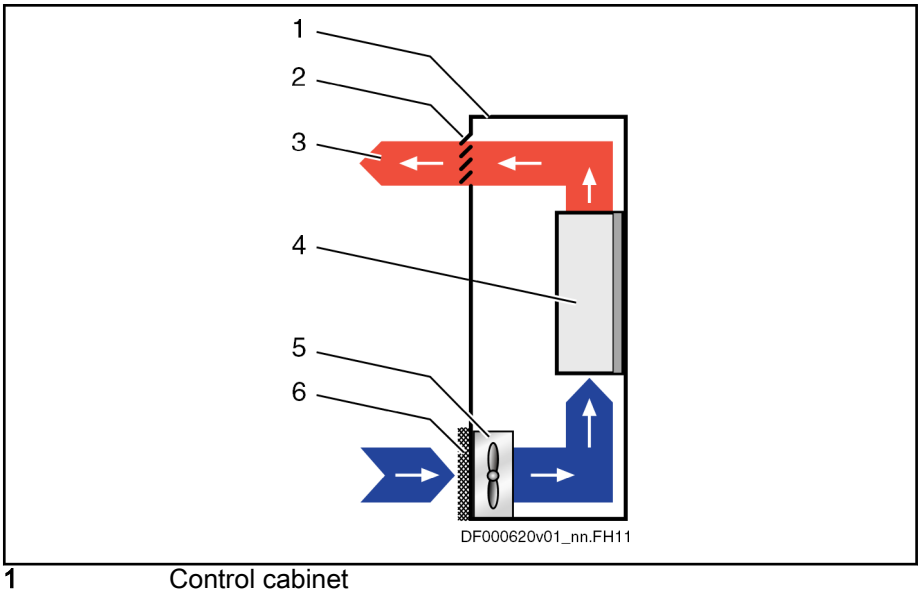
Requirements for control cabinets with fan

NOTICE **Risk of damage by unclean air in the control cabinet!**

Operating a control cabinet with a fan, but without the corresponding filters, can damage the devices or cause malfunction.

- Install filters at the air intake opening of the control cabinet so that unclean air cannot get into the control cabinet.
- Service the filters at regular intervals according to the dust loading in the environment.
- Only replace the filters when the fan has been switched off, because otherwise the fan sucks in the dirt coming off the filter and the dirt gets into the control cabinet.

Control cabinet ventilation (schematic diagram)



1	Control cabinet
2	Air outlet opening
3	Heat discharge
4	Device in control cabinet
5	Control cabinet fan
6	Filter at air intake opening

Fig. 4-1: Control cabinet ventilation (schematic diagram)

Only clean air gets into the control cabinet through the filter at the air intake opening. The control cabinet fan behind the air intake opening conveys the air into the control cabinet and generates overpressure in the control cabinet. The overpressure prevents unclean air from getting into the control cabinet through possibly existing leaky points (leaky cable ducts, damaged seals, etc.).

4.3.3 Mounting position

Mounting positions of components

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the components by incorrect mounting position!**

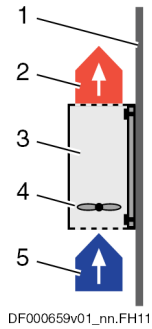
Only operate the components in their allowed mounting positions. The allowed mounting positions are specified in the technical data of the components.

For supply units and drive controllers installed in control cabinets, only the mounting position G1 is usually allowed.

Some components can also be operated in mounting positions other than G1. The allowed mounting positions are specified in the technical data of the component.

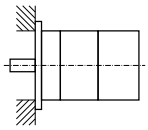
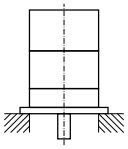
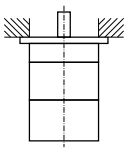
Mounting positions

The allowed mounting positions are specified with G1, G2, G3, G4 or G5 in the technical data of the components.

Mounting position	Description	
G1		**Normal mounting position** The air heated inside the component can flow unimpeded vertically upward. In the case of components with integrated fans, the natural convection supports the forced cooling air current. 1. Mounting surface 2. Outgoing, heated air 3. Component 4. Fan within the component (forces the cooling air current) 5. Cooling air
G2	180° to normal mounting position	
G3	90° to normal mounting position	
G4	bottom mounting; mounting surface on the bottom	
G5	top mounting; mounting surface at the top	

Tab. 4-12: Mounting positions

Mounting positions of motor-integrated servo drives

IM B5	IM V1	IM V3
		
Flange mounting on drive side of flange The drive electronics of a motor-integrated servo drive can be oriented as desired.	Flange mounting on drive side of flange, drive side bottom	Flange mounting on drive side of flange, drive side top

Tab. 4-13: Allowed types of installation according to EN 60034-7:1993

NOTICE **Damage caused by penetration of fluids!**

If fluid is present at the output shaft over a prolonged time in mounting position **IM V3**, the fluid may enter the housing and cause damage.

Ensure that fluid cannot be present at the output shaft.

4.3.4 Compatibility with foreign matters

All Rexroth controls and drives are developed and tested according to the state-of-the-art technology.

As it is impossible to follow the continuing development of all materials (e.g. lubricants in machine tools) which may interact with the controls and drives, it cannot be completely ruled out that any reactions with the materials we use might occur.

For this reason, before using the respective material a compatibility test has to be carried out for new lubricants, cleaning agents etc. and our housings/ materials.

4.3.5 Motor paint

As standard, the motors are **black (RAL9005)**.

4.4 Voltage testing and insulation resistance testing

According to standard, the **components** of the IndraDrive Mi range are tested with voltage.

Testing	Test rate
Voltage testing	100% (EN 61800-5-1)
Insulation resistance testing	100% (EN 60204-1)

Tab. 4-14: Applied standards

4.5 Control voltage (24V supply)

PELV[1] for 24V power supply unit

For the 24V supply of the devices of the IndraDrive Mi range, use a power supply unit or a control-power transformer with protection by PELV according to IEC 60204-1 (section 6.4).

A UL508-certified power supply unit has to be used in the scope of CSA/UL.

The data in the table below generally apply to the 24V supply of the devices of the IndraDrive Mi range. For other data, such as power consumption and inrush currents, see the technical data for each device.

The specified values apply at the connections (+24V, 0V) to the "24V supply" of the devices!

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Control voltage for drive systems	U_{N3}	V	**20.4 … 28.8** (24 +20% -15%) When using HMV01.1E, HMV01.1R, HMV02.1R, HLB01.1D supply units: **22.8 … 27.3** (24 -5%, 26 +5%)
Max. ripple content	w	-	The amplitudes of the alternating component on U_{N3} have to be within the specified voltage range.
Maximum allowed overvoltage	U_{N3max}	V	33 (max. 1 ms)

Tab. 4-15: Control voltage

Overvoltage

Overvoltage greater than 33 V has to be discharged by the appropriate electrical equipment of the machine or installation.

This includes:

- 24V power supply units that reduce incoming overvoltage to the allowed value.
- Overvoltage limiters at the control cabinet input that limit existing overvoltage to the allowed value. This also applies to long 24V lines that have been run in parallel to power cables and mains cables and can absorb overvoltage by inductive or capacitive coupling.

Applies to all devices except HCS01 and HMV02:

Insulation monitoring impossible

The input 0 V is connected in conductive form to the housing potential. Insulation monitoring at +24 V and 0 V against housing is impossible.

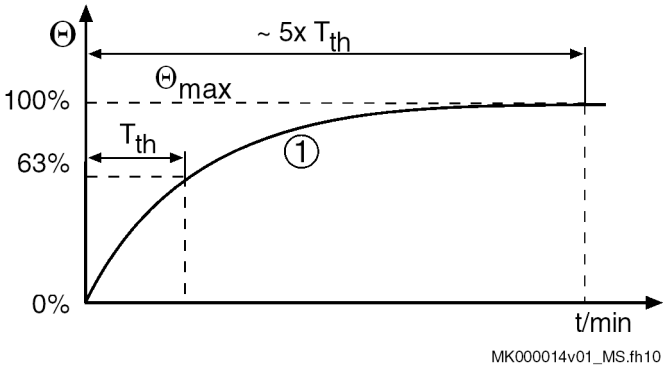
1) Protective Extra-Low Voltage

5 Technical data of the components

5.1 Explanation of terms and definitions

KSM02 data sheet with optional brake

Description	Symbol	Unit	Definition
Listing in accordance with UL standard (UL)			Standard used for UL listing
Listing in accordance with CSA standard (UL)			Standard used for CSA listing
UL files (UL)			UL file number under which the components are listed
Short circuit current rating, SCCR, symmetrical amperes (UL) [1]	I_{SCCR}	A $_{rms}$	Current which may flow at the point of infeed in the case of error (short circuit)
Ambient temperature during operation	T_{a_work}	°C	Ambient temperature during operation
Degree of protection			According to EN 60529
Ambient conditions acc. to UL50/50E			Ambient conditions acc. to UL50/50E
Mass	m_{mot}	kg	Mass of the component
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont} [2]	L_P	dB (A)	According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet
Control voltage supply			
Rated control voltage input (UL)	U_{N3}	V	Supply voltage of control electronics
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3} (UL)	P_{N3}	W	Power with which the power supply unit is loaded for 24V supply
Power section data			
Rated power (t > 10 min)	P_{LN_nenn}	W	Power consumption from the DC bus (L+, L-) at the point of maximum power (PML)
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively (UL)	P_{Diss_cont}	W	Occurring power dissipation at P_{LN_nenn}
Rated input voltage, power (UL) [3]	U_{LN_nenn}	V DC	Voltage supplied to the component at the power input
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	Capacitance in DC bus
Allowed switching frequencies [4]	f_s	kHz	Allowed switching frequencies
Motor stage data			
Continuous torque at standstill 60 K	M_{0_60}	Nm	Continuous torque that can be delivered at the motor output shaft at speed n ≥ 0.01 Hz and 4 kHz of switching frequency.
Maximum torque	M_{max}	Nm	Maximum torque that can be delivered for approx. 400 ms at maximum current I_{max} (manufacturing tolerances +5% / -20%).
Maximum current	$I_{max(rms)}$	A	Maximum, temporarily allowed phase current (rms value) in the motor winding without damaging effect on the permanent-magnet circuit of the motor.

Description	Symbol	Unit	Definition
Torque constant at 20 °C [5]	K_{M_N}	Nm/A	Ratio of torque to current in the motor winding (r.m.s. value) at motor temperature 20 °C. Unit (Nm/A).
Voltage constant at 20 °C [6]	K_{EMK_1000}	V/min^{-1}	R.m.s. value of the induced motor voltage at motor temperature 20 °C and 1000 revolutions per minute. Unit (V/ 1000 min^{-1}).
Rotor inertia	J_{rot}	kg*m^2	Rotor inertia
Thermal time constant	T_{th}	min	Time of the temperature rise to 63% of the end temperature of the motor housing with the motor loaded with the allowed S1 continuous torque. The thermal time constant is determined by the size of the motor and the cooling type used.  MK000014v01_MS.fh10 1: course of the motor housing temperature over time $Θ_{max}$: highest temperature (motor housing) T_{th}: thermal time constant
Maximum speed	n_{max}	min^{-1}	Maximum allowed speed of the motor. Limiting factors can have mechanical (centrifugal forces, bearing stress) or electrical (DC bus voltage) causes.
Insulation class according to DIN EN 60034–1			Insulation class
Data of optional holding brake			
Holding torque	M_4	Nm	Transmittable holding torque
Clamping delay	t_1	ms	ON delay when clamping
Release delay	t_2	ms	Release delay
Brake mass	m_{Br}	kg	Add mass of holding brake to mass of motor
Holding brake inertia	J_{rot}	kg*m^2	Add holding brake inertia to rotor inertia

1) Suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than this SCCR value, 600 V AC or less. The drive series shall be used with listed AC input line fuses or listed circuit breakers specified in this documentation.

2) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet

3) KCU02: DC bus input L+/L-

4) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P–0–0001, Switching frequency of the power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"

5) 6) Manufacturing tolerance ±5%

Tab. 5-1: KSM02.1B-041, KSM02.1B-061, KSM02.1B-071, KSM02.1B-076 data sheet

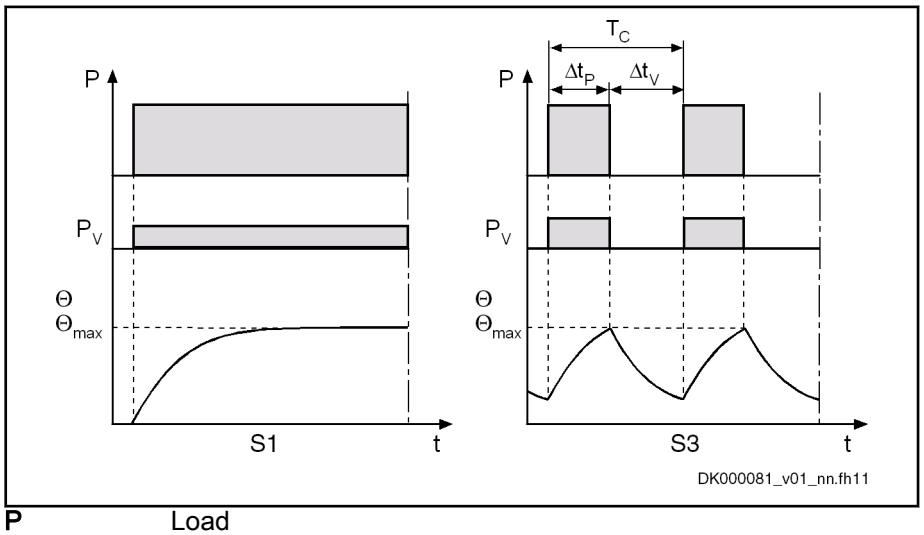
Motor data

The motor data and characteristics are determined under the following conditions:

- Ambient temperature 40 °C
- Insulated structure (aluminum flange)
- Amplifier temperature S-0-0384 = 100 °C (ΔT = 60 K); this temperature is slightly higher than the temperature of the motor housing
- Switching frequency 4 kHz (at 8 kHz reduced continuous torque and peak torque)
- Motors with radial shaft sealing ring

Operation modes

KSM02 motor-integrated servo drives are documented according to the test criteria and measuring methods of EN 60034-1. The specified characteristics correspond to operation modes S1 or S3.



P Load
P_V Electric losses
Θ Temperature
$Θ_{max}$ Highest temperature (motor housing)
t Time
T_C Cycle duration
$Δt_P$ Operating time with constant load
$Δt_V$ Idle time

Fig. 5-1: Operation modes according to EN 60034-1: 1998

Duty cycle

Operation mode S3 (intermittent duty) is supplemented by specification of the duty cycle ED %. The duty cycle is calculated as follows:

$$ED = \frac{\Delta t_P}{T_C} \cdot 100\%$$

ED Relative duty cycle in %
$Δt_P$ Operating time with constant load

Fig. 5-2: Relative duty cycle

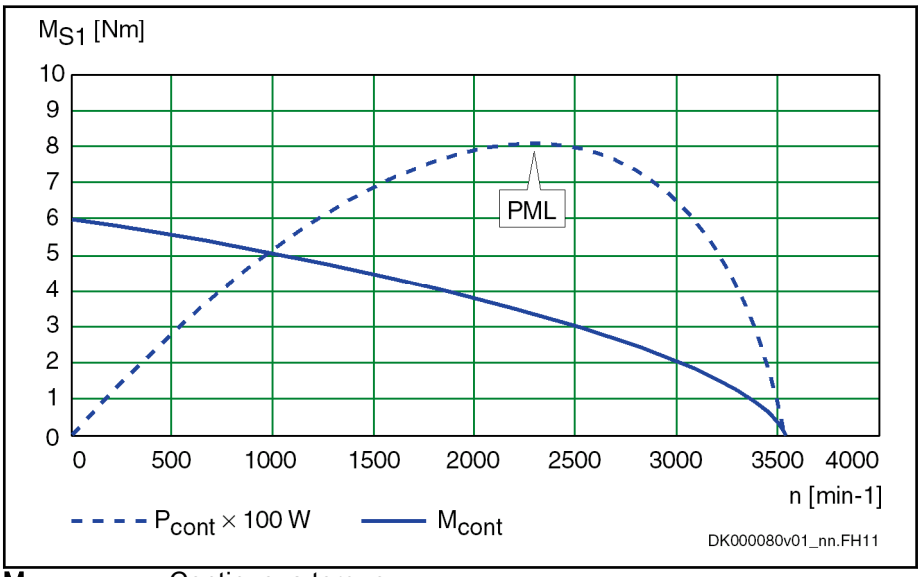
The values specified in the documentation have been determined on the basis of the following parameters:

Cycle duration: 1 min

Duty cycle ED: 25%

DC continuous power P_{DC}

Power consumption at the point of maximum power (PML); mechanical power and power dissipation



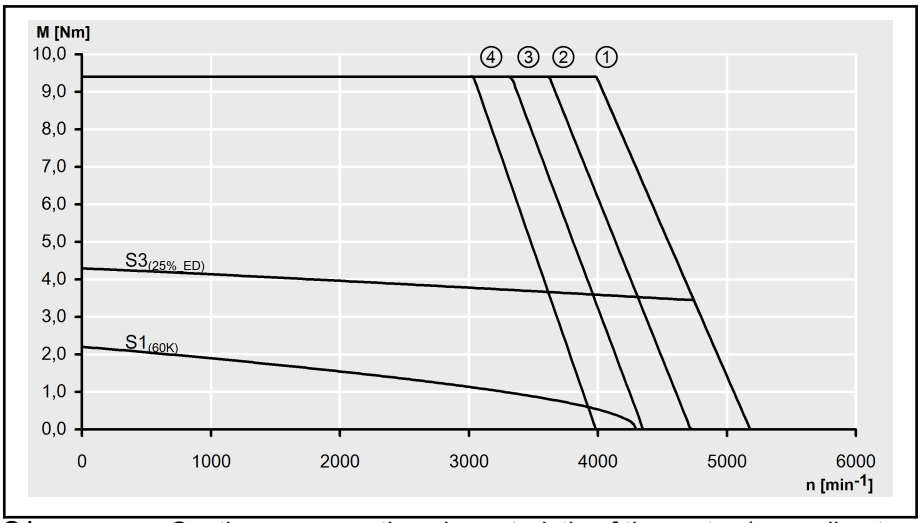
M_{cont} Continuous torque
M_{S1} S1 torque
n Speed
P_{cont} Continuous power
P_{ML} Point of maximum power

Fig. 5-3: Power consumption

DC peak power P_{DC_max}

Maximum allowed DC bus power at nominal voltage

Sample characteristic



S1 Continuous operation characteristic of the motor (according to EN 60034-1; 1998), natural convection
S3 Intermittent duty characteristic with 25% ED of the motor (according to EN 60034-1; 1998) and max. cycle duration 1 min.
(1) M_{max}, controlled supply DC 750 V
(2)(3)(4) M_{max}, uncontrolled supply 3 × AC 400 V; the voltage drop on the supply line has not been taken into account

Fig. 5-4: Sample characteristic

5.2 KSM02 motor-integrated servo drive

5.2.1 KSM02 without motor holding brake, data sheet

KSM without motor holding brake, data sheet

Description	Symbol	Unit	KSM02.1B-041C-42N-__-__0	KSM02.1B-061C-35N-__-__0	KSM02.1B-061C-61N-__-__0	KSM02.1B-071C-24N-__-__0	KSM02.1B-071C-35N-__-__0	KSM02.1B-076C-35N-__-__0
Listing in accordance with UL standard		-	UL 508C					
Listing in accordance with CSA standard		-	C22.2 No. 274-13					
UL-Files			E134201					
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A, KCU supplied	42000					
Maximum through current		A	25.0					
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0...40					
Degree of protection according to IEC 60529	IP		IP65					
Ambient conditions acc. to UL50/50E			Type 4X Indoor use only					
Mass	m_{mot}	kg	5.6	9.6		14.1		14.6
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont} [1)]	L_P	dB (A)	Less than 75					
Control voltage data								
Rated control voltage input [2)]	U_{N3}	V	DC 30...42					
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3} [3)]	P_{N3}	W	17.5					
Power section data								
Rated power (t > 10 min)	P_{LN_nenn}	W	470	895	765	1320	1285	1200
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively [4)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	70	140		175		165
Rated input voltage, power [5)]	U_{LN_nenn}	V	540...750					
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	0.012	0.024				
Capacitance against housing [8)]	C_Y	nF	50 + 100					
Allowed switching frequencies [6)]	f_s	kHz	4; 8					
Motor stage data								
Latest amendment: 2017-01-24*								

Description	Symbol	Unit	KSM02.1 B-041C-42N-__-__0	KSM02.1 B-061C-35N-__-__0	KSM02.1 B-061C-61N-__-__0	KSM02.1 B-071C-24N-__-__0	KSM02.1 B-071C-35N-__-__0	KSM02.1 B-076C-35N-__-__0
Continuous torque at standstill 60 K	M_{0_60}	Nm	2.2	6.0	5.5	10.5	10.0	8.7
Maximum torque	M_{max}	Nm	9.4	25.0	18.0	35.0	28.0	29.0
Maximum current	$I_{max(rms)}$	A	6.8	14.9	17.7			
Torque constant at 20 °C	K_{M_N}	Nm/A	1.60	2.03	1.16	2.52	1.85	
Voltage constant at 20 °C[7)]	K_{EMK_1000}	V/1000 min^{-1}	98.2	125.0	71.5	155.0	114.0	113.8
Rotor inertia	J_{rot}	$kg*m^2$	0.00017	0.00087		0.00173		0.00430
Thermal time constant	T_{th}	min	13	18		15		25
Maximum speed (electrical)	$n_{max\ el}$	min^{-1}	5500	4300	6000	3400	4700	
Thermal class (EN 60034-1)	T.CL.		155					
Latest amendment: 2017-01-24*								

1) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet
2) Comply with supply voltage for motor holding brake
3) See information on "Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}"
4) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
5) Mains input L1, L2, L3 (for HMV and HCS only); For use on a solidly grounded wye source only.
6) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of the power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"; for supply units the switching frequency is 4.2 kHz
7) Manufacturing tolerance ±5%
8) 50 nF: L+ against ground; 100 nF: L- against ground

Tab. 5-2: KSM without motor holding brake - Technical data

Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}

Plus safety option

5.2.2 KSM02 with motor holding brake, data sheet

*The data of KSM02 **with** motor holding brake differ from the data of KSM02 **without** motor holding brake in the following aspects:*

- Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}
- Mass
- Rotor inertia
- Motor holding brake

KSM with motor holding brake, data sheet

Description	Symbol	Unit	KSM02.1B-041C-42N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-061C-35N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-061C-61N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-071C-24N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-071C-35N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-076C-35N-__-__2
Listing in accordance with UL standard		-	UL 508C					
Listing in accordance with CSA standard		-	C22.2 No. 274-13					
UL-Files			E134201					
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A, KCU supplied	42000					
Maximum through current		A	25.0					
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0...40					
Degree of protection according to IEC 60529	IP		IP65					
Ambient conditions acc. to UL50/50E			Type 4X Indoor use only					
Mass	m_{mot}	kg	5.9	10.1		15.2		15.7
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont} [1)]	L_P	dB (A)	< 75					
Control voltage data								
Rated control voltage input [2)]	U_{N3}	V	DC 30...42					
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3} [3)]	P_{N3}	W	29.5	35.5		41.5		
Power section data								
Rated power (t > 10 min)	P_{LN_nenn}	W	470	895	765	1320	1285	1200
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively [4)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	70	140		175		165
Rated input voltage, power [5)]	U_{LN_nenn}	V	540...750					
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	0.012	0.024				
Latest amendment: 2017-01-24*								

Description	Symbol	Unit	KSM02.1B-041C-42N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-061C-35N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-061C-61N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-071C-24N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-071C-35N-__-__2	KSM02.1B-076C-35N-__-__2
Capacitance against housing[8)]	C_Y	nF	50 + 100					
Allowed switching frequencies[6)]	f_s	kHz	4; 8					
Motor stage data								
Continuous torque at standstill 60 K	M_{0_60}	Nm	2.2	6.0	5.5	10.5	10.0	8.7
Maximum torque	M_{max}	Nm	9.4	25.0	18.0	35.0	28.0	29.0
Maximum current	$I_{max(rms)}$	A	6.8	14.9	17.7			
Torque constant at 20 °C	K_{M_N}	Nm/A	1.60	2.03	1.16	2.52	1.85	
Voltage constant at 20 °C[7)]	K_{EMK_1000}	V/1000 min-1	98.2	125.0	71.5	155.0	114.0	113.8
Rotor inertia	J_{rot}	kg*m²	0.00019	0.00093		0.00189		0.00446
Thermal time constant	T_{th}	min	13	18		15		25
Maximum speed (electrical)	$n_{max\ el}$	min^{-1}	5500	4300	6000	3400	4700	
Thermal class (EN 60034-1)	T.CL.		155					
Holding brake data								
Holding torque	M_4	Nm	4.00	10.00		16.00		
Maximum clamping delay	t_1	ms	25			30		
Maximum release delay	t_2	ms	35	40		50		
Holding brake mass	m_{Br}	kg	-					
Holding brake inertia	J_{br}	kg*m²	0.0000230	0.0000590		0.0001610		
								Latest amendment: 2017-01-24*

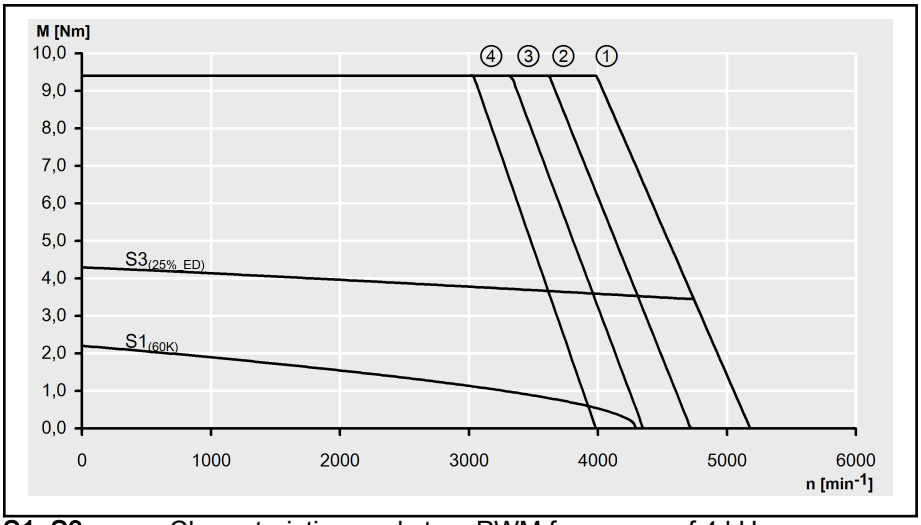
1) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet; HCS types in -L*** design: load-dependent
2) Comply with supply voltage for motor holding brake
3) See information on "Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}"
4) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
5) Mains input L1, L2, L3 (for HMV and HCS only); For use on a solidly grounded wye source only.
6) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of the power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"; for supply units the switching frequency is 4.2 kHz
7) Manufacturing tolerance ±5%
8) 50 nF: L+ against ground; 100 nF: L- against ground

Tab. 5-3: KSM with motor holding brake - Technical data

☞ **Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}**

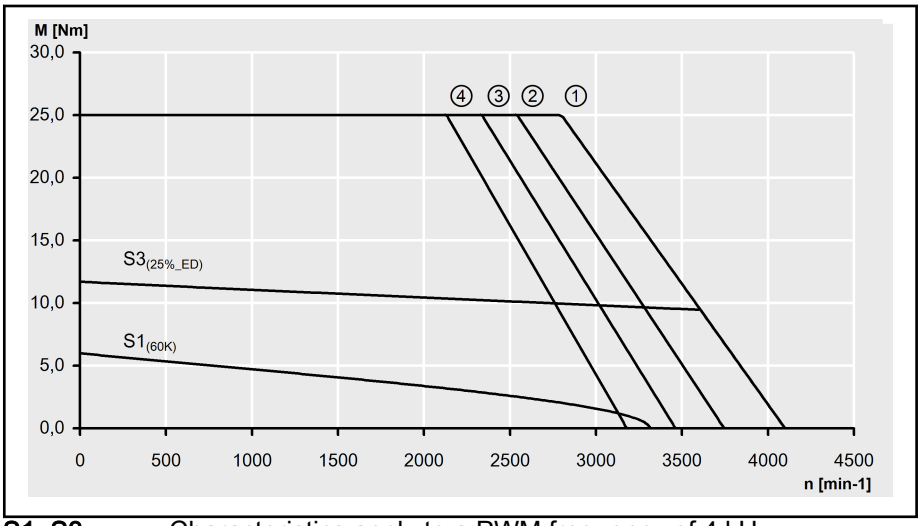
Including motor holding brake, plus safety option

5.2.3 KSM02 characteristics



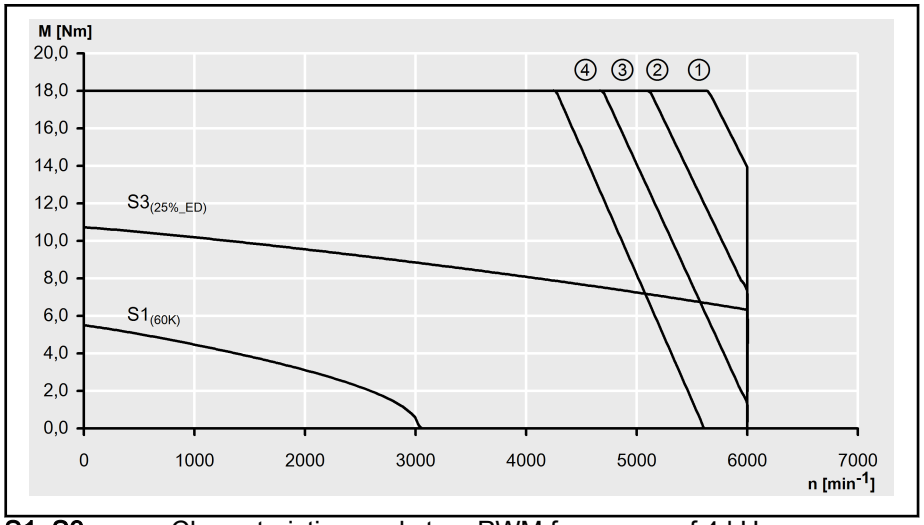
S1, S3 Characteristics apply to a PWM frequency of 4 kHz
(1) M_{max}, controlled supply (1) 3 × AC 400 V
(2)(3)(4) M_{max}, uncontrolled supply (2) 3 × AC 480 V, (3) 3 × AC 440 V, (4) 3 × AC 400 V

Fig. 5-5: KSM02.1B-041C-42 characteristics



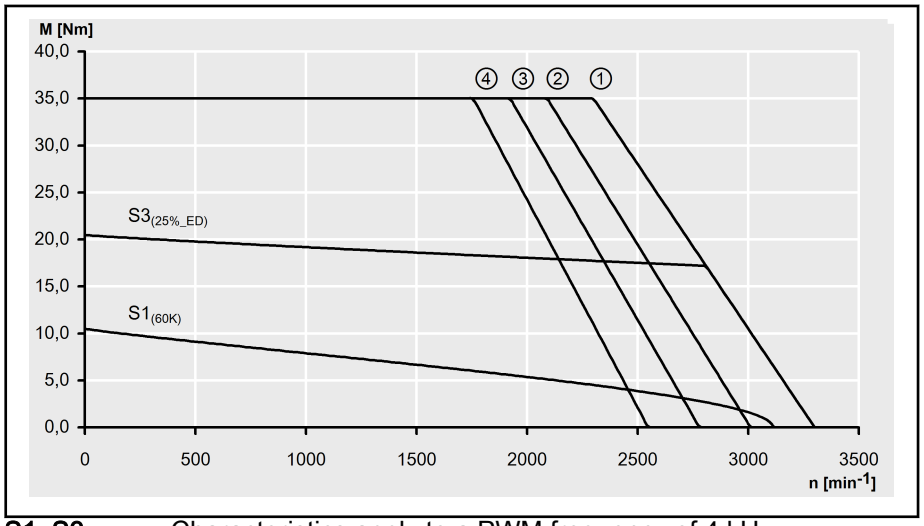
S1, S3 Characteristics apply to a PWM frequency of 4 kHz
(1) M_{max}, controlled supply (1) 3 × AC 400 V
(2)(3)(4) M_{max}, uncontrolled supply (2) 3 × AC 480 V, (3) 3 × AC 440 V, (4) 3 × AC 400 V

Fig. 5-6: KSM02.1B-061C-35 characteristics



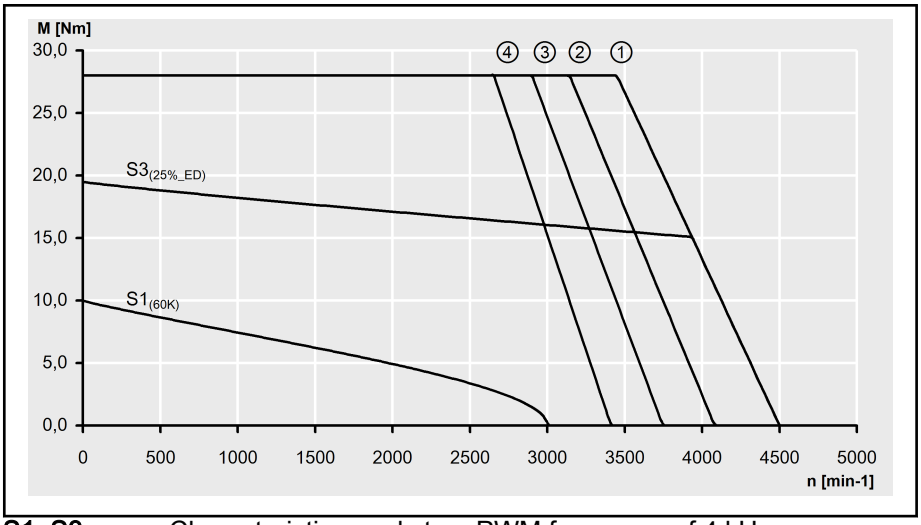
S1, S3 Characteristics apply to a PWM frequency of 4 kHz
(1) M_{max}, controlled supply (1) 3 × AC 400 V
(2)(3)(4) M_{max}, uncontrolled supply (2) 3 × AC 480 V, (3) 3 × AC 440 V, (4) 3 × AC 400 V

Fig. 5-7: KSM02.1B-061C-61 characteristics



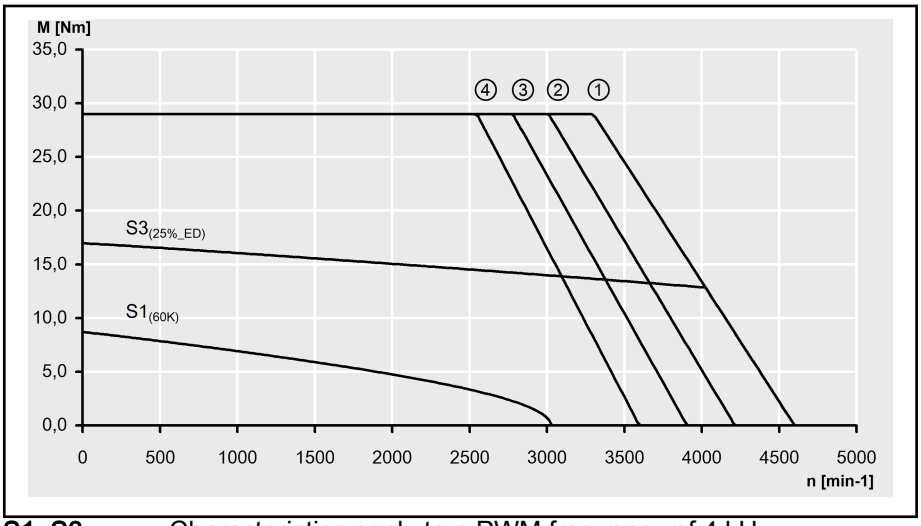
S1, S3 Characteristics apply to a PWM frequency of 4 kHz
(1) M_{max}, controlled supply (1) 3 × AC 400 V
(2)(3)(4) M_{max}, uncontrolled supply (2) 3 × AC 480 V, (3) 3 × AC 440 V, (4) 3 × AC 400 V

Fig. 5-8: KSM02.1B-071C-24 characteristics



S1, S3 Characteristics apply to a PWM frequency of 4 kHz
(1) M_{max}, controlled supply (1) 3 × AC 400 V
(2)(3)(4) M_{max}, uncontrolled supply (2) 3 × AC 480 V, (3) 3 × AC 440 V, (4) 3 × AC 400 V

Fig. 5-9: KSM02.1B-071C-35 characteristics

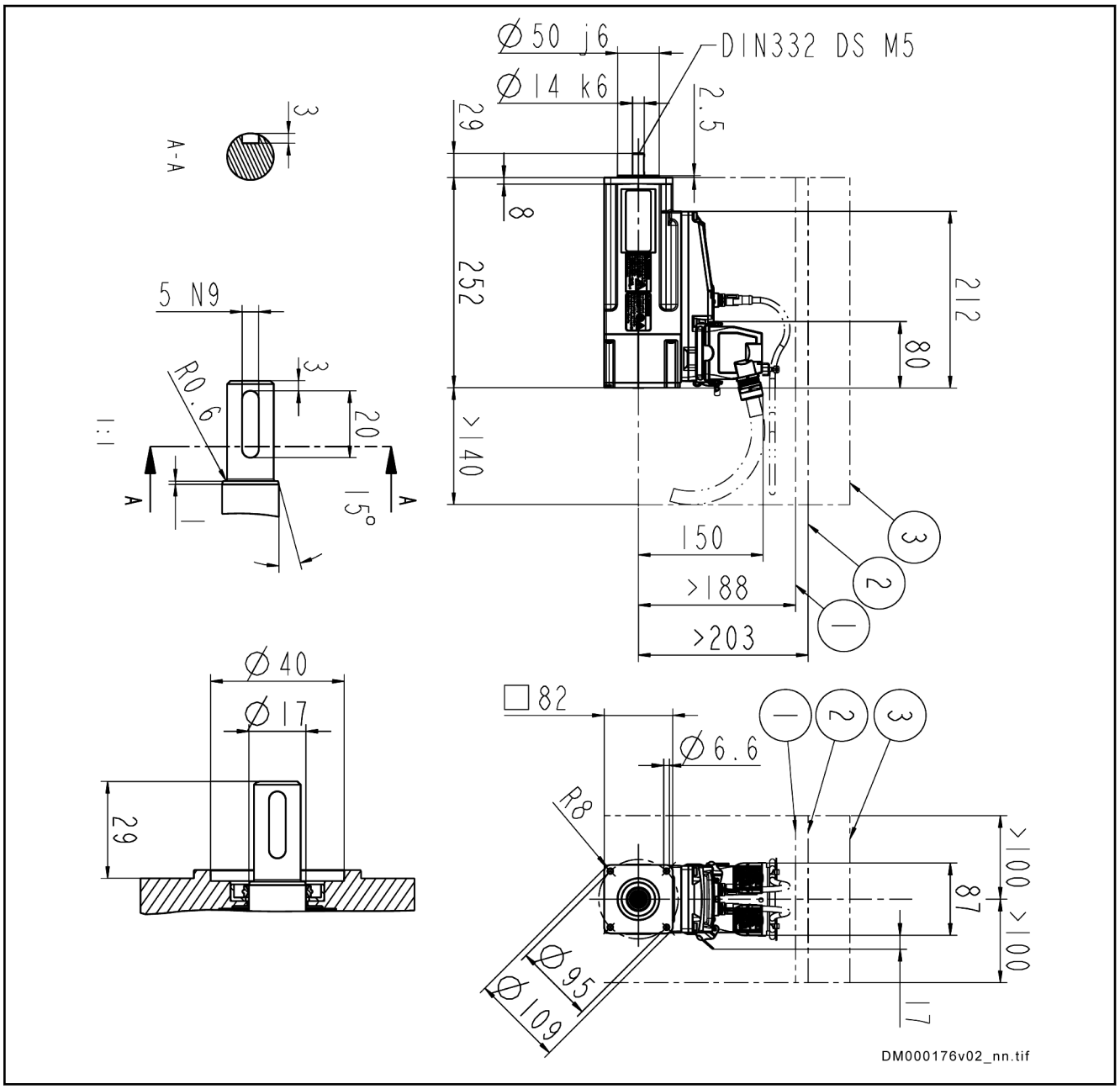


S1, S3 Characteristics apply to a PWM frequency of 4 kHz
(1) M_{max}, controlled supply (1) 3 × AC 400 V
(2)(3)(4) M_{max}, uncontrolled supply (2) 3 × AC 480 V, (3) 3 × AC 440 V, (4) 3 × AC 400 V

Fig. 5-10: KSM02.1B-076C-35 characteristics

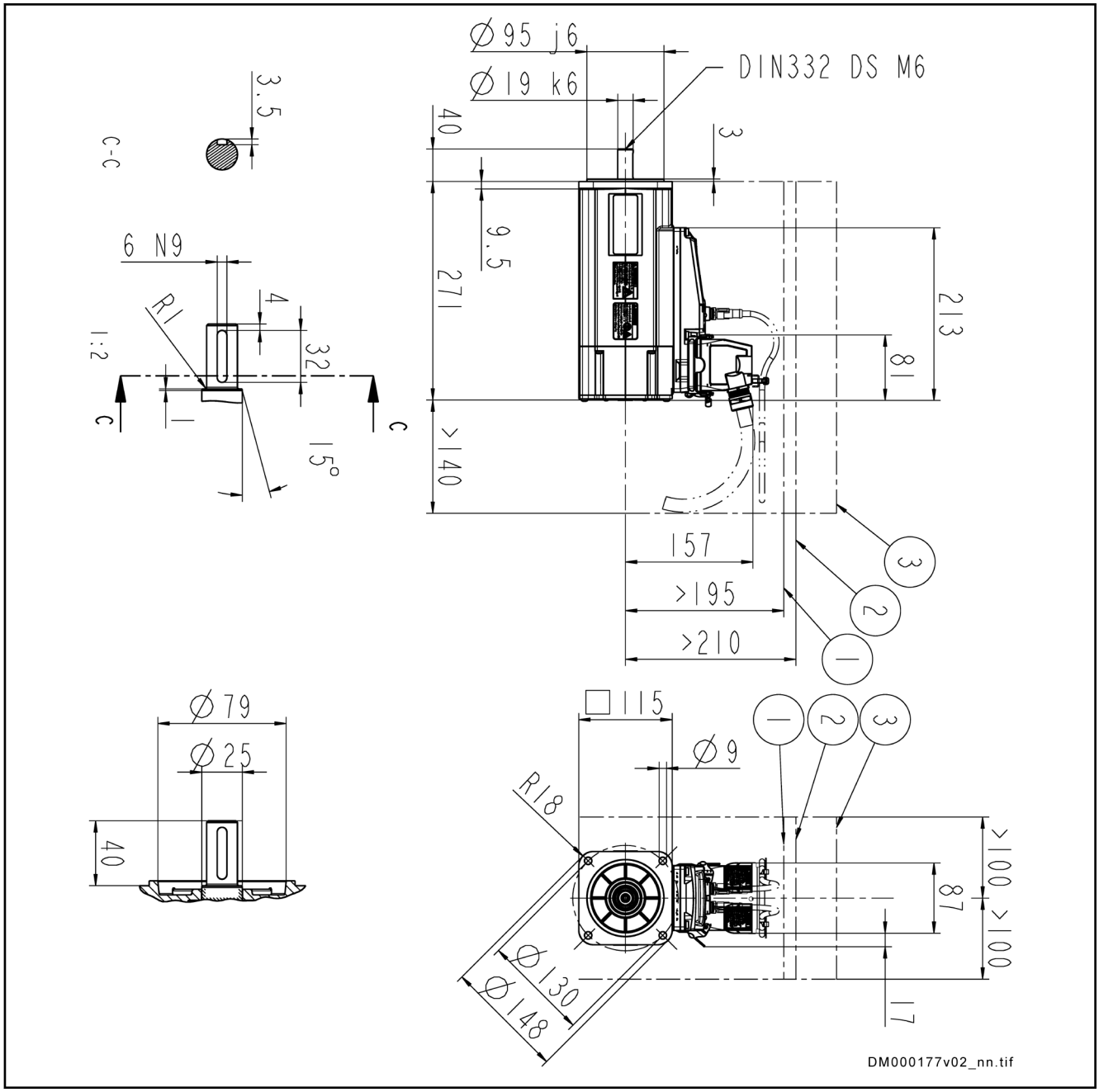
5.2.4 Dimensions and technical design

Dimensions



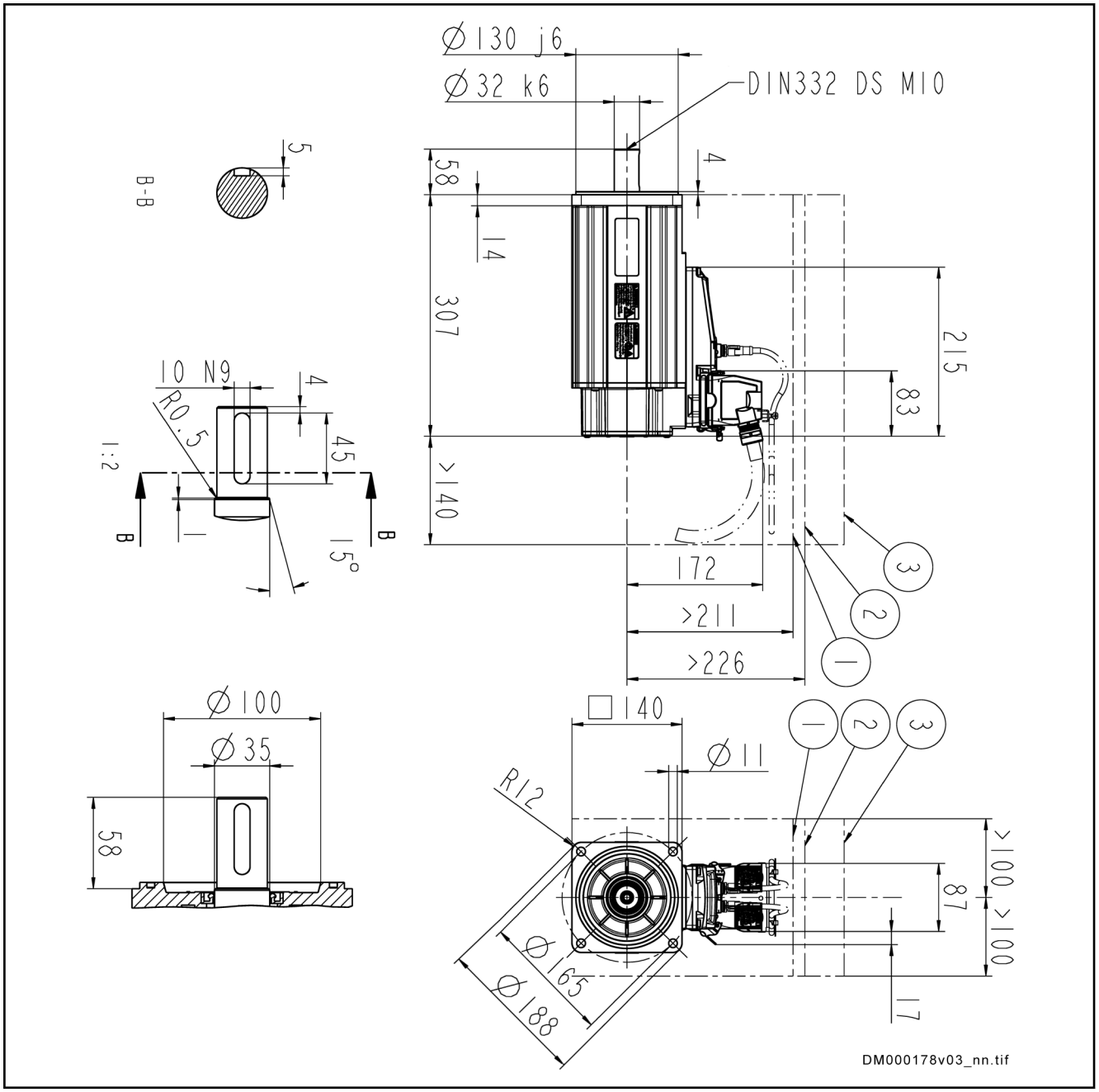
1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver. The exact dimension of the mounting clearance is not specified, since the required mounting clearance depends on the length of the screwdriver used.

Fig. 5-11: KSM02.1B-041C dimensions



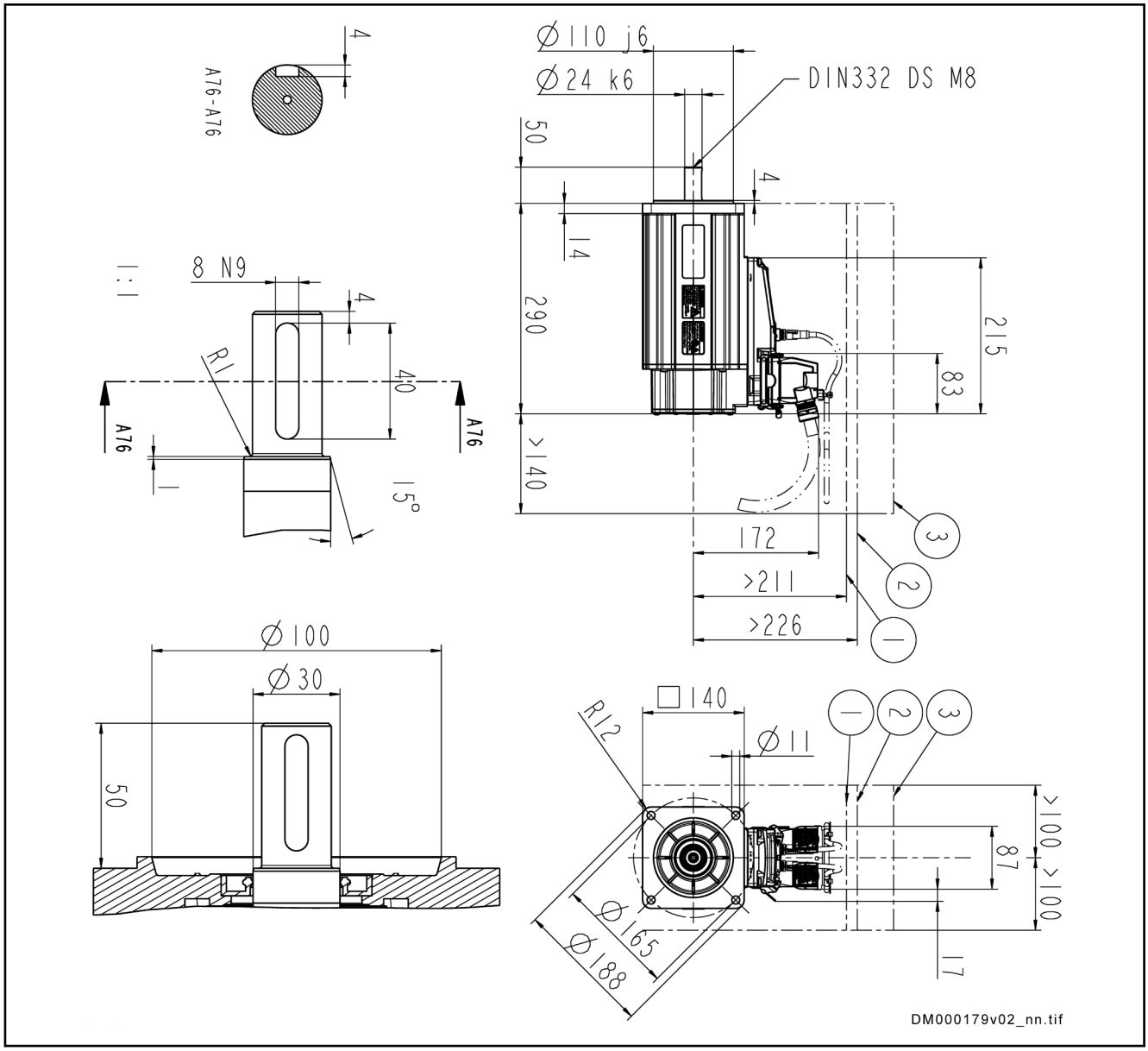
1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver. The exact dimension of the mounting clearance is not specified, since the required mounting clearance depends on the length of the screwdriver used.

Fig. 5-12: KSM02.1B-061C dimensions



1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver. The exact dimension of the mounting clearance is not specified, since the required mounting clearance depends on the length of the screwdriver used.

Fig. 5-13: KSM02.1B-071C dimensions



1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver. The exact dimension of the mounting clearance is not specified, since the required mounting clearance depends on the length of the screwdriver used.

Fig. 5-14: KSM02.1B-076C dimensions

Technical design

Type of construction of motor
Type of construction of motor B5 according to EN 60034-7

Housing varnish
Black, RAL 9005

Vibration severity level (vibration quality)
A, according to EN 60034-14: 2004

Concentricity, run-out and alignment
According to DIN 42955, ed. 12.81 (IEC 60072-1)

Encoder	Concentricity tolerance		Run-out and alignment tolerance	
S1, S3, M1, M3	N	---	N	---

Tab. 5-4: Tolerance for concentricity, run-out and alignment, depending on encoder option

Flange
According to DIN 42948, ed. 11.65

Output shaft, shaft end and centering hole
Motors with keyway have been balanced with the **complete** key. The machine element to be driven has to be balanced without a key.

Shaft end cylindrical, acc. to DIN 748 part 3, ed. 07.75 (IEC 60072-1)

Centering hole, according to DIN 332 part 2, ed. 05.83

Type	Corresponding key, according to DIN 6885-A (is not part of the scope of supply of the motors)	Centering hole, according to DIN 332 part 2, ed. 05.83
KSM02.1B-041	5 × 5 × 20	DS M5
KSM02.1B-061	6 × 6 × 32	DS M6
KSM02.1B-071	10 × 8 × 45	DS M10
KSM02.1B-076	8 × 7 × 40	DS M8

Tab. 5-5: Key and centering hole

5.2.5 Bearing load and shaft load

See chapter 7.3 "Notes on mechanical project planning" on page 256 for further information on

- Allowed radial and axial forces
- Shaft load
- Bearings

Radial force F_{radial}

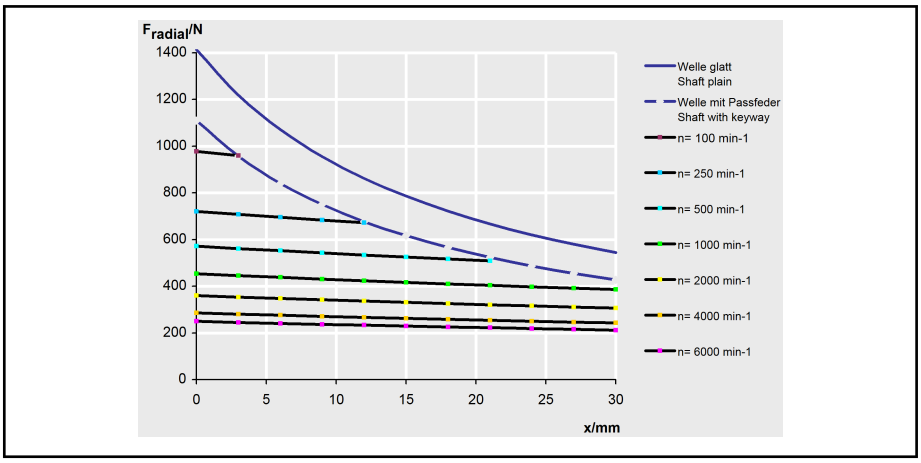


Fig. 5-15: KSM02.1B-041: Allowed radial force (shaft and bearing load)

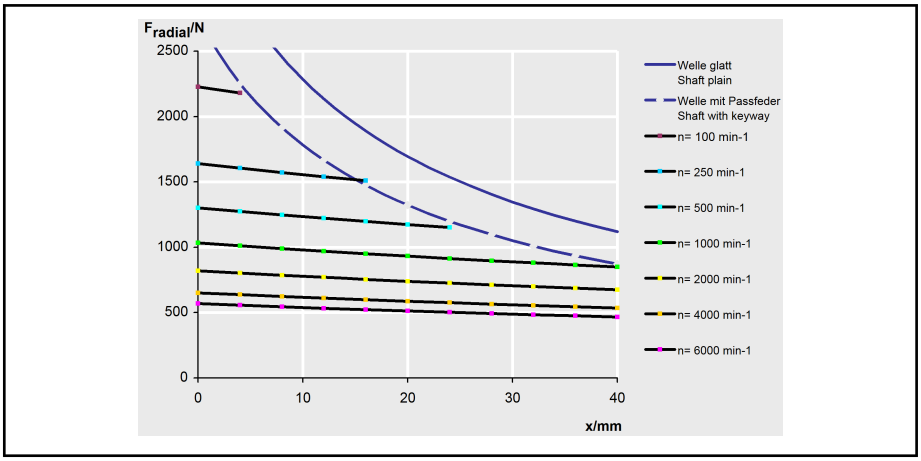


Fig. 5-16: KSM02.1B-061: Allowed radial force (shaft and bearing load)

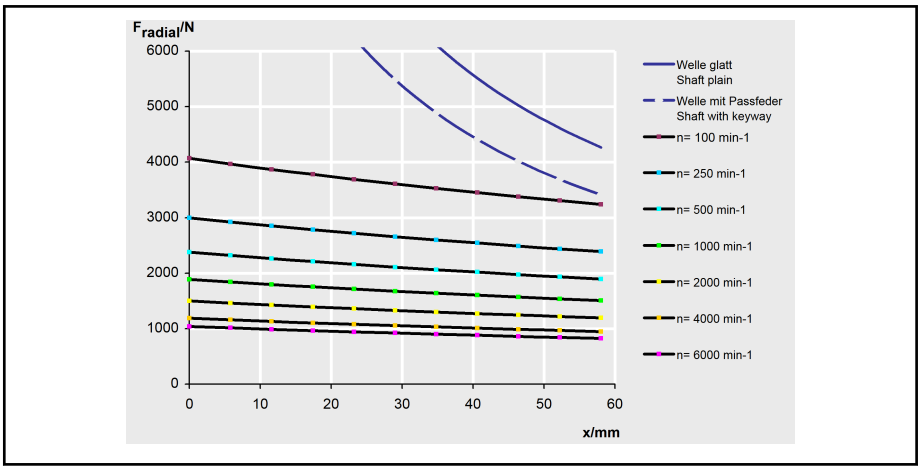


Fig. 5-17: KSM02.1B-071: Allowed radial force (shaft and bearing load)

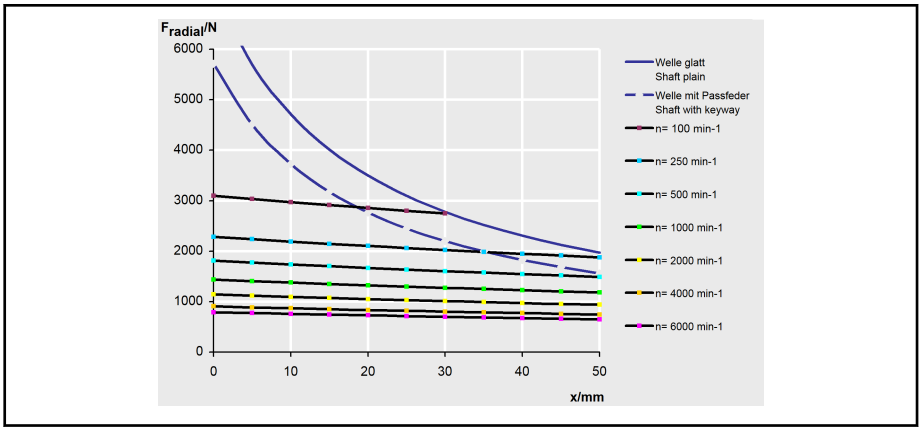


Fig. 5-18: KSM02.1B-076: Allowed radial force (shaft and bearing load)

Axial force F_{axial}

Type	Maximum allowed axial force in [N]
KSM02.1B-041	20
KSM02.1B-061	20
KSM02.1B-071	40
KSM02.1B-076	40

Tab. 5-6: Allowed axial force

5.3 KMS02 near motor servo drive

5.3.1 KMS02 data sheet

KMS data sheet

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMS02.1B-A018-P-D7-ET-NNN-NN-NN
Listing in accordance with UL standard			UL 508C
Listing in accordance with CSA standard			C22.2 No. 274-13
UL-Files			E134201
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0...40
Degree of protection according to IEC60529			IP65
Ambient conditions acc. to UL50/50E			4X Indoor Use Only
Mass	m	kg	2.50
Control voltage data			
Control voltage input[1)]	U_{N3}	V	DC 30...42
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}[2)]	P_{N3}	W	17.5
Power section data			
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	42000
Rated input voltage, power[3)]	U_{LN_nenn}	V	DC 540...750
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	0.02
Capacitance against housing[9)]	C_Y	nF	118+100
Rated input current	I_{LN}	A	7.3
Allowed switching frequencies[4)]	f_s	kHz	4, 8
Maximum through current		A	Bypass max. 25 A
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively[5)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	50.00
Power section data - output			
Output voltage, fundamental wave in V/Hz (U/f) control	U_{out_eff}	V	U_{DC} * 0.71
Output voltage, fundamental wave in closed-loop operation	U_{out_eff}	V	-
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 7.5 m motor cable length phase-phase (10-90%)[6)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	5.00
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 7.5 m motor cable length phase-ground (10-90%)[7)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	5.00
			Latest amendment: 2018-02-22*

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMS02.1B-A018-P-D7-ET-NNN-NN-NN
Output frequency range when f_s = 4 kHz	f_{out_4k}	Hz	0...400
Output frequency range when f_s = 8 kHz	f_{out_8k}	Hz	0...800
Output frequency threshold to detect motor standstill[8)]	f_{out_still}	Hz	0...4
Maximum output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_max4}	A	17.7
Maximum output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_max8}	A	13.3
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_cont4}	A	5.8
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_cont8}	A	2.6
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz; output frequency f_{out} less than f_{out_still}	$I_{out\_cont0Hz\_4}$	A	5.6
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz; output frequency f_{out} less than f_{out_still}	$I_{out\_cont0Hz\_8}$	A	2.4
			Latest amendment: 2018-02-22*

1) Comply with supply voltage for motor holding brake
2) See information on "Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}"
3) Mains input L1, L2, L3 (for HMV and HCS only); For use on a solidly grounded wye source only.
4) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of the power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"; for supply units the switching frequency is 4.2 kHz
5) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
6) 7) Guide value, see following note
8) See following note regarding output current reduction
9) 118 nF: L+ against ground; 100 nF: L- against ground

Tab. 5-7: KMS - Technical data

☞ **Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}**

Plus motor holding brake, plus power consumption of externally connected inputs/outputs, plus safety option

☞ **Guide value "Rise of voltage at output"**

Observe that the voltage load at the motor is almost independent of the power section used.

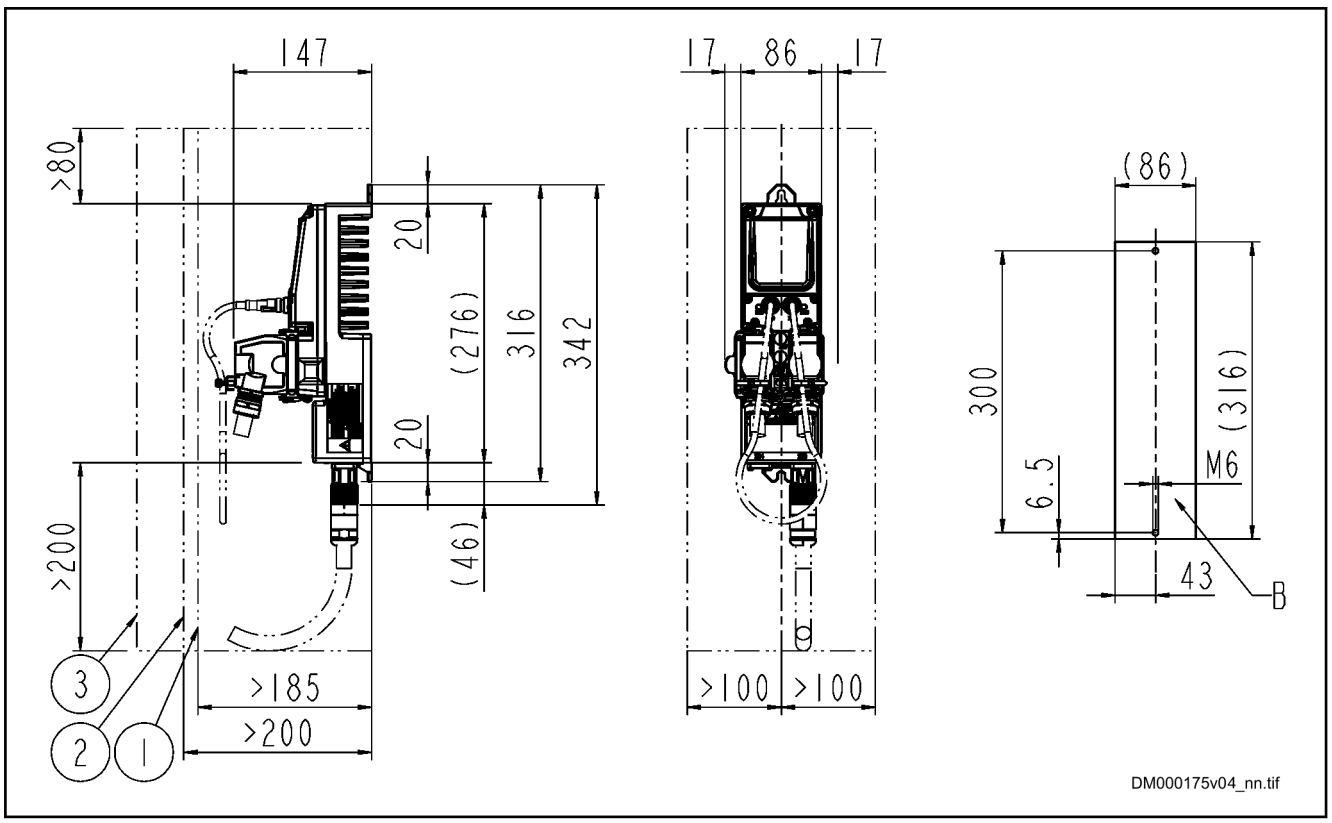
Especially when using **standard motors**, make sure that they comply with the occurring voltage load.

Reduced output current at motor standstill

Depending on the electric output frequency, the output current is reduced for thermal protection of the power section.

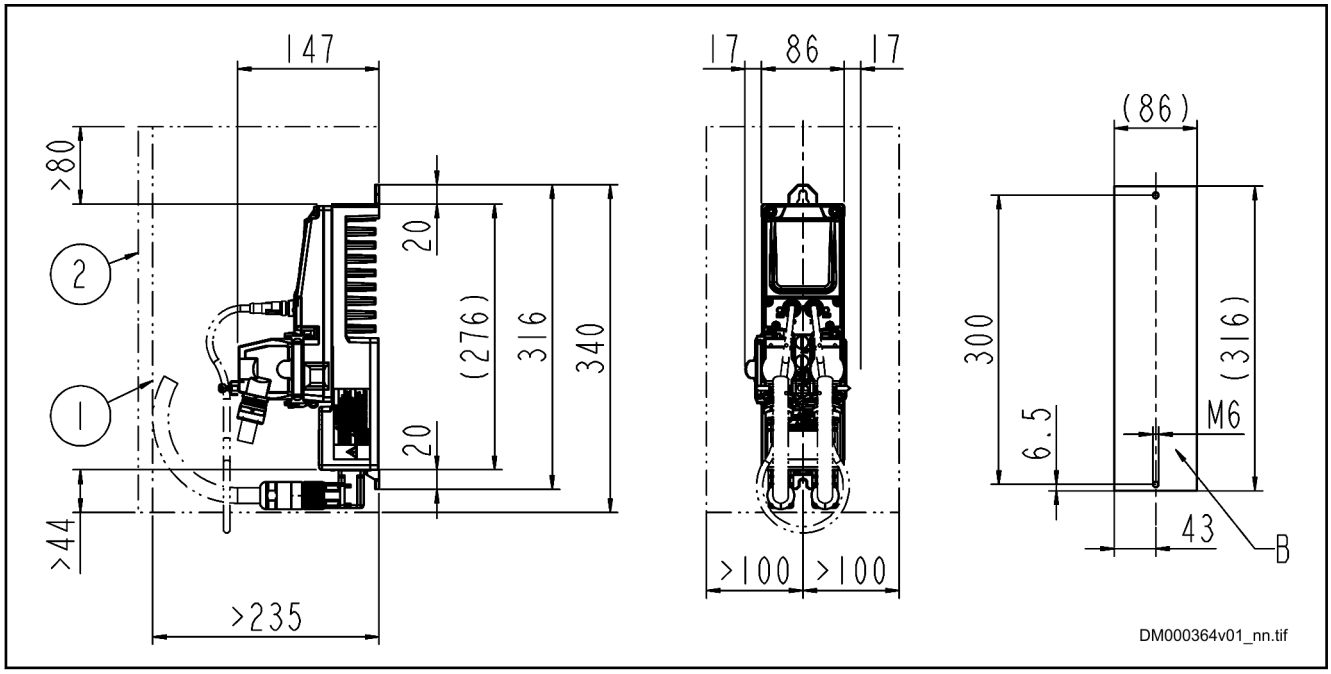
The output current is reduced, when the electric output frequency has fallen below the threshold to detect motor standstill.

5.3.2 KMS02 dimensional drawing



1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver. The exact dimension of the mounting clearance is not specified, since the required mounting clearance depends on the length of the screwdriver used.
B	Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-19: Dimensions



1 Mounting clearance (standard)

2 More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver. The exact dimension of the mounting clearance is not specified, since the required mounting clearance depends on the length of the screwdriver used.

B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-20: Dimensions (with angular connector for motor and encoder connection)

5.4 KCU02 drive connection box

5.4.1 Brief description and use

KCU02 drive connection box

The KCU02 drive connection box

- supplies the KSM motor-integrated servo drives and KMS near motor servo drives
  - with power (from the DC bus connection to a supply unit or converter)
  - with 42V control voltage
- with integrated fuses protects the RKH hybrid cable against electric overload
- allows the higher-level control unit to communicate with the KSM motor-integrated servo drives and KMS near motor servo drives

5.4.2 KCU02 data sheet

KCU data sheet - Currents, voltages, power

Description	Symbol	Unit	KCU02.2N-ET-ET*-025-NN-N-NN-NW
Listing in accordance with UL standard			UL 508C
Listing in accordance with CSA standard			C22.2 No. 274-13
UL-Files			E134201
Mass	m	kg	3.80
Degree of protection according to IEC60529			IP20
Minimum distance on the top of the device[1)]	d_{top}	mm	80
Minimum distance on the bottom of the device[2)]	d_{bot}	mm	110
Horizontal spacing at the device[3)]	d_{hor}	mm	0
Temperature increase with minimum distances d_{bot}; d_{top}; P_{BD}	ΔT	K	< 60
Cooling type			Forced
Volumetric capacity of forced cooling	V	m^3/h	approx. 0.3
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively	P_{Diss_cont}	W	90
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	Mohm	> 50
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont}[4)]	L_P	dB (A)	< 70
Control voltage data - input			
Control voltage input[5)]	U_{N3}	V	DC 24 ±20 %
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}	P_{N3}	W	675
Max. inrush current at 24 V supply	I_{EIN3_max}	A	10.00
Pulse width of I_{EIN3}	$t_{EIN3Lade}$	ms	< 1000
Input capacitance	C_{N3}	mF	11.00
Maximum allowed voltage for 1 ms	U_{N3_max}	V	33.00
Control voltage data - output			
Nominal voltage	U_{out}	V	42.0
Nominal power	P_{out}	W	588.0
			Latest amendment: 2017-01-20*

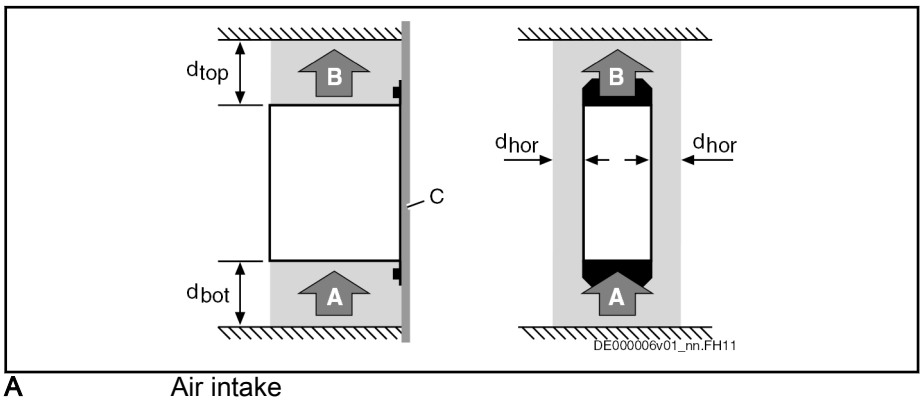
Description	Symbol	Unit	KCU02.2N-ET-ET*-025-NN-N-NN-NW
Power section data - input			
Rated input voltage, power	U_{LN_nom}	V	DC 540 … 750
Rated input current	I_{LN}	A	25.0
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	< 0.001
Capacitance against housing	C_Y	nF	2 × 100
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	42000
Power section data - output			
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	DC 540 … 750
Continuous output current	I_{out_cont}	A	25.0
Derating of P_{DC_cont}; P_{BD}; I_{out_cont} when $T_{a\_work} < T_a < T_{a\_work\_red}$	f_{Ta}	%/K	-
Rated power (t > 10 min) at U_{LN_nenn}	P_{DC_cont}	kW	14.0 … 18.8
Maximum allowed DC bus power at U_{LN_nenn}	P_{DC_max}	kW	42.0 … 53.3
			Latest amendment: 2017-01-20*

1) 2) 3) See fig. "Air intake and air outlet at device"
4) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance, out of cabinet
5) Comply with supply voltage for motor holding brake

Tab. 5-8: KCU - Technical data

NOTICE **Property damage due to temperatures higher than 105 °C!**

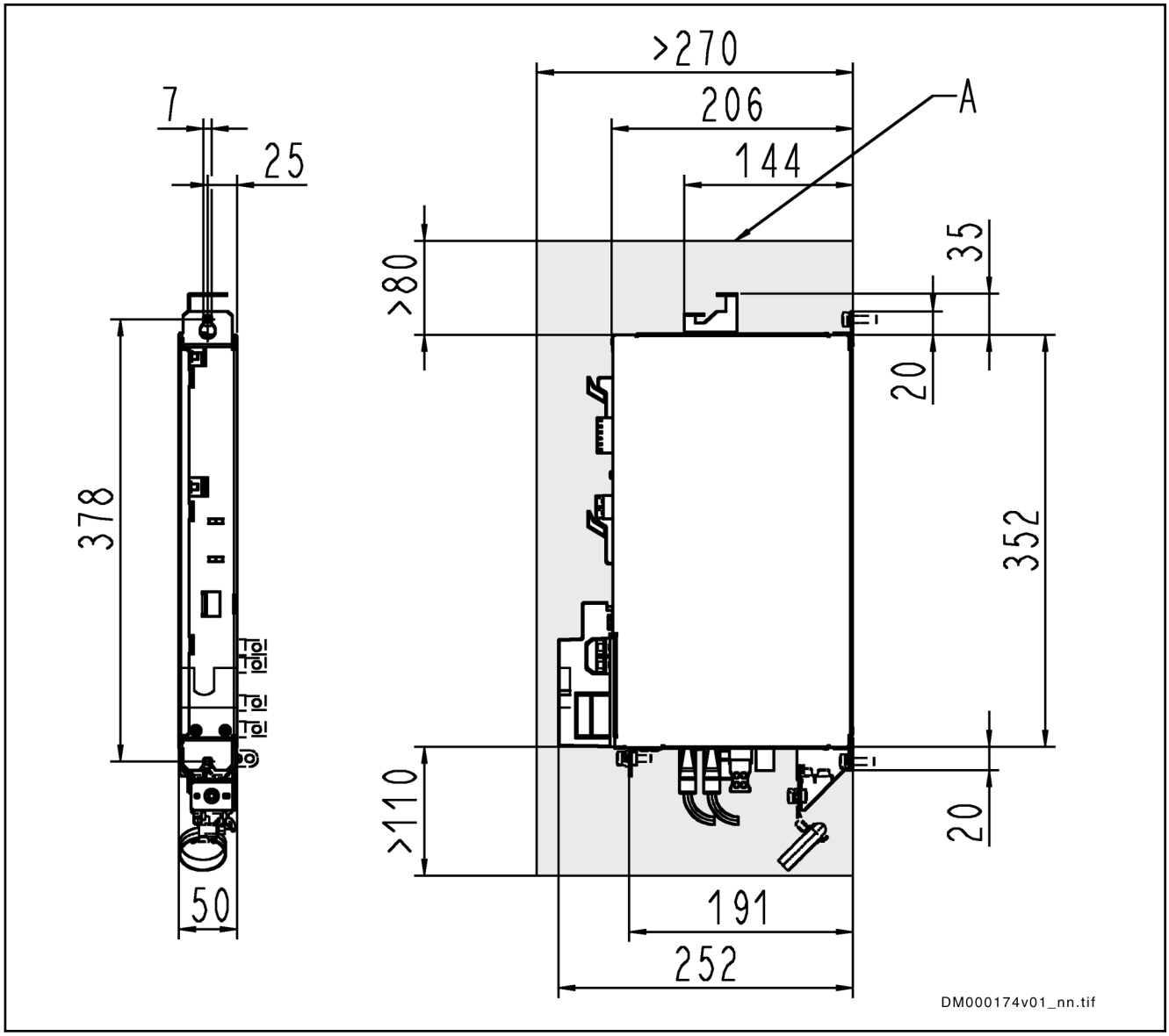
Comply with specified minimum distances!



A Air intake
B Air outlet
C Mounting surface in control cabinet
d_{top} Distance top
d_{bot} Distance bottom
d_{hor} Distance horizontal

Fig. 5-21: Air intake and air outlet at device

5.4.3 KCU02 dimensional drawing



A Minimum mounting clearance

Fig. 5-22: Dimensions

5.5 KMV03 supply unit

5.5.1 Ambient and operating conditions

Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

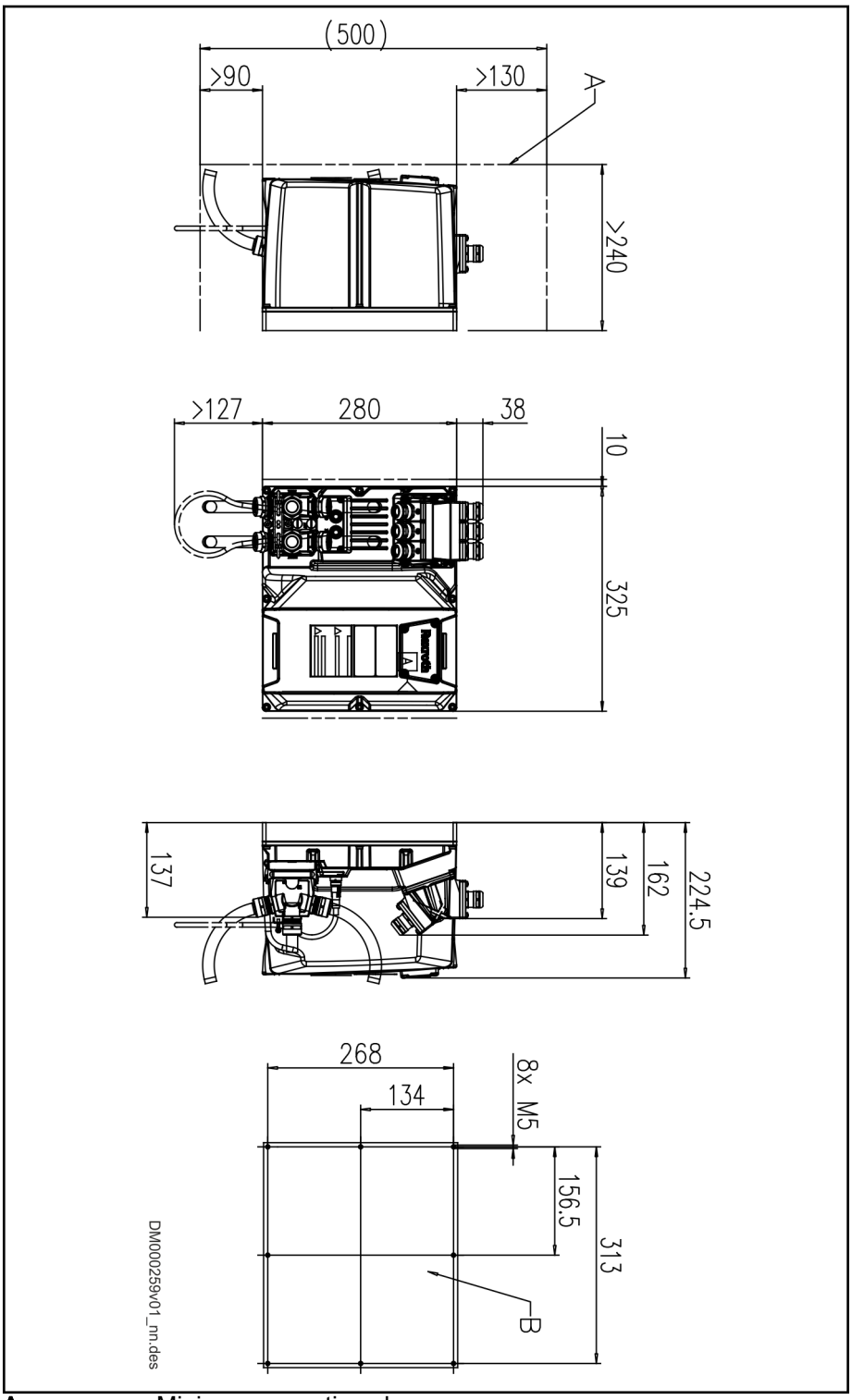
Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	42000			
Rated input voltage, power[1)]	U_{LN_nenn}	V	3 × AC 380 … 500			
Rated input current	I_{LN}	A	8.1	12.0	2.3	9.5
Output voltage	U_{out}	V	DC 750			
Output current	I_{out}	A	6.7	10.0	2.0	8.0
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08*						

1) Mains input L1, L2, L3; For use on a solidly grounded wye source only.

Tab. 5-9: KMV - Ambient and operating conditions - UL ratings

5.5.2 Mechanics and mounting

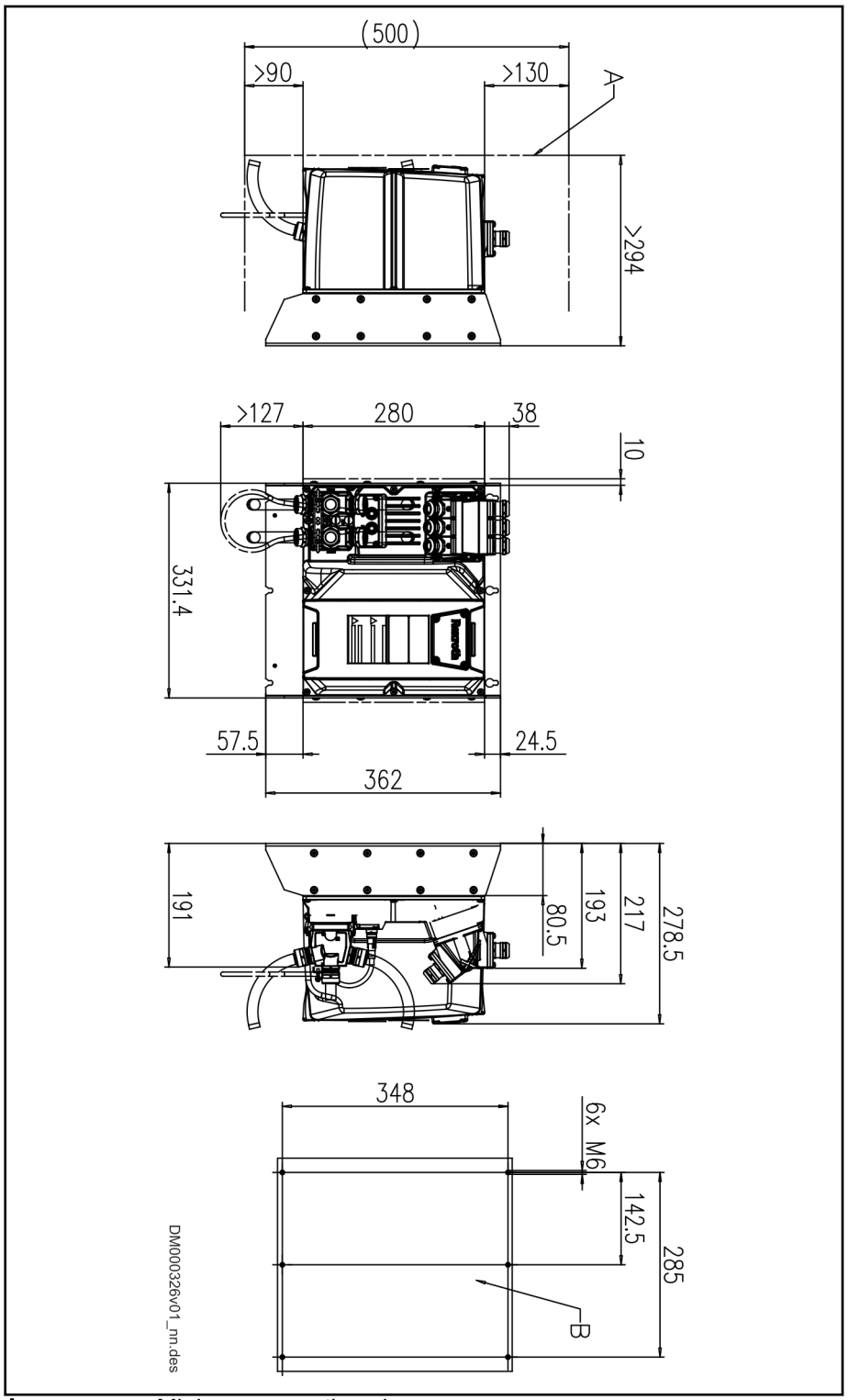
KMV03.1R-B/Ixxxx dimensional drawing (thermal interface)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-23: KMV03.1R-B/Ixxxx (thermal interface), dimensions

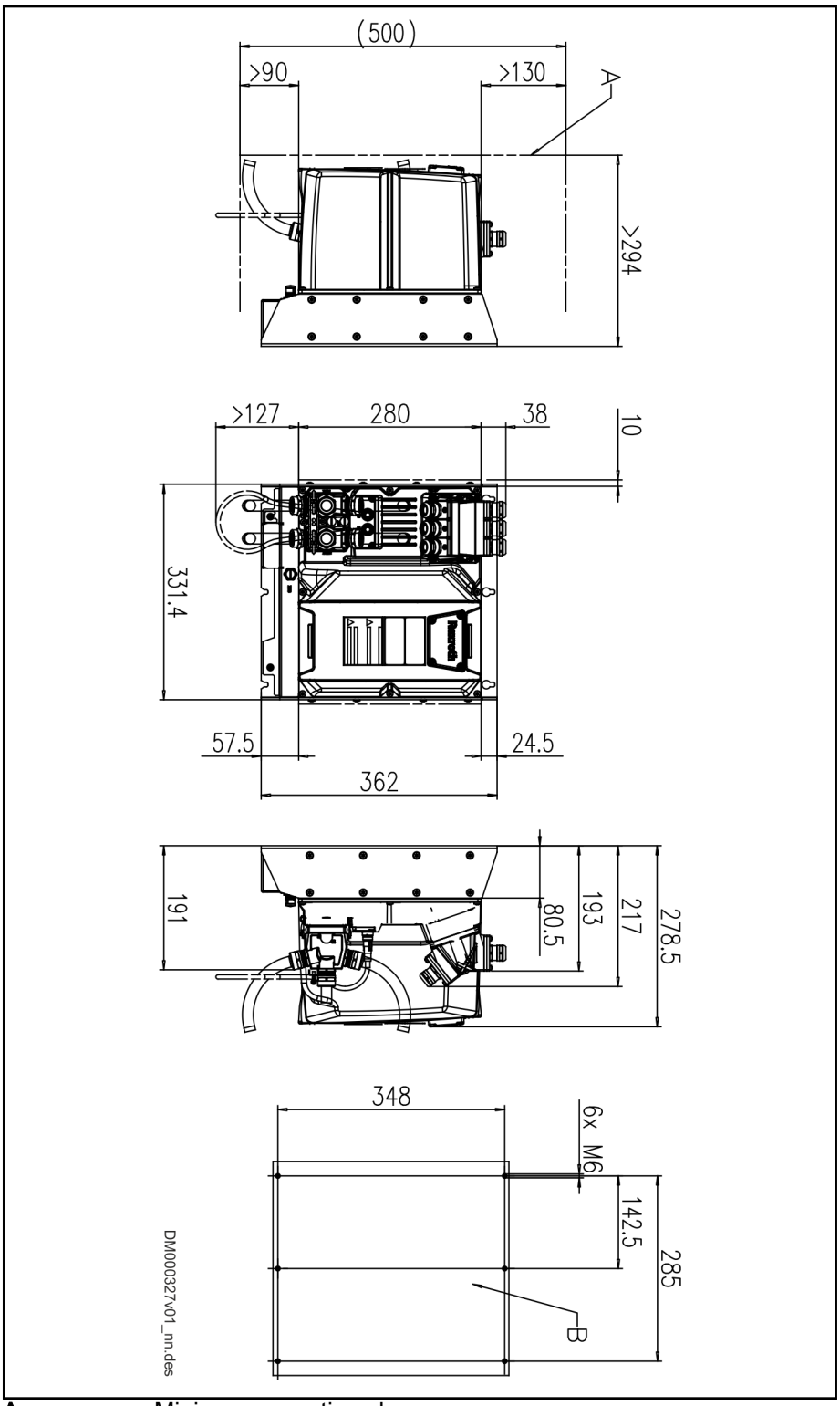
KMV03.1R-Axxxx dimensional drawing (natural convection)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-24: KMV03.1R-Axxxx (natural convection), dimensions

KMV03.1R-Wxxxx dimensional drawing (forced cooling)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-25: KMV03.1R-Wxxxx (forced cooling), dimensions

Dimensions, mass, insulation, sound pressure level

Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Mass	m	kg	20.00	15.70		20.00
Device height[1)]	H	mm	360	280		360
Device depth[2)]	T	mm	280	230		280
Device width[3)]	B	mm	330	325		330
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	Mohm	> 50			
Capacitance against housing[5)]	C_Y	nF	150 + 200			
Average sound pressure level (accuracy class 2) at P_{DC_cont}[4)]	L_P	dB (A)	< 50			< 60
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08*						

1) 2) 3) Housing dimension; see also related dimensional drawing

4) According to DIN EN ISO 11205; comparative value at 1 m distance

5) 150 nF: L+ against ground; 200 nF: L- against ground

Tab. 5-10: KMV - Data for mass, dimensions, sound pressure level, insulation

Power dissipation, mounting position, cooling, distances

Cooling and power dissipation data

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0…40			
Allowed mounting position			G1	G1, G2, G3, G4		G1
Cooling type			Air cooling	Thermal interface		Forced air cooling
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively[1)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	390.00	500.00	220.00	430.00
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}	P_{N3}	W	18			
Temperature increase with minimum distances d_{bot}; d_{top}; P_{BD}	ΔT	K	-			
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08						

1) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section

Tab. 5-11: KMV - Cooling and power dissipation data

5.5.3 Basic data

Control voltage

Control voltage supply data

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Control voltage input[1)]	U_{N3}	V	DC 24 V ±20 %			
Max. inrush current at 24 V supply	I_{EIN3_max}	A	10.00			
Pulse width of I_{EIN3}	$t_{EIN3Lade}$	ms	< 1000			
Input capacitance	C_{N3}	mF	11.00			
Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3} and P_{out} = 0 W	P_{N3}	W	18			
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08*						

1) 2) 3) Comply with supply voltage for motor holding brake

Tab. 5-12: KMV - Control voltage supply data

Control voltage data - output

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Nominal voltage	U_{out}	V	42			
Nominal power	P_{out}	W	340	510	200	400

Tab. 5-13: KMV - control voltage data - output

Mains voltage

Mains voltage supply data

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Mains frequency	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60			
Tolerance input frequency		Hz	±2			
Maximum allowed mains frequency change	$\Delta f_{LN}/\Delta t$	Hz/s	1			
Rotating field condition			None			
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	42000			
Nominal mains voltage	U_{LN_nom}	V	3 AC 400			
Three-phase mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U_{LN}	V	AC 380…500			
Mains voltage, three-phase at IT mains[1)]	U_{LN}	V	AC 380…500			
Mains voltage, three-phase at Corner-grounded-Delta mains[2)]	U_{LN}	V	Not allowed			
Tolerance rated input voltage U_{LN}		%	±10			
Minimum inductance of mains supply (mains phase inductance)[3)]	L_{min}	µH	50			
Assigned mains filter with integrated mains choke			KNK03.1A-NR-A0008-P-U226-A4-NNNN	KNK03.1A-NR-B0012-P-U226-A4-NNNN	KNK03.1A-NR-I0002-P-U226-A4-NNNN	KNK03.1A-NR-W0010-P-U226-A4-NNNN
Minimum short circuit power of the mains for failure-free operation	S_{k_min}	MVA	1.5			
Inrush current	$I_{L\_trans\_max\_on}$	A	8.1 … 13			
Maximum allowed ON-OFF cycles per minute[4)]			1			
Power factor TPF (λ_L) at P_{DC_cont} with mains choke; U_{LN_nenn}	TPF		0.99			
Power factor of fundam. component DPF at P_{DC_cont} with mains choke	$\cos\varphi^{h1}$		0.99			
Mains connected load at P_{DC_cont}; U_{LN_nenn} with mains choke	S_{LN}	kVA	5.7	8.4	1.6	6.6
Rated input current	I_{LN}	A	8.1	12.0	2.3	9.5
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08*						

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Mains fuse according to EN 60204-1[6)]		A	20	30	6	20
Required wire size in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring);[5)]	A_{LN}	AWG	14			
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08*						

1) 2) Mains voltage > U_{LN}: Use a transformer with grounded neutral point, do not use autotransformers!

3) Otherwise use HNL mains choke

4) Observe allowed number of switch-on processes; without external capacitors at the DC bus

5) Copper wire; PVC-insulation (conductor temperature 90 °C; $T_a \leq 40$ °C) in accordance with NFPA 79 chapter 12 and UL 508A chapter 28

6) Type in accordance with UL: Class J LPJ-30SP at most

Tab. 5-14: KMV - Mains voltage supply data

DC bus

Supply unit data - DC bus

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Nominal value of regulated DC bus voltage[1)]	U_{DC_nenn}	V	750			
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	2.35			
DC resistance in DC bus (L+ to L-)	R_{DC}	kohm	42.00			
Rated power (t > 10 min) at f_s = 4 kHz; U_{LN_nenn}; control factor a_0 > 0.8; with mains choke	P_{DC_cont}	kW	5.00	7.50	1.50	6.00
P_{DC_cont} and P_{DC_max} vs. mains input voltage; $U_{LN} \leq U_{LN\_nenn}$		kW	$P_{DC\_cont(ULN)} = P_{DC\_cont} \times (1 - (400-U_{LN}) \times 0.0025)$			
P_{DC_cont} and P_{DC_max} vs. mains input voltage; $U_{LN} > U_{LN\_nenn}$		kW	P_{DC_cont}			
Maximum allowed DC bus power at U_{LN_nenn}; with mains choke	P_{DC_max}	kW	15.00			
Monitoring value maximum DC bus voltage, switch-off threshold	$U_{DC\_limit\_max}$	V	900			
Monitoring value minimum DC bus voltage, undervoltage threshold	$U_{DC\_limit\_min}$	V	500			
Allowed external DC bus capacitance (nom.) at U_{LN_nenn}[2)]	C_{DCext}	mF	9.40			
Charging time for maximum external DC bus capacitance C_{DCext} at U_{LN_nenn}	$t_{lade\_DC\_Cext}$	s	0.70			
Latest amendment: 2019-09-04*						

1) Only devices with regulated DC bus
2) Use assigned mains choke

Tab. 5-15: KMV - Supply unit data - DC bus

Braking resistor

Integrated braking resistor data

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMV03.1R-A05K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-B0007-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-I01K5-P-D7-ET-NNNN	KMV03.1R-W06K0-P-D7-ET-NNNN
Braking resistor continuous power	P_{BD}	kW	0.15			
Braking resistor peak power	P_{BS}	kW	12.00			
Nominal braking resistance	$R_{DC\_Bleeder}$	ohm	60			
Braking resistor switch-on threshold - independent of mains voltage[1)]	$U_{R\_DC\_On\_f}$	V	820			
Absorbable regenerative power	W_{R_max}	kWs	7.50			
Cooling of integrated braking resistor			Heat sink	Base plate (Coldplate)		Heat sink
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08						

1) Factory setting

Tab. 5-16: KMV - Integrated braking resistor data

5.6 KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit

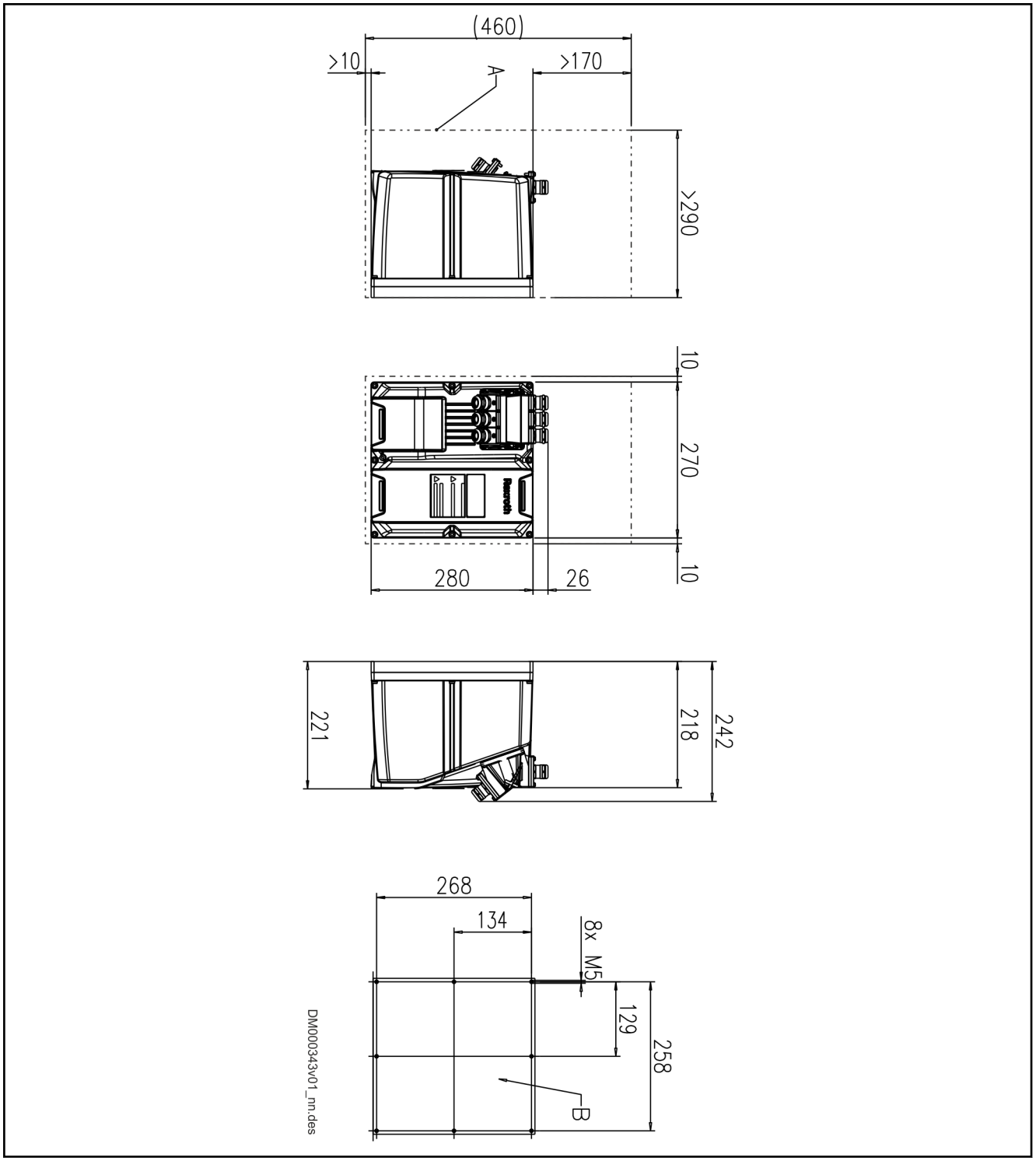
5.6.1 KLC03 data sheet

Technical data

Description	Symbol	Unit	KLC03.1N-A04M7	KLC03.1N-B04M7	KLC03.1N-W04M7
Mass	m	kg	17	12	17
Allowed mounting position	-	-	G1	G1, G2, G3, G4	G1
Allowed input voltage	U_{DC}	V	DC 254 … 750		
DC bus capacitor	C_{DC}	mF	4.7 ±20%		
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively	P_{Diss_cont}	W	30		
Maximum discharge time from $U_{R\_DC\_On}$ to DC 50 V	t_{entl_ZK}	s	660		
Maximum allowed input current at L + L-	$I_{max(rms)}$	A	25		
Insulation resistance (at DC 500 V)	R_{is}	Mohm	> 50		

Tab. 5-17: KLC03 - technical data

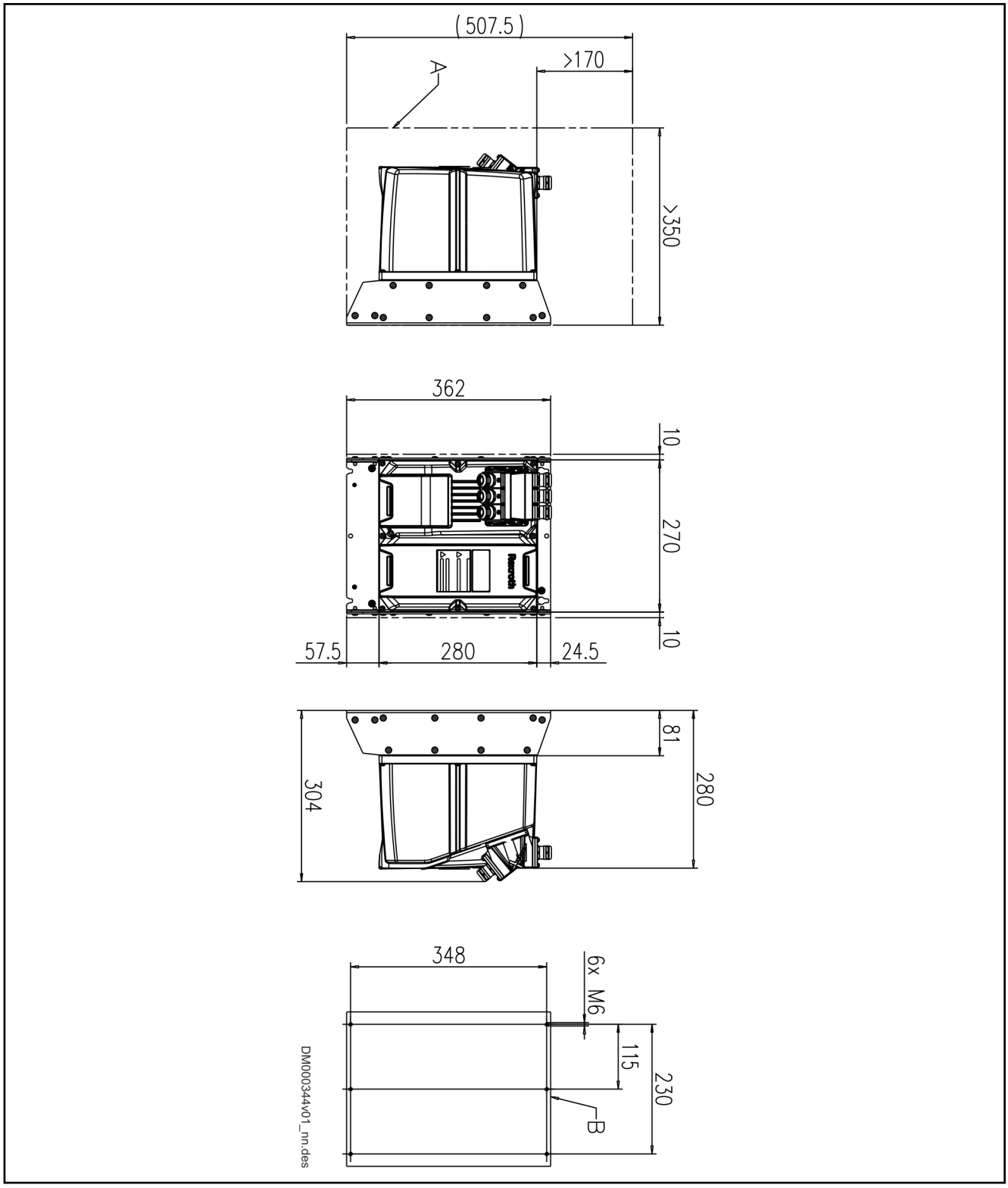
5.6.2 KLC03.1N-B04M7 dimensional drawing (thermal interface)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-26: KLC03.1N-B04M7 (thermal interface), dimensions

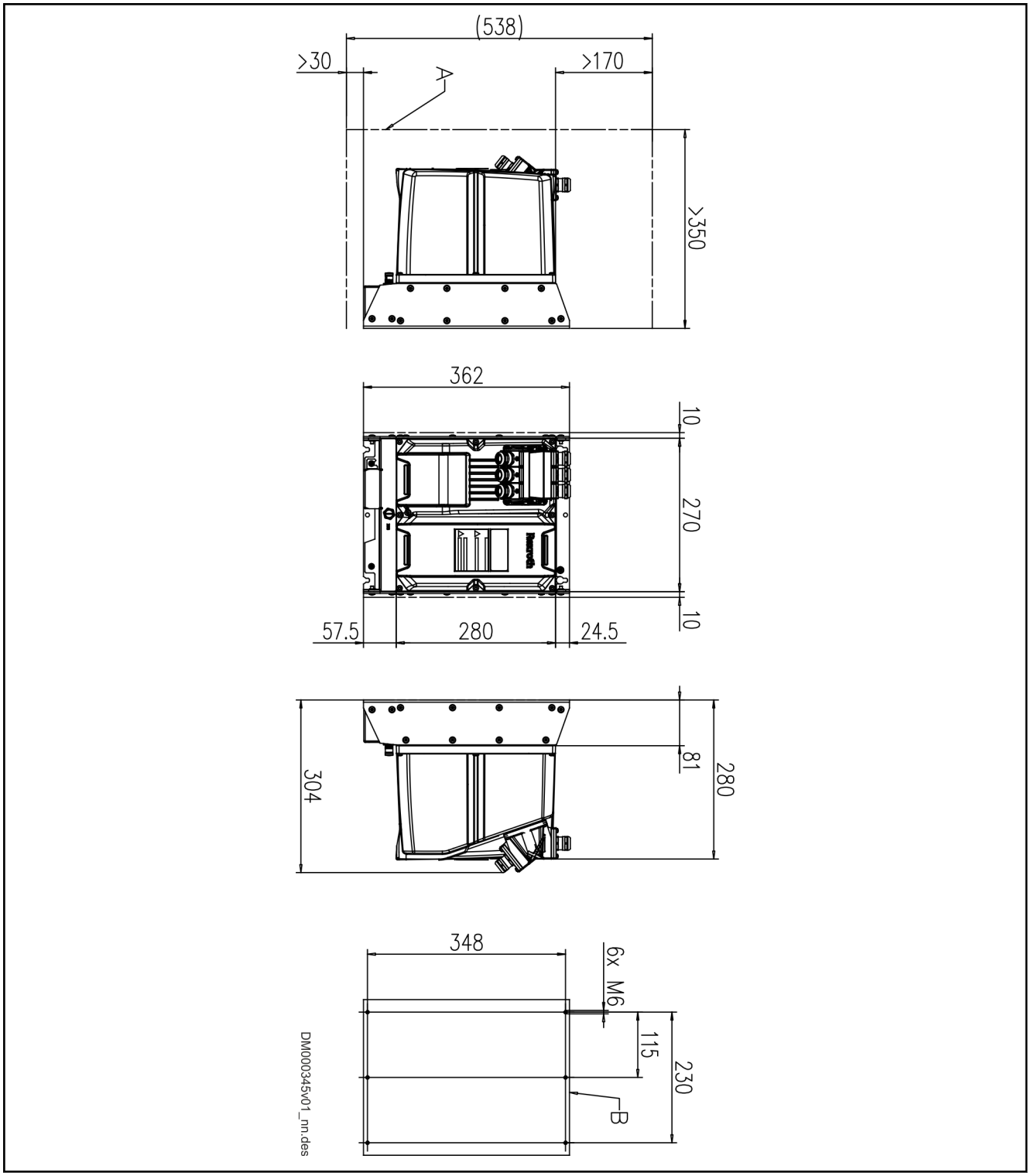
5.6.3 KLC03.1N-A04M7 dimensional drawing (natural convection)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-27: KLC03.1N-A04M7 (natural convection), dimensions

5.6.4 KLC03.1N-W04M7 dimensional drawing (forced cooling)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-28: KLC03.1N-W04M7 (forced cooling), dimensions

5.7 KNK03 mains filter

5.7.1 KNK03 data sheet

Technical data - currents, voltages, power

Description	Symbol	Unit	KNK03.1A-NR-A0008-P-U226-A4-NNNN	KNK03.1A-NR-B0012-P-U226-A4-NNNN	KNK03.1A-NR-I0002-P-U226-A4-NNNN	KNK03.1A-NR-W0010-P-U226-A4-NNNN
Degree of protection according to IEC 60529	IP		IP65			
Listing in accordance with UL standard			UL 61800-5-1			
Listing in accordance with CSA standard			CSA C22.2 No. 274-13			
Mass	m	kg	24.00	20.00		24.00
Three-phase mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U_{LN}	V	AC 380…500			
Mains voltage, three-phase at IT mains[2)]	U_{LN}	V	AC 380…500			
Mains voltage, three-phase at Corner-grounded-Delta mains	U_{LN}	V	Not allowed			
Tolerance rated input voltage U_{LN}		%	±10			
Mains input contin. current	I_{L_cont}	A	8.1	12	2.3	9.5
Typical inductance per winding at I_{cont}	L_{typ}	µH	2.3			
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively[3)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	147	175	104	160
Allowed leakage capacitance	C_{Abl}	nF	226			
Allowed Y-capacitance	C_Y	nF	2200			
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	Mohm	> 1			
Required wire size in accordance with NFPA 79 and UL 508 A (internal wiring);[4)]	A_{LN}	AWG	14			
Latest amendment: 2019-08-08*						

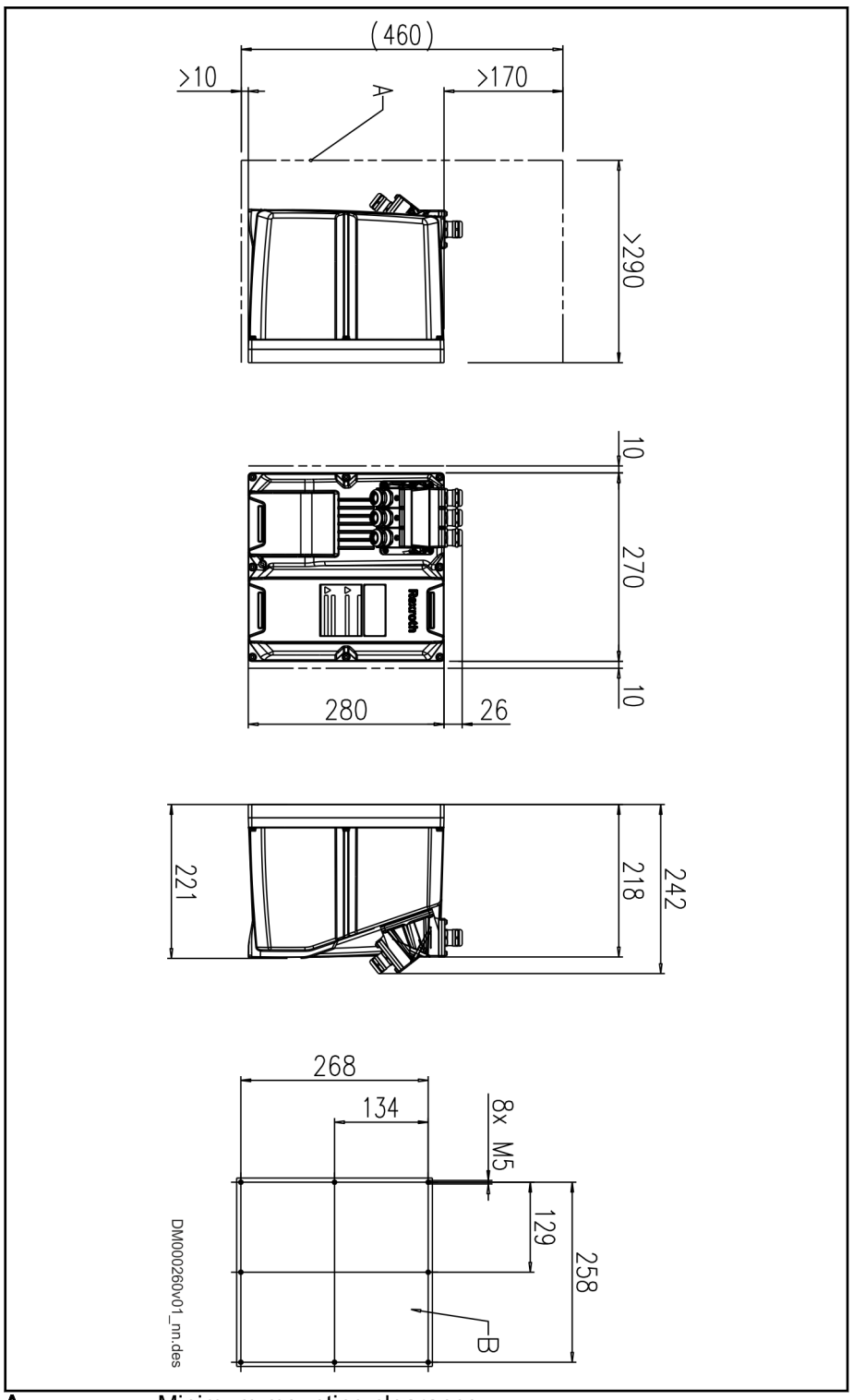
1) 2) Mains voltage > U_{LN}: Use a transformer with grounded neutral point, do not use autotransformers!

3) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section

4) Copper wire; PVC-insulation (conductor temperature 90 °C; T_a ≤ 40 °C) in accordance with NFPA 79 chapter 12 and UL 508A chapter 28

Tab. 5-18: KNK - Technical data - currents, voltages, power

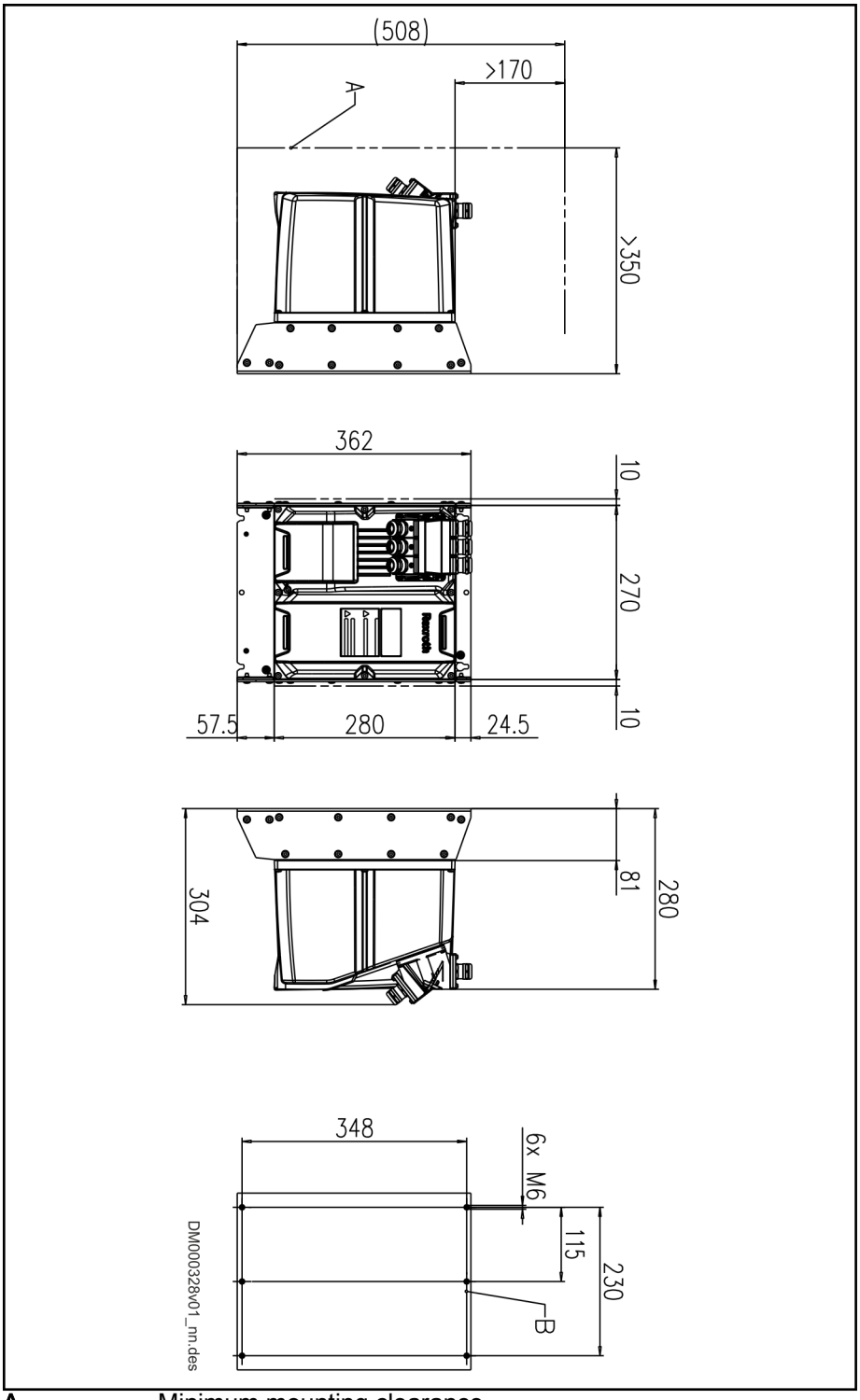
5.7.2 KNK03.1A-NR-B/Ixxxx dimensional drawing (thermal interface)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-29: KNK03.1A-NR-B/Ixxxx (thermal interface), dimensions

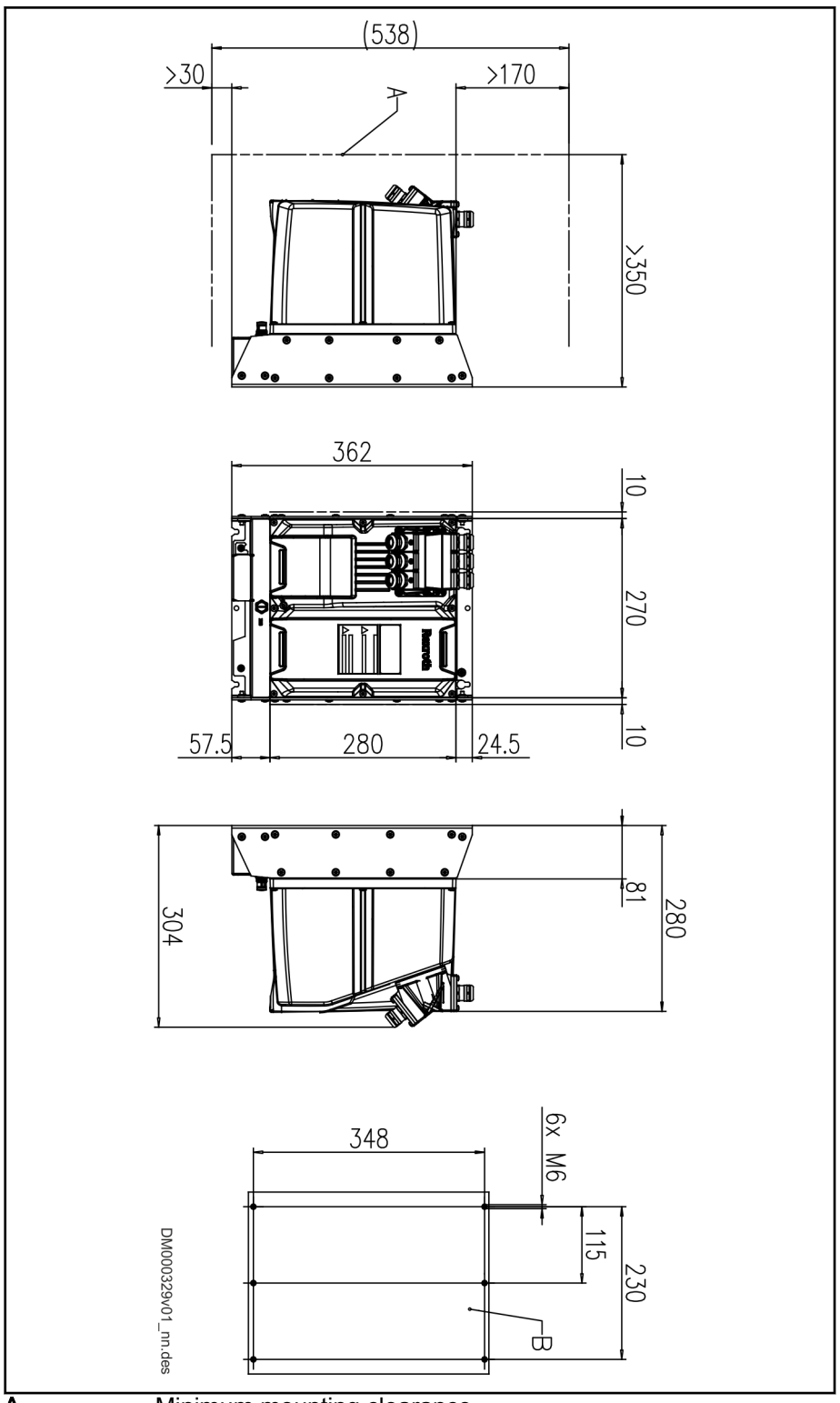
5.7.3 KNK03.1A-NR-Axxxx dimensional drawing (natural convection)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-30: KNK03.1A-NR-Axxxx (natural convection), dimensions

5.7.4 KNK03.1A-NR-Wxxxx dimensional drawing (forced cooling)



A Minimum mounting clearance
B Boring dimensions

Fig. 5-31: KNK03.1A-NR-Wxxxx (forced cooling), dimensions

5.8 KMS03 near motor servo drive

5.8.1 KMS03 data sheet

KMS data sheet

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMS03.1B-A036-P-D7-ET-END-NN-NN-FW	KMS03.1B-B036-P-D7-ET-END-NN-NN-FW
Listing in accordance with UL standard			UL 61800-5-1	
Listing in accordance with CSA standard			C22.2 No. 274-13	
UL files			E134201	
Ambient temperature range for operation with nominal data	T_{a_work}	°C	0 … 40	
Degree of protection according to IEC60529				
Ambient conditions according to UL50/50E			Type 4X Indoor use only	
Mass	m	kg	4.00	3.40
Control voltage data				
Control voltage input[1)]	U_{N3}	V	DC 30 … 42	
Power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}[2)]	P_{N3}	W	17.5	
Power section data				
Short circuit current rating	SCCR	A rms	42000	
Rated input voltage, power[3)]	U_{LN_nenn}	V	DC 540 … 750	
Capacitance in DC bus	C_{DC}	mF	0.05	
Capacitance against housing	C_Y	nF	100 + 100	
Rated input current	I_{LN}	A	10.5	19.3
Allowed switching frequencies[4)]	f_s	kHz	4, 8	
Maximum bypass current		A	Bypass max. 25 A	
Power dissipation at continuous current and continuous DC bus power respectively[5)]	P_{Diss_cont}	W	127.00	222.00
Power section data - output				
Output voltage, fundamental wave in V/Hz (U/f) control	U_{out_eff}	V	U_{DC} × 0.71	
Output voltage, fundamental wave in closed-loop operation	U_{out_eff}	V	U_{DC} × 0.71	
				Latest amendment: 2018-02-22*

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMS03.1B-A036-P-D7-ET-END-NN-NN-FW	KMS03.1B-B036-P-D7-ET-END-NN-NN-FW
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 7.5 m motor cable length phase-phase (10-90%)[6)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	5.00	
Rise of voltage at output with U_{LN_nenn} and 7.5 m motor cable length phase-ground (10-90%)[7)]	dv/dt	kV/µs	5.00	
Output frequency range when f_s = 4 kHz	f_{out_4k}	Hz	0 … 400	
Output frequency range when f_s = 8 kHz	f_{out_8k}	Hz	0 … 800	
Output frequency threshold to detect motor standstill[8)]	f_{out_still}	Hz	0...4	
Maximum output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_max4}	A	36.0	
Maximum output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_max8}	A	28.2	
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz	I_{out_cont4}	A	12.0	22.0
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz	I_{out_cont8}	A	8.8	22.0
Continuous output current when f_s = 4 kHz; output frequency f_{out} less than f_{out_still}	$I_{out\_cont0Hz\_4}$	A	12.0	22.0
Continuous output current when f_s = 8 kHz; output frequency f_{out} less than f_{out_still}	$I_{out\_cont0Hz\_8}$	A	5.9	16.0
				Latest amendment: 2018-02-22*

1) Observe supply voltage for motor holding brake
2) See information on "Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}"
3) Mains input L1, L2, L3 (for HMV and HCS only); For use on a solidly grounded wye source only.
4) Also depending on firmware and control section; see parameter description "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of the power output stage"; see "P-0-4058, Amplifier type data"; for supply units the switching frequency is 4.2 kHz
5) Plus dissipation of braking resistor and control section
6) 7) Guide value, see following note
8) See following note regarding output current reduction

Tab. 5-19: KMS - Technical data

Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}

Plus motor holding brake, plus power consumption of externally connected inputs/outputs, plus safety option

☞ **Guide value "Rise of voltage at output"**

Observe that the voltage load at the motor is almost independent of the power section used.

Especially when using **standard motors**, make sure that they comply with the occurring voltage load.

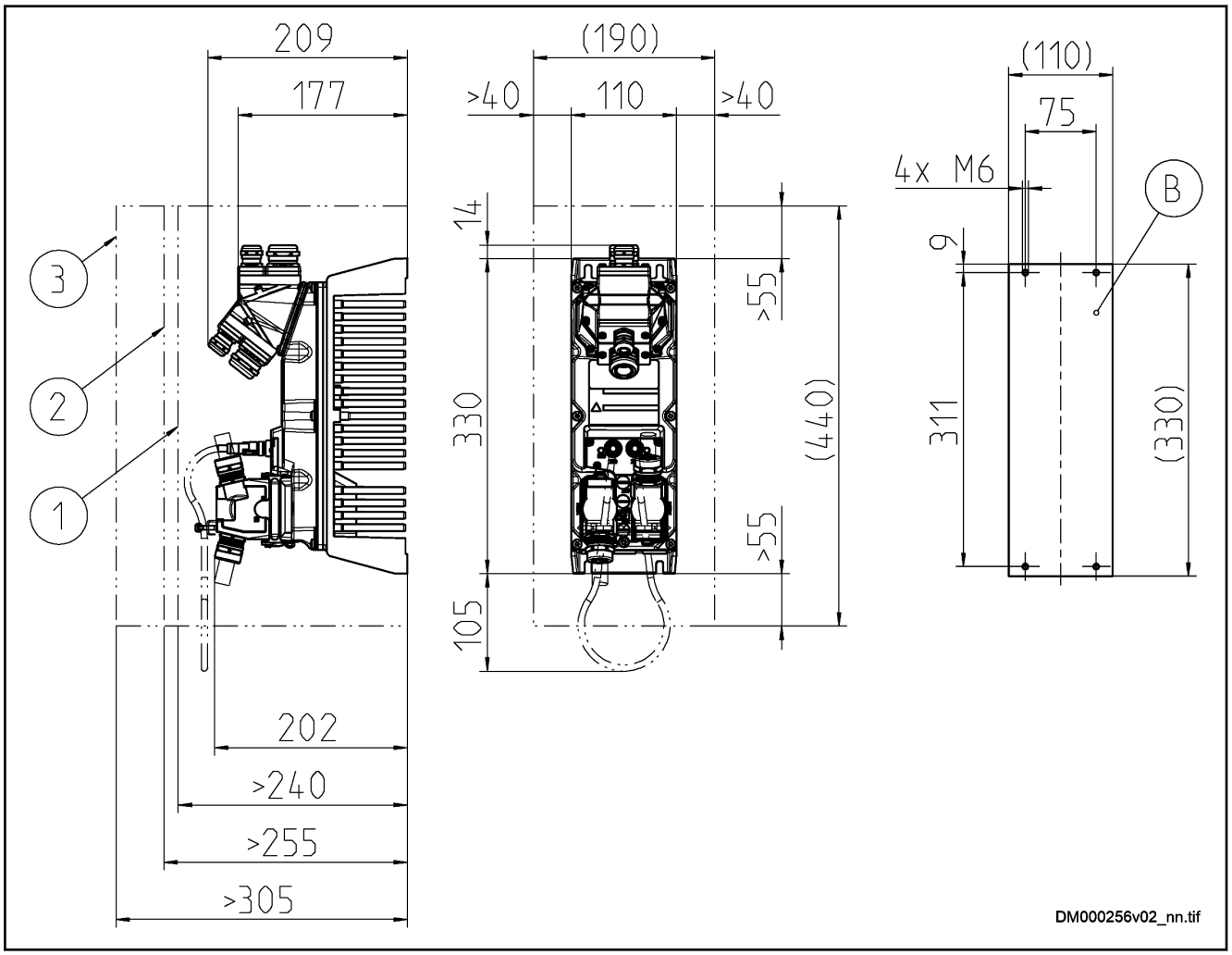
☞ **Reduced output current at motor standstill**

Depending on the electric output frequency, the output current is reduced for thermal protection of the power section.

The output current is reduced, when the electric output frequency has fallen below the threshold to detect motor standstill.

5.8.2 KMS03 dimensional drawing

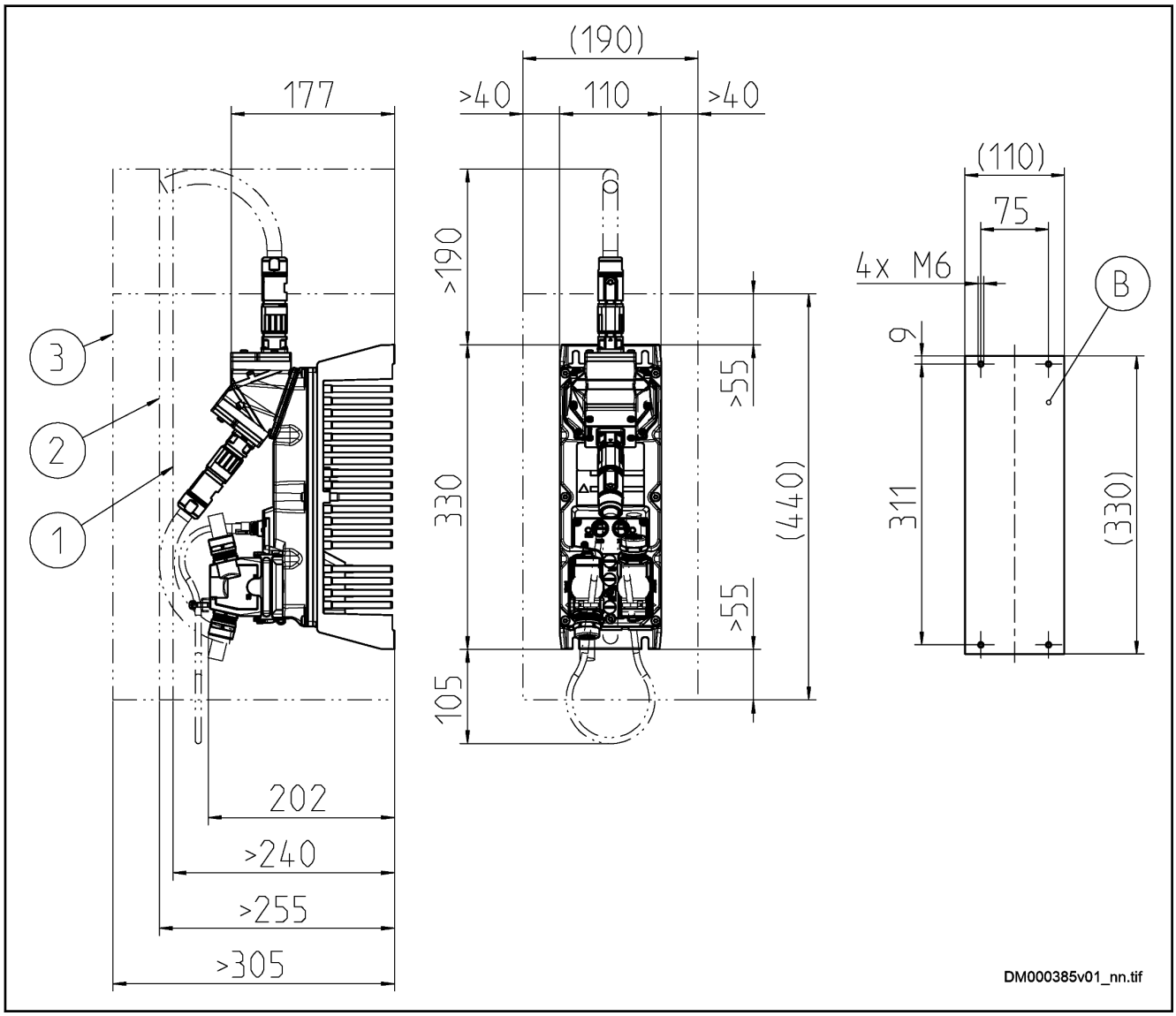
KMS03.1B-A036-P-07-ET-ND-XX-XX-FW



1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver.

Fig. 5-32: KMS03.1B-A036-P-07-ET-ND-XX-XX-FW, dimensions

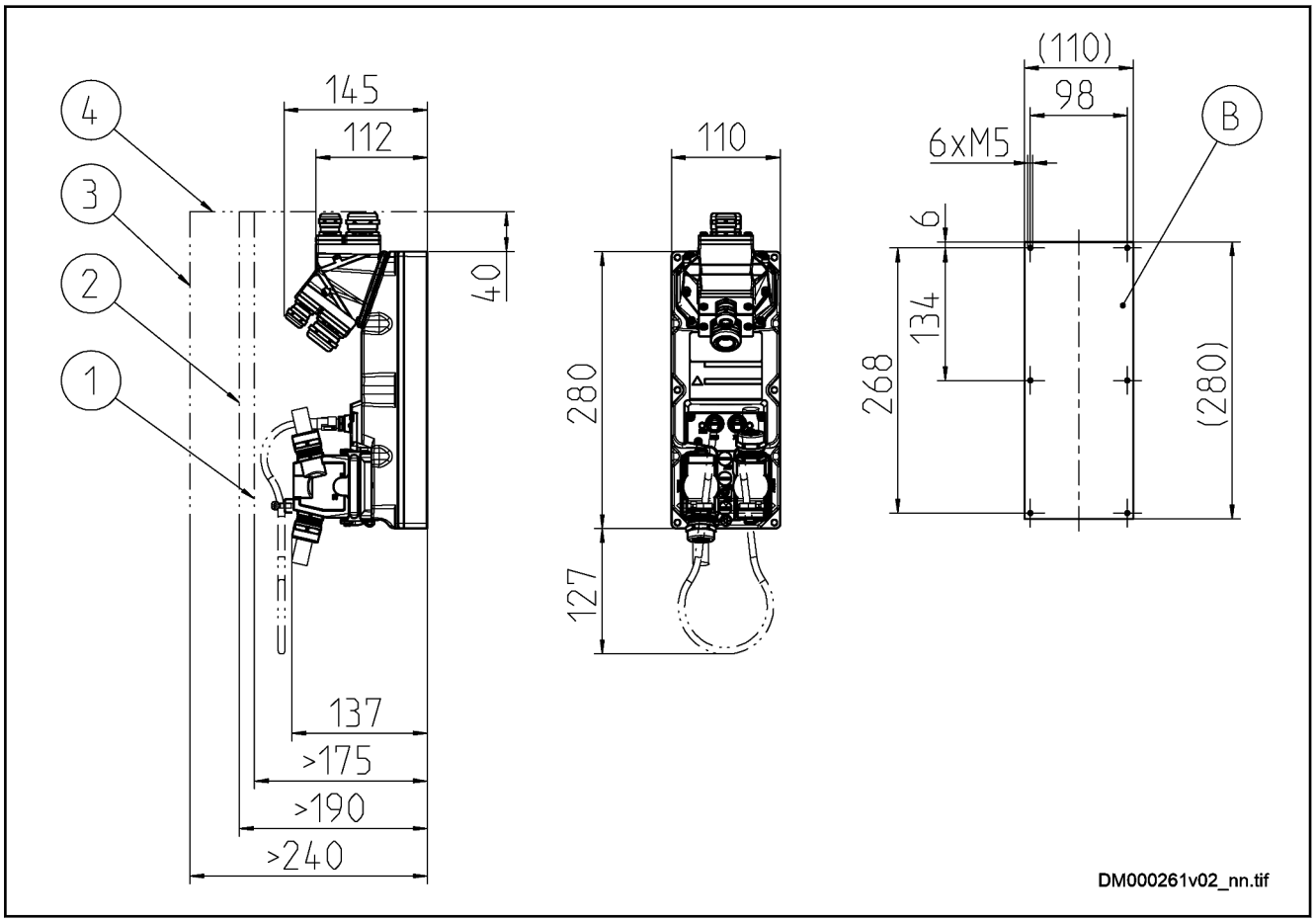
KMS03.1B-A036-P-07-ET-ND-XX-1X/2X-FW



1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver.

Fig. 5-33: KMS03.1B-A036-P-07-ET-ND-XX-1X/2X-FW, dimensions

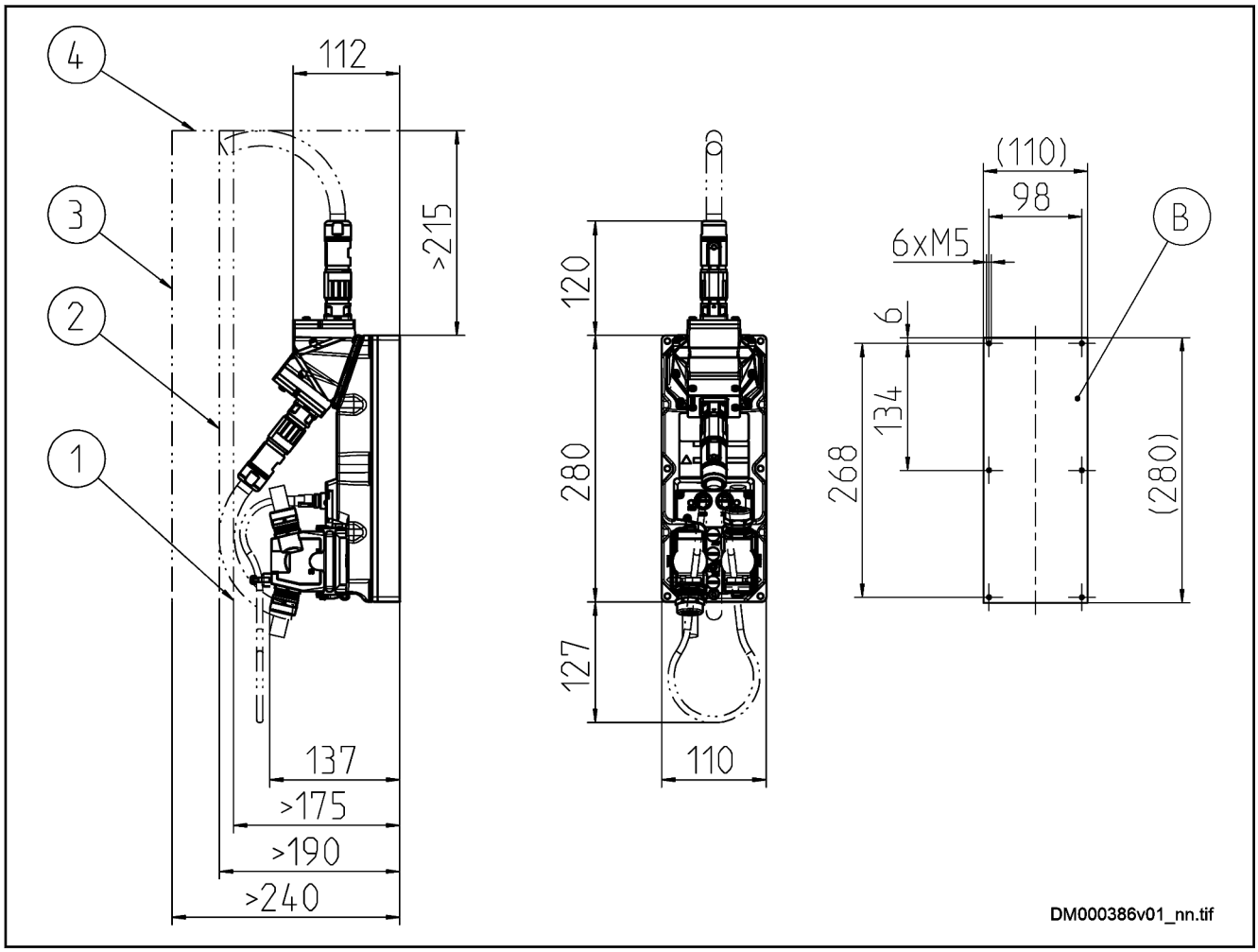
KMS03.1B-B036-P-D7-ET-END-XX-XX-FW



1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver
4	Mounting clearance with cable outlet away from housing
B	Drilling pattern

Fig. 5-34: KMS03.1B-B036-P-D7-ET-END-XX-XX-FW, dimensions

KMS03.1B-B036-P-D7-ET-END-XX-1X/2X-FW



1	Mounting clearance (standard)
2	Mounting clearance with optional master communication output coupling
3	More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver
4	Mounting clearance with cable outlet away from housing
B	Drilling pattern

Fig. 5-35: KMS03.1B-B036-P-D7-ET-END-XX-1X/2X-FW, dimensions

5.9 RKH hybrid cable

5.9.1 RKH hybrid cable incl. communication, technical data

Data sheet - bulk cable

Description	Symbol	Unit	REH0800	
Brief description of cable			[5 × 2.5 mm² + 5 × 0.34 mm² + (2 × 2 × 0.34 mm²)StC]C	
Operational voltage at power cores	U_0/U	V	850	
Operational voltage at control cores	U_0/U	V	100	
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	MΩ × km	500	
Ambient temperature for operation (flexible routing)		°C	-20 … +80	
Ambient temperature for operation (permanent routing)		°C	-30 … +80	
Operating temperature at conductor (flexible/ permanent)		°C	+80	
Ambient temperature for storage		°C	-30 … +80	
Cable jacket material[1)]			PUR	
Cable jacket color			RAL2003	
Wire insulation material			according to EN 13602 -CU-ETP-A…	
Conductor resistance at 20 °C (EN 60228; class 6)	R_{20}	Ω/km	8 (2.5 mm²)	
Diameter	D	mm	16.2 ±0.5	
Specific cable weight	m	kg/m	0.355	
Application in flexible cable tracks			✓	
Bending cycles			5×10^6	
Bending radius with flexible routing		mm	10 × D	
Bending radius with permanent routing		mm	5 × D	
Bending and torsional stress		°/m	max. ±30	
Max. horizontal travel distance[2)]	s	m	4.5	10
Maximum travel velocity[3)]	v	m/s	5	4
Maximum acceleration[4)]	a_{max}	m/s²	20	4
UL approval[5)]			cURus	
UL AWM Style			AWM20234	
RoHS (EU)			compliant with Directive 2002/95/EC	
Halogens			halogen-free according to VDE 0472, Part 815	
				Latest amendment: 2021-09-02

Description	Symbol	Unit	REH0800
Oil resistance			EN 60811-2-1 and EN 50363-10-2
Flammability			EN 60332-1-2; UL 758, Sec. 40, Cable Flame Test Sec. 1061 according to UL 1581 and CSA C22.2 No. 210-05, Sec. 8.8.2
			Latest amendment: 2021-09-02

1) According to EN 50363-10-2
2) 3) 4) Flexible cable track parameters: Maximum values only apply individually
5) UL file number according to cable marking

Tab. 5-20: REH - Technical data

☞ The hybrid cable contains both power lines and control lines. Route hybrid cables in accordance with EN 61800-5-1 and EN 61800-5-2, protected against external damage. Select the types of protective measures according to the respective application.

5.9.2 RKH hybrid cable without communication, technical data

Data sheet - bulk cable

Description	Symbol	Unit	REH0803
Brief description of cable			(5 × 2.5 mm² + 5 × 0.34 mm²)StC
Operational voltage at power cores	U_0/U	V	1000
Operational voltage at control cores	U_0/U	V	100
Insulation resistance at 500 V DC	R_{is}	MΩ × km	500
Ambient temperature for operation (flexible routing)		°C	-20 … +80
Ambient temperature for operation (permanent routing)		°C	-30 … +80
Operating temperature at conductor (flexible/ permanent)		°C	+80/+90
Ambient temperature for storage		°C	-30 … +80
Cable jacket material[1)]			PUR
Cable jacket color			RAL2003
Wire insulation material			PP
Conductor resistance at 20 °C (EN 60228; class 6)	R_{20}	Ω/km	8 (2.5 mm²)
Diameter	D	mm	11.4 ±0.3
Specific cable weight	m	kg/m	0.234
Application in flexible cable tracks			Yes
Bending cycles			5×10^6
Bending radius with flexible routing		mm	8 × D
Bending radius with permanent routing		mm	4 × D
Bending and torsional stress		°/m	not suitable
Max. horizontal travel distance[2)]	s	m	50
Maximum travel velocity[3)]	v	m/s	5
Maximum acceleration[4)]	a_{max}	m/s²	50 (5 m)
UL approval[5)]			cURus
UL AWM Style			AWM21223
RoHS (EU)			compliant with Directive 2011/65/EC
Halogens			halogen-free according to VDE 0472, Part 815
Oil resistance			HD22.10 S1 and VDE0282
Flammability			IEC 60332-1-2; UL 1581, Sec. 1061; UL 2556, Sec. 9.3
			Latest amendment: 2019-06-17

1) According to EN 50363-10-2

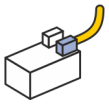
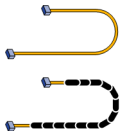
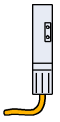
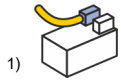
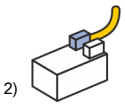
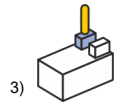
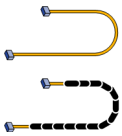
2) 3) 4)	Flexible cable track parameters: Maximum values only apply individually
5)	UL file number according to cable marking

Tab. 5-21: REH - Technical data

The hybrid cable contains both power lines and control lines. Route hybrid cables in accordance with EN 61800-5-1 and EN 61800-5-2, protected against external damage. Select the types of protective measures according to the respective application.

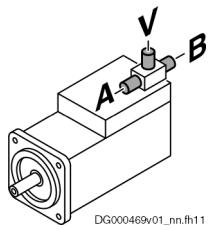
5.9.3 Selecting RKH hybrid cable incl. communication

Use the table below to select an RKH hybrid cable for the appropriate connection with different outgoing directions from connection point X103.1 or X103.2.

			Target				
			 1)	 2)	 3)		
			X103.1	X103.1	X103.1	RKH0700	Circular connector
Source		KCU02	RKH0311	RKH0411	RKH0511	RKH0511	RKH0903
		HCS01+ HAS05.1-023	RKH0341	RKH0441	RKH0541	RKH0541	RKH0909
	 1)	X103.2	RKH0011	RKH0111	RKH0213	RKH0213	RKH0901
	 2)	X103.2	RKH0110	RKH0210	RKH0215	RKH0215	RKH0904
	 3)	X103.2	RKH0212	RKH0214	RKH0610	RKH0610	RKH0906
		RKH0700	RKH0212	RKH0214	RKH0610	RKH0610	RKH0906
		Circular connector	RKH0902	RKH0905	RKH0907	RKH0907	RKH0900

1) Outgoing direction "A"
2) Outgoing direction "B"
3) Outgoing direction "V"

Tab. 5-22: RKH hybrid cable

	*Hybrid cable outgoing direction:* • A: horizontal (towards the housing) • B: horizontal (away from the housing) • V: vertical

Tab. 5-23: Hybrid cable outgoing directions

Selecting the hybrid cables

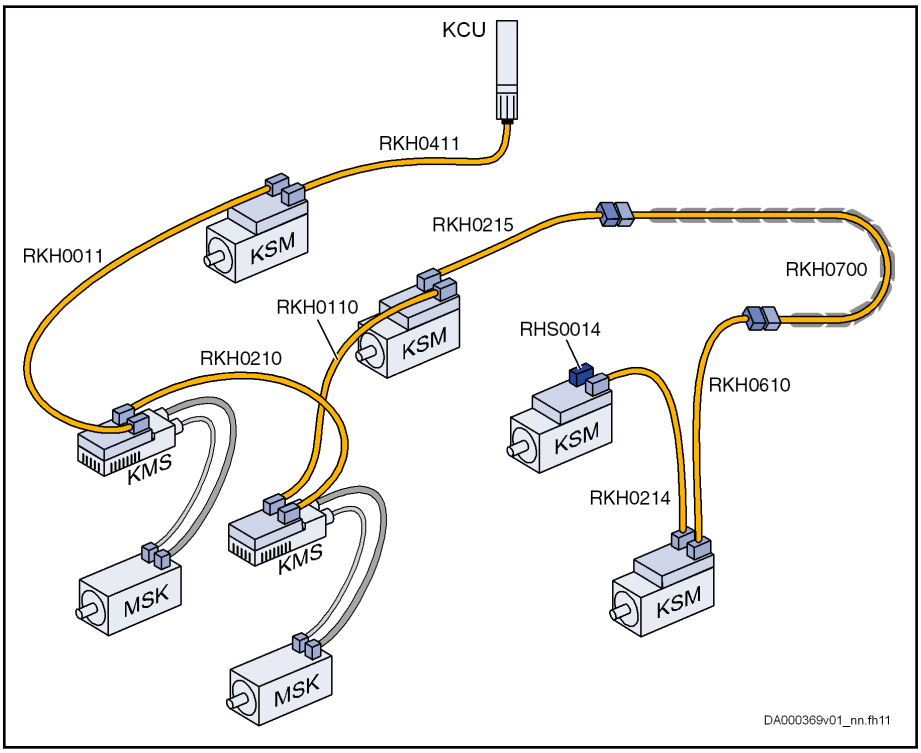


Fig. 5-36: Example of drive system with hybrid cable

Each drive line has to be terminated with the terminal connector RHS0014.

All hybrid cables are suited for use in flexible cable tracks. In the example, the cable RKH0700 is used in a flexible cable track. To quickly replace the flexible cable track cable for servicing, the cable in the example used in the flexible cable track has been equipped with connectors at the inputs.

Observe the maximum allowed length of the hybrid cable in the flexible cable track (see chapter "Length of hybrid cable incl. communication " on page 235).

Identifying the hybrid cables

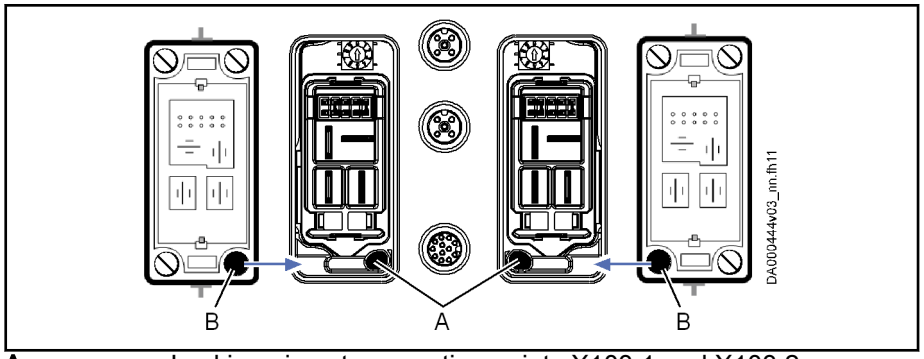
Hybrid cables are labeled according to the following example:

RKH0111/030,5

The cable designation is made up of:

- Cable number: e.g. **RKH0111**
- Cable length: e.g. **30.5 m**

Locking pins at connectors and connection points



A Locking pins at connection points X103.1 and X103.2
B Locking pin at connector of hybrid cable

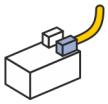
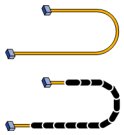
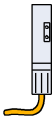
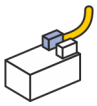
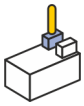
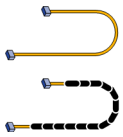
Fig. 5-37: Locking pins

Locking pins at connectors and connection points ensure that hybrid cables run in the right direction. It is not allowed to subsequently invert the direction of a hybrid cable by removing the locking pins. Otherwise, the signals for E-Stop and safety technology would not be valid.

When mounting hybrid cables in cable ducts or flexible cable tracks, make sure that the direction of the hybrid cables is correct.

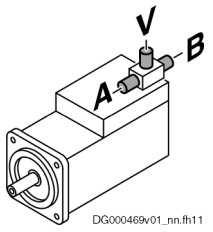
5.9.4 Selecting RKH hybrid cable without communication

Use the table below to select an RKH hybrid cable for the appropriate connection with different outgoing directions from connection point X103.1 or X103.2.

			Target				
			 1)	 2)	 3)		
			X103.1	X103.1	X103.1	RKH0710	Circular connector
Source		KCU02	RKH0321	RKH0421	RKH0521	RKH0521	-
		HCS01+ HAS05.1-023	RKH0351	RKH0451	RKH0551	RKH0551	RKH0910
	 1)	X103.2	RKH0021	RKH0121	RKH0223	RKH0223	-
	 2)	X103.2	RKH0120	RKH0220	RKH0225	RKH0225	-
	 3)	X103.2	RKH0222	RKH0224	RKH0620	RKH0620	-
		RKH0710	RKH0222	RKH0224	RKH0620	RKH0620	-

1) Outgoing direction "A"
2) Outgoing direction "B"
3) Outgoing direction "V"

Tab. 5-24: RKH hybrid cable without communication

	*Hybrid cable outgoing direction:* • A: horizontal (towards the housing) • B: horizontal (away from the housing) • V: vertical

Tab. 5-25: Hybrid cable outgoing directions

Identifying the hybrid cables

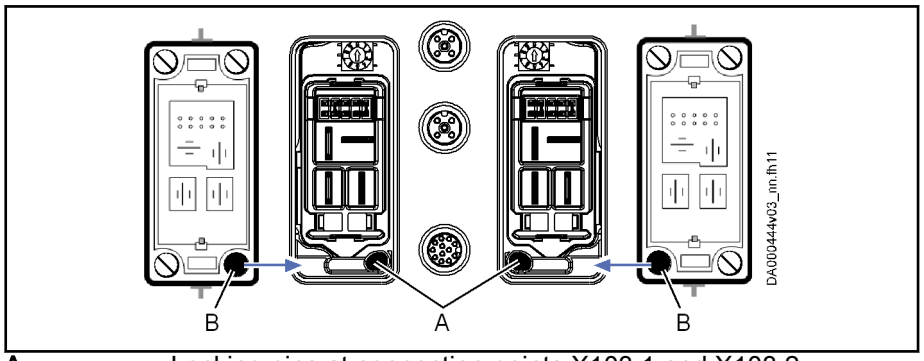
Hybrid cables are marked according to the following example:

RKH0121/030,5

The cable designation is made up of:

- Cable number: e.g., **RKH0121**
- Cable length: e.g., **30.5 m**

Locking pins at connectors and connection points



A Locking pins at connection points X103.1 and X103.2
B Locking pin at connector of hybrid cable

Fig. 5-38: Locking pins

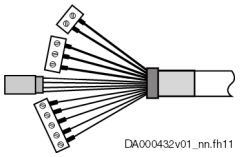
Locking pins at connectors and connection points ensure that hybrid cables run in the right direction. It is not allowed to subsequently invert the direction of a hybrid cable by removing the locking pins. Otherwise, the signals for E-Stop and safety technology would not be valid.

When mounting hybrid cables in cable ducts or flexible cable tracks, make sure that the direction of the hybrid cables is correct.

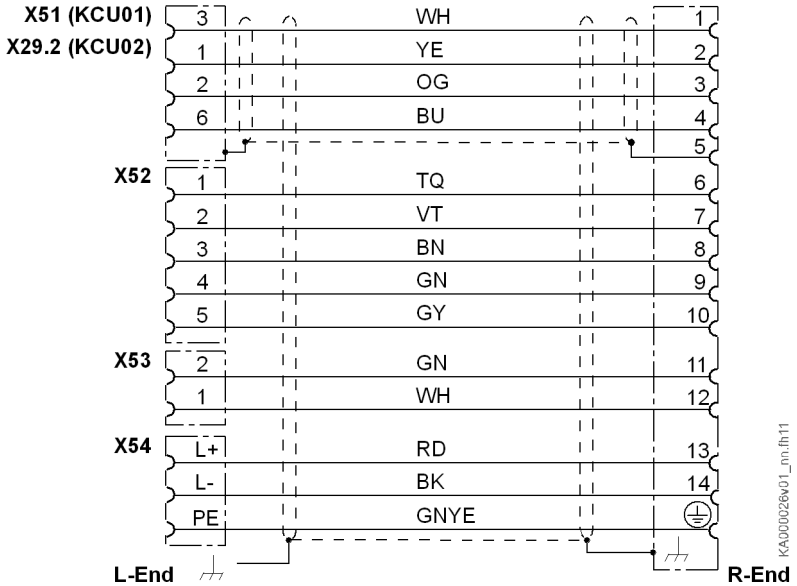
5.9.5 Interconnection diagrams for ready-made hybrid cables incl. communication

KCU - KSM/KMS

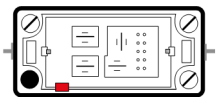
Applies to: RKH0311, RKH0411, RKH0511

KCU plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KSM/KMS plug-in connector
RHS0005/C03 	REH0800	RHS0011/C03 [1]  RHS0016/C03 [2] 

Interconnection diagram



Coding at KSM/KMS plug-in connector [4]

Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0311 RKH0411 RKH0511	RHS0005	RHS0011, RHS0016  X103.1 ● Locking pin ■ Coding profile [5]

1) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0311, RKH0411
2) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0511
4) Picture shows coding with view to mating side
5) The coding profile ensures the downward compatibility of the hybrid cable for KSM01/KMS01

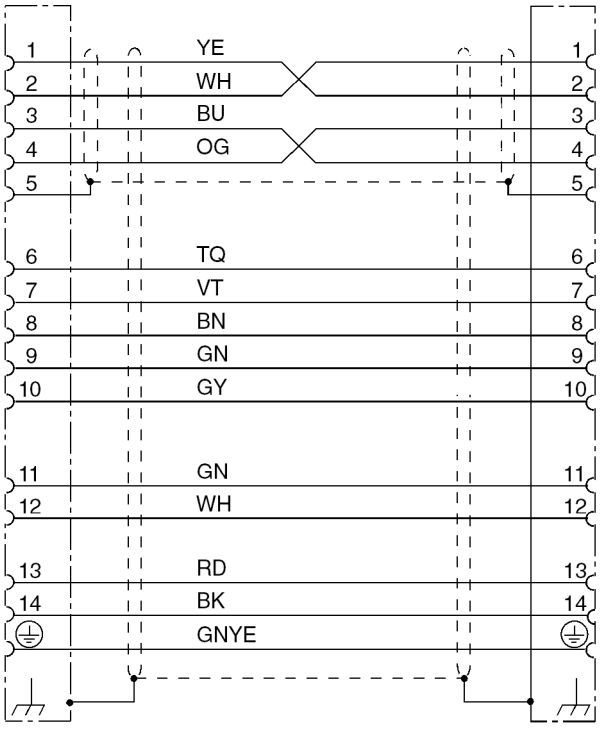
Tab. 5-26: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables from KCU to KSM/KMS

KSM/KMS - KSM/KMS

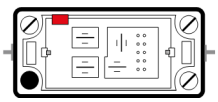
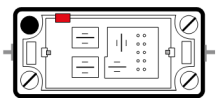
Applies to: RKH0011, RKH0012, RKH0110, RKH0210, RKH0111, RKH0211, RKH0212, RKH0213, RKH0214, RKH0215, RKH0610, RKH0611

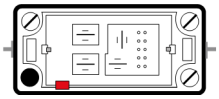
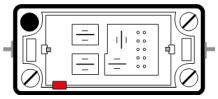
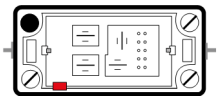
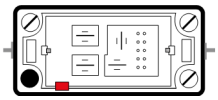
KSM/KMS plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KSM/KMS plug-in connector
RHS0011/C03  RHS0016/C03 	REH0800	RHS0011/C03  RHS0016/C03 

Interconnection diagram



Coding at KSM/KMS plug-in connector [1)]

Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0011 RKH0110 RKH0210 RKH0212 RKH0214 RKH0610	 X103.1	 X103.2

RKH0012 RKH0211 RKH0611	 X103.1	 X103.2
RKH0111 RKH0213 RKH0215	 X103.2	 X103.1
	● Locking pin ▬ Coding profile [2)]	

1) Picture shows coding with view to mating side
2) The coding profile ensures the downward compatibility of the hybrid cable for KSM01/KMS01

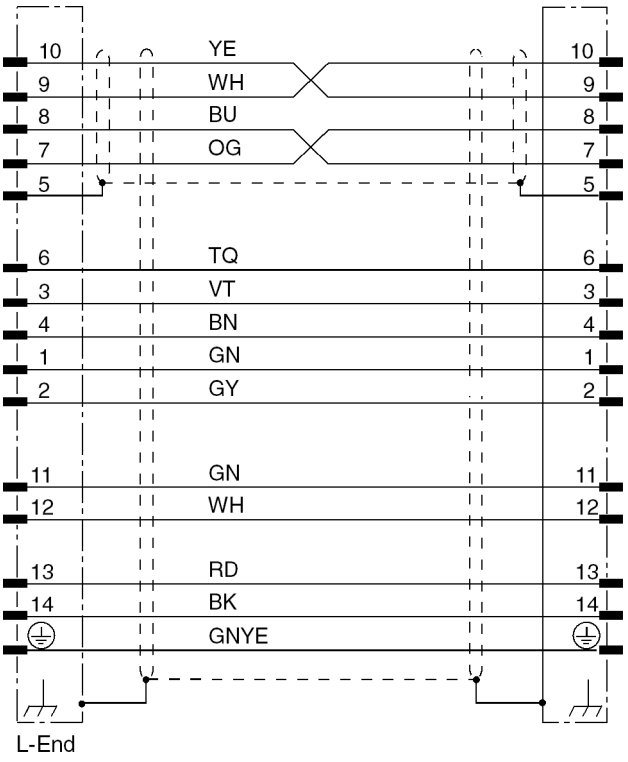
Tab. 5-27: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables from KSM/KMS to KSM/KMS

Flexible cable tracks

Applies to: RKH0700

KSM/KMS plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KSM/KMS plug-in connector
RHS0007/C03	REH0800	RHS0007/C03

Interconnection diagram



Coding at KSM/KMS plug-in connector

Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0700	Not coded	Not coded

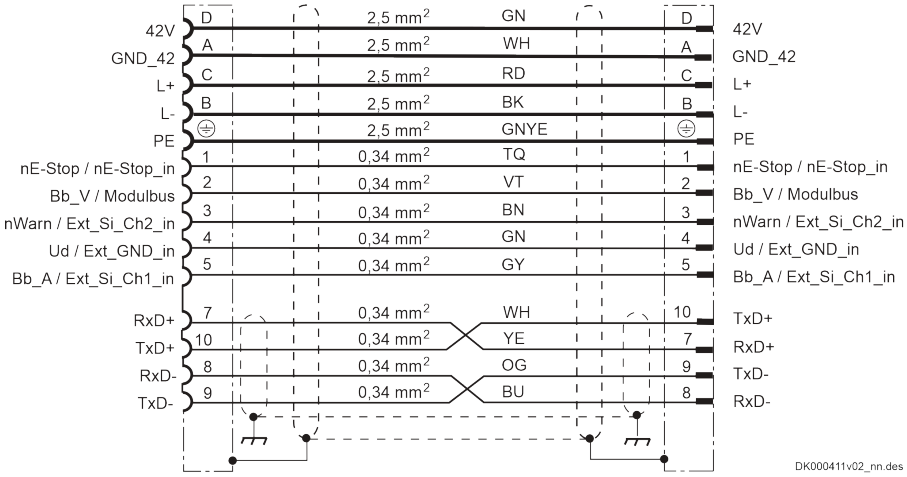
Tab. 5-28: Parts of ready-made hybrid cable for flexible cable tracks

Hybrid cable with circular connector

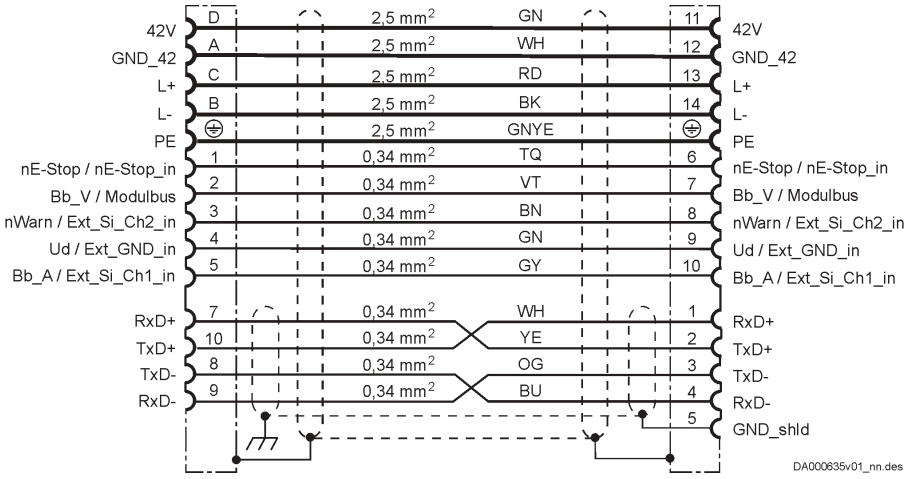
Applies to: RKH0900, RKH0901, RKH0904, RKH0906

Plug-in connector, circular connector	Bulk cable	Plug-in connector, circular connector
RHS2321/C03 	REH0800	RHS2322/C03[1]  RHS0011/C03[2]  RHS0016/C03[3] 

Interconnection diagram (RHS2321 - RHS2322)



Interconnection diagram (RHS2321 - RHS0011/RHS0016)



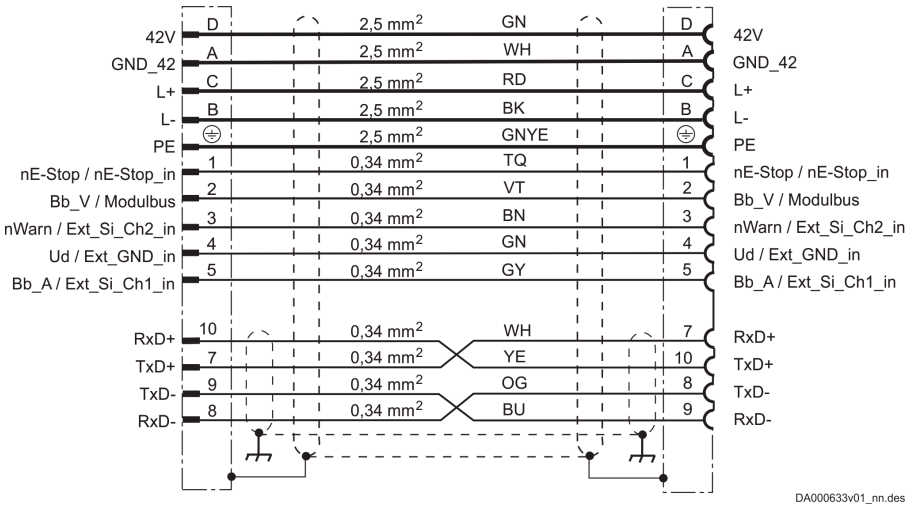
1) RKH0900
2) RKH0901, RKH0904
3) RKH0906

Tab. 5-29: RKH0900, RKH0901, RKH0904, RKH0906

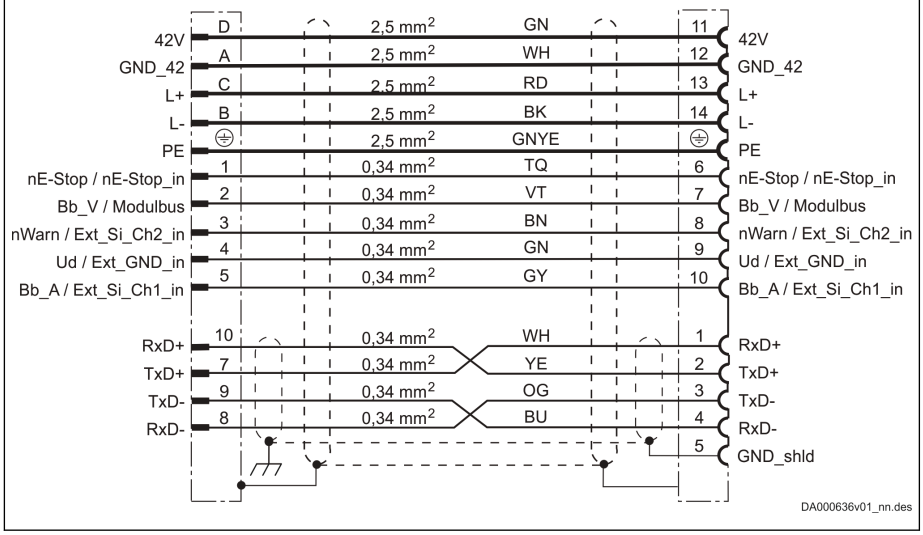
Applies to: RKH0900, RKH0902, RKH0905, RKH0907

Plug-in connector, circular connector	Bulk cable	Plug-in connector, circular connector/KSM/KMS
RHS2322/C03[1)] 	REH0800	RHS2321/C03[1)]  RHS0011/C03[2)]  RHS0016/C03[3)] 

Interconnection diagram (RHS2322 - RHS2321)



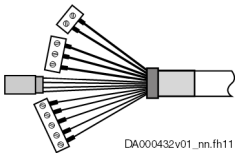
Interconnection diagram (RHS2322 -RHS0011/RHS0016)



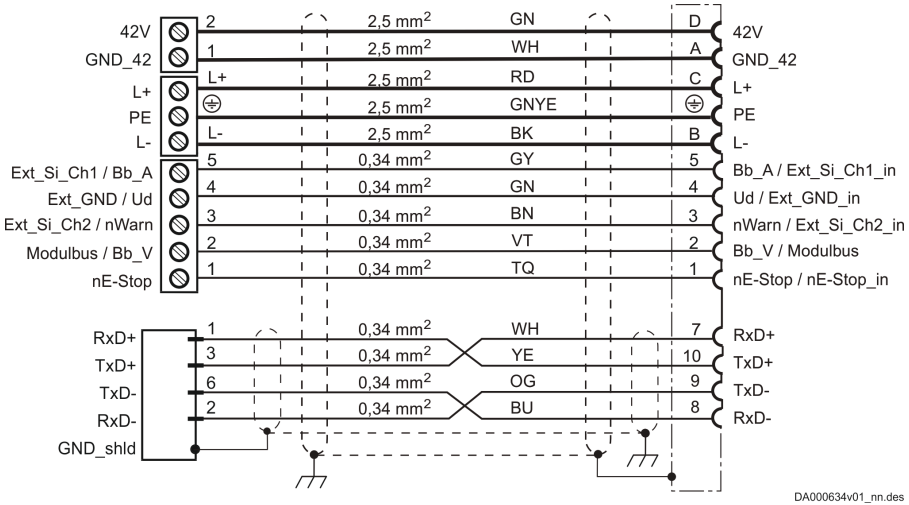
1) RKH0900
2) RKH0902, RKH0905
3) RKH0907

Tab. 5-30: RKH0900, RKH0902, RKH0905, RKH0907

Applies to: RKH0903

KCU plug-in connector	Bulk cable	Plug-in connector, circular connector
RHS0005/C03 	REH0800	RHS2321/C03 

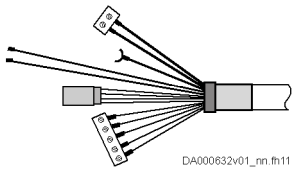
Interconnection diagram

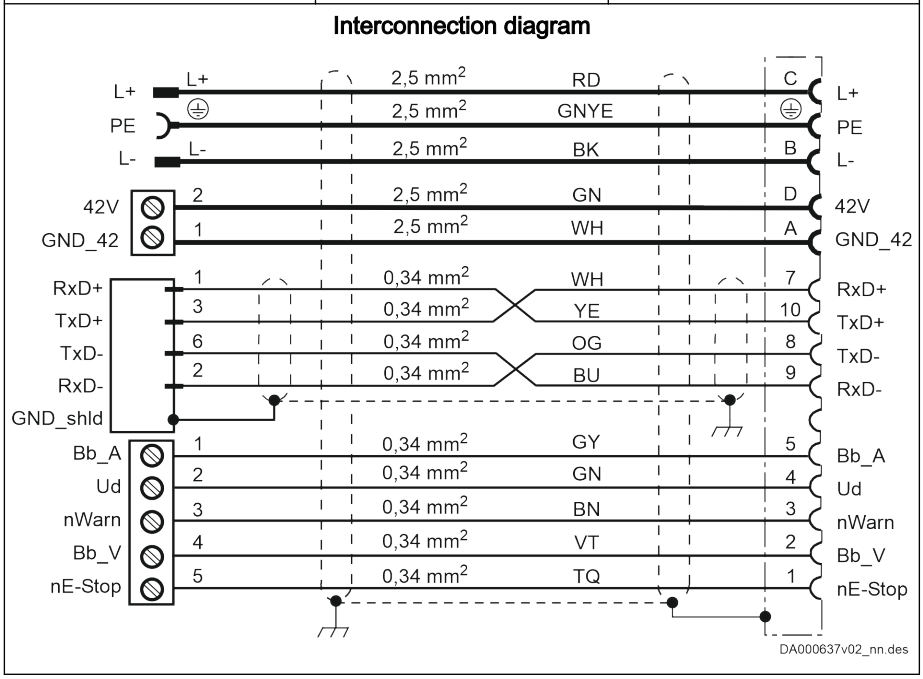


Tab. 5-31: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables from KCU to circular connector

Applies to: RKH0909

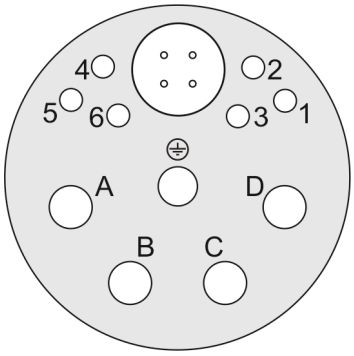
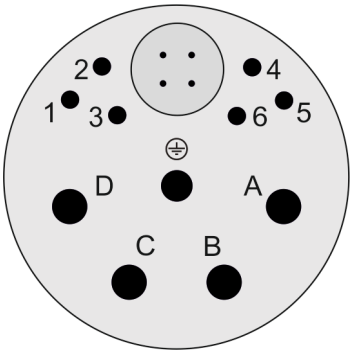
HAS05.1-023 plug-in connector	Bulk cable	Plug-in connector, circular connector
RHS0015/CM03	REH0800	RHS2321/CM03





Tab. 5-32: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables from HAS05.1-023 to circular connector

Circular connector

RHS2321	RHS2322
	
M23, female, Ø: 28 mm	M23, male, Ø: 28 mm
	

Tab. 5-33: Circular connector

Housing duct

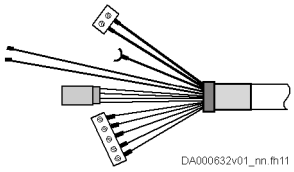
For RKH09xx hybrid cables, a **metallic flange** can be fitted to the circular connector.

This allows hybrid cable housing ducts to be implemented with a pluggable connection at the housing (control cabinet, machine).

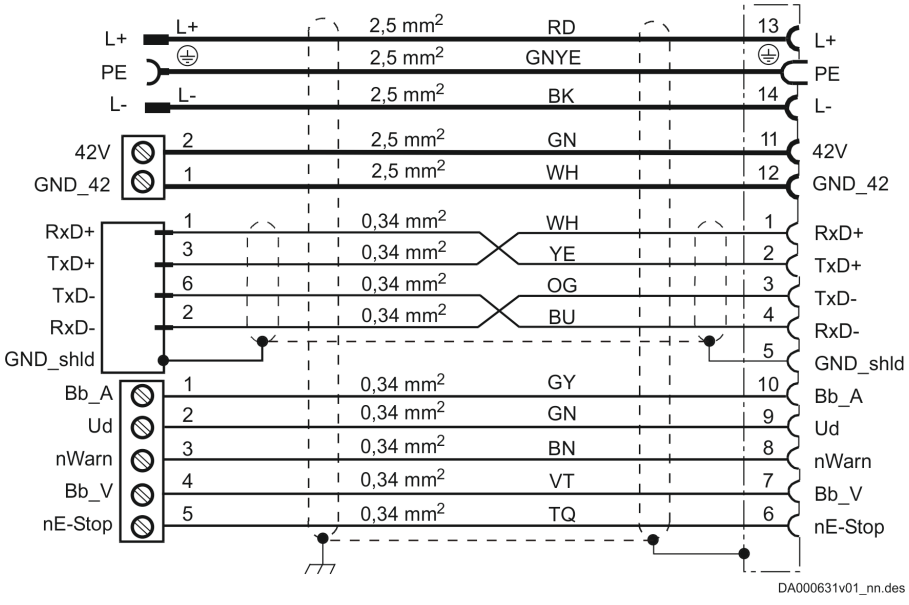
See chapter 10.26 "Metallic flange for circular connectors" on page 350.

HAS05.1-023 - KSM/KMS

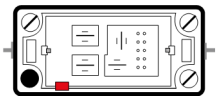
Applies to: RKH0341, RKH0441, RKH0541

HAS05 plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KSM/KMS plug-in connector
RHS0015/CM03 	REH0800	RHS0024/CM03 [1]  RHS0025/CM03 [2] 

Interconnection diagram



Coding at KSM/KMS plug-in connector [3]

Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0341 RKH0441 RKH0541	RHS0015	 X103.1 ● Locking pin ▬ Coding profile [4]

1) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0341, RKH0441
2) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0541
3) Picture shows coding with view to mating side
4) The coding profile ensures the downward compatibility of the hybrid cable for KSM01/KMS01

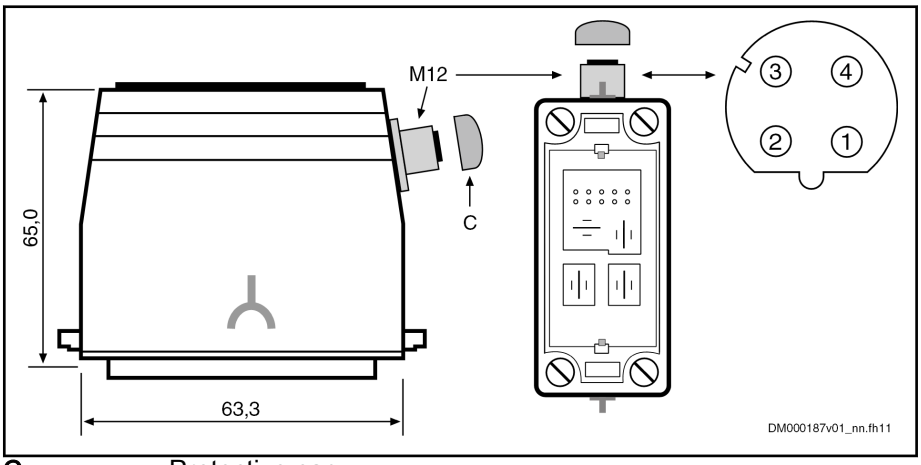
Tab. 5-34: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables from HAS05.1-023 to KSM/KMS

HAS05.1-023 chapter 10.9 "HAS05.1-023, HCS01 adapter" on page 318

RHS0014 terminal connector

RHS0014 terminal connector

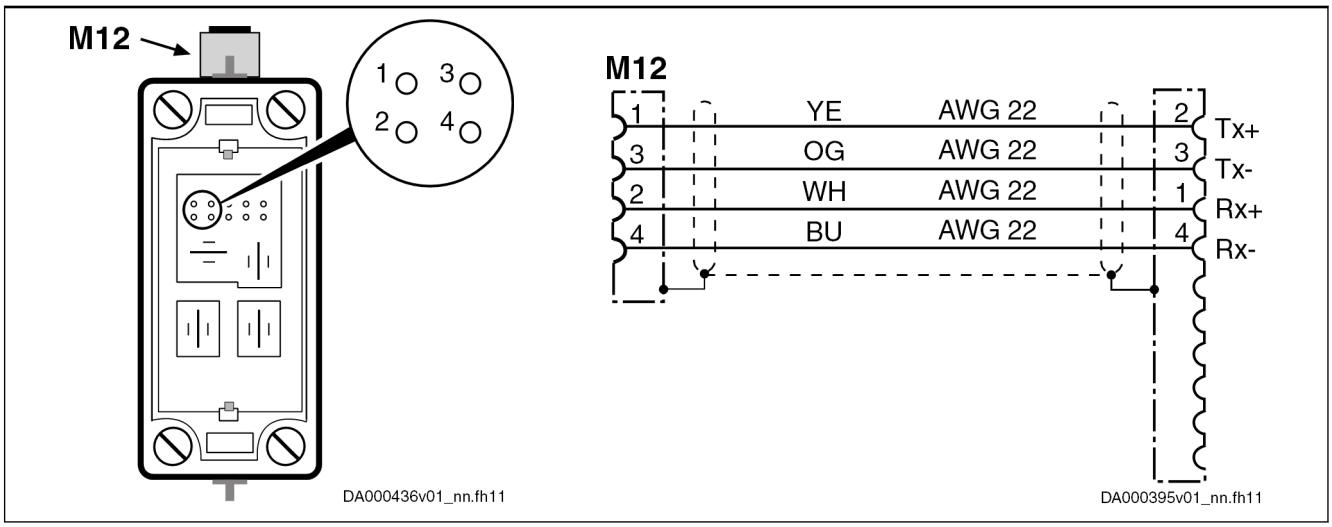
Each line of drives has to be terminated at the last connection point X103.2, using terminal connector RHS0014 (material number: R911335793). The terminal connector is not coded.



C Protective cap

M12 4-pin socket, D-coded; the pins are internally connected to the contacts for Multi-Ethernet communication (Tx+, Tx-, Rx+, Rx-); the connection point can be used for the drive system Engineering

Fig. 5-39: RHS0014 terminal connector



Tab. 5-35: Internal M12 socket wiring

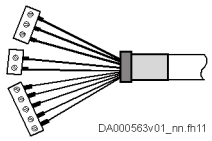
If it is difficult to access the M12 socket in your drive system:

Connect a cable (e.g. RKB0043) to the M12 socket and position the end of the cable at an easily accessible point.

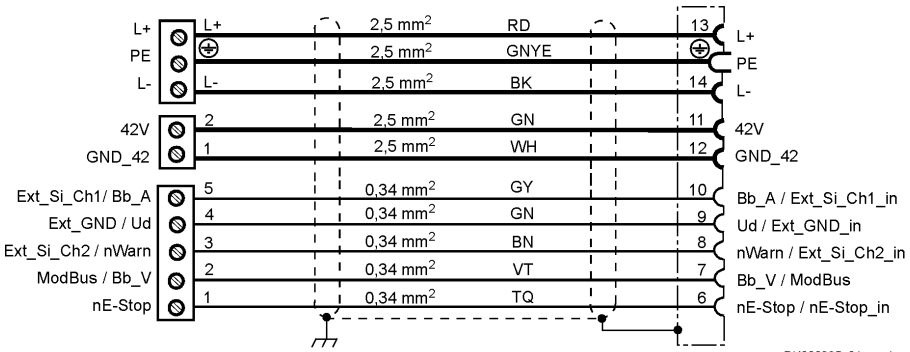
5.9.6 Interconnection diagrams for ready-made hybrid cables without communication

KCU - KSM/KMS

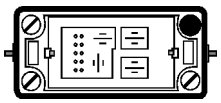
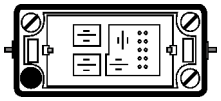
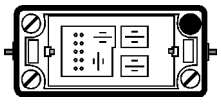
Applies to: RKH0321, RKH0421, RKH0521

KCU plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KSM/KMS plug-in connector
RHS0008/K02 	REH0803	RHS0021/CM02 [1]  RHS0022/CM02 [2] 

Interconnection diagram



KSM/KMS plug-in connector[3]

Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0321	RHS0008	 X103.1
RKH0421	RHS0008	 X103.1
RKH0521	RHS0008	 X103.1

1) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0321, RKH0421
2) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0521
3) View to mating side

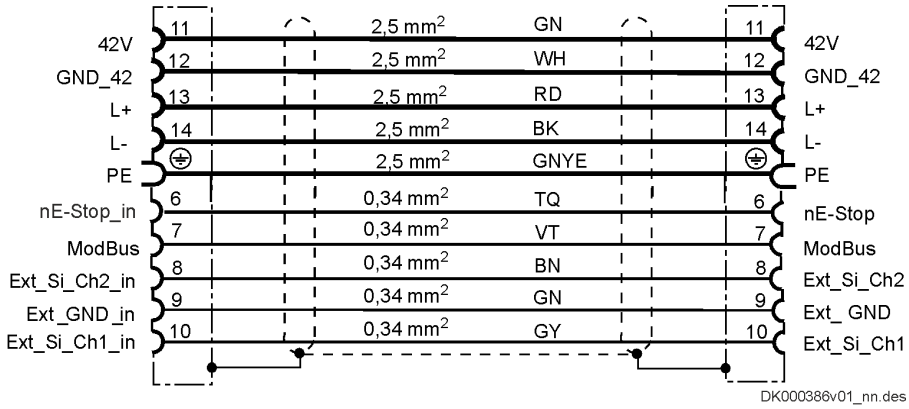
Tab. 5-36: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables without communication from KCU to KSM02/KMS

KSM/KMS - KSM/KMS

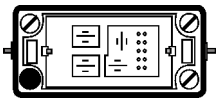
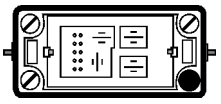
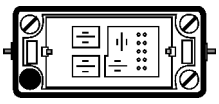
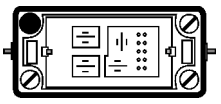
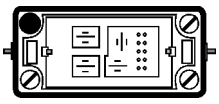
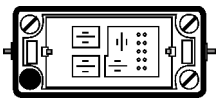
Applies to: RKH0021, RKH0120, RKH0121, RKH0220, RKH0222

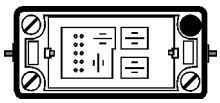
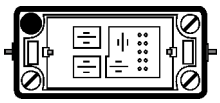
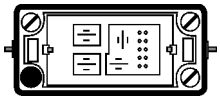
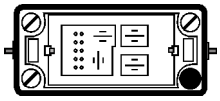
KSM/KMS plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KSM/KMS plug-in connector
RHS0021/CM02 	REH0803	RHS0021/CM02 [1]  RHS0022/CM02 [2] 

Interconnection diagram



KSM/KMS plug-in connector[3]

Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0021	 X103.1	 X103.2
RKH0120	 X103.1	 X103.2
RKH0121	 X103.2	 X103.1

RKH0220	 X103.1	 X103.2
RKH0222	 X103.1	 X103.2

1) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0021, RKH0120, RKH0121, RKH0220
2) R-End plug-in connector for RKH0222
3) View to mating side

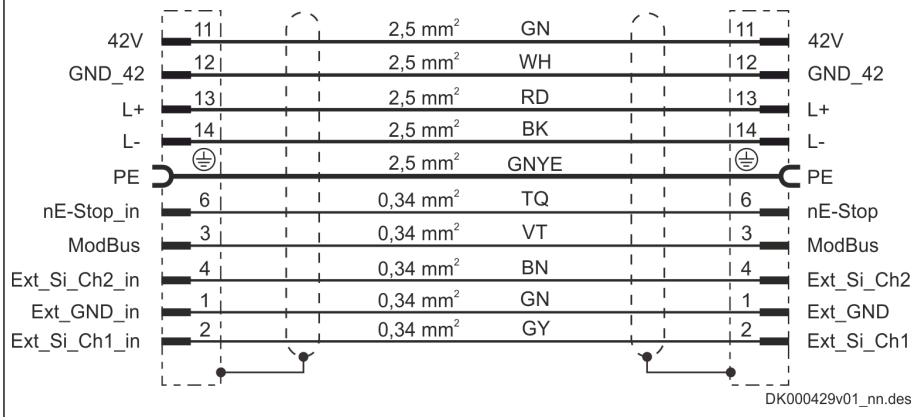
Tab. 5-37: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables without communication from KSM/KMS to KSM/KMS

Flexible cable tracks

Applies to: RKH0710

KSM/KMS plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KSM/KMS plug-in connector
RHS0023/CM02	REH0803	RHS0023/CM02

Interconnection diagram



Coding at KSM/KMS plug-in connector

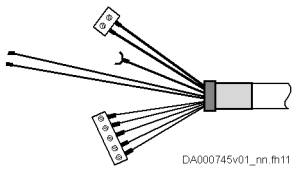
Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0710	Not coded	Not coded

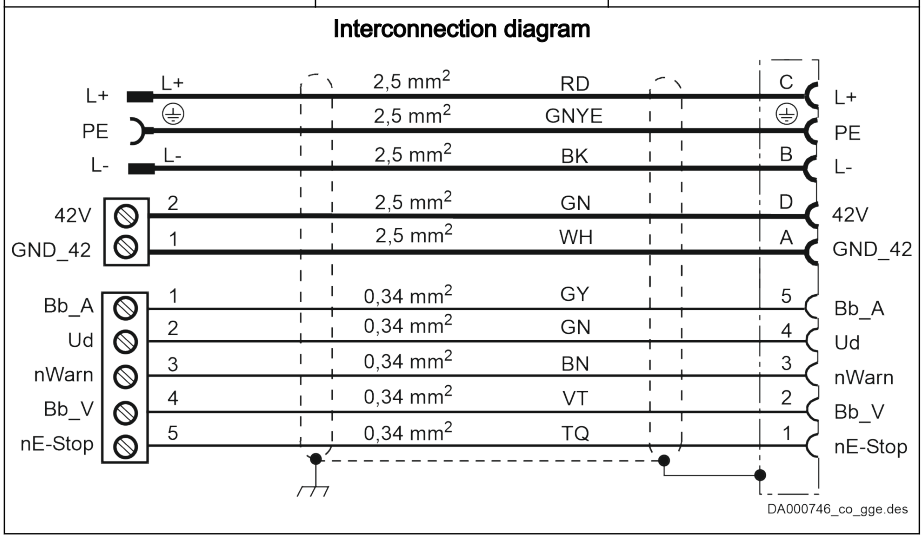
Tab. 5-38: Parts of ready-made hybrid cable for flexible cable tracks

Hybrid cable with circular connector

Applies to: RKH0910

HAS05.1-023 plug-in connector	Bulk cable	Plug-in connector, circular connector
RHS0010/CM02	REH0803	RHS2321/CM02

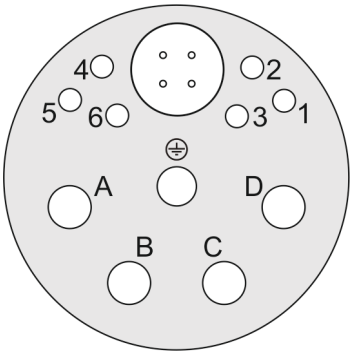




Tab. 5-39: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables from HAS05.1-023 to circular connector

Circular connector

RHS2321

M23, female, Ø: 28 mm


Tab. 5-40: Circular connector

Housing duct

For RKH09xx hybrid cables, a **metallic flange** can be fitted to the circular connector.

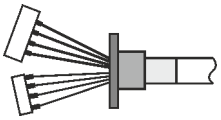
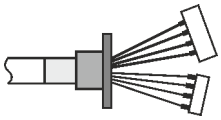
This allows hybrid cable housing ducts to be implemented with a pluggable connection at the housing (control cabinet, machine).

See chapter 10.26 "Metallic flange for circular connectors" on page 350.

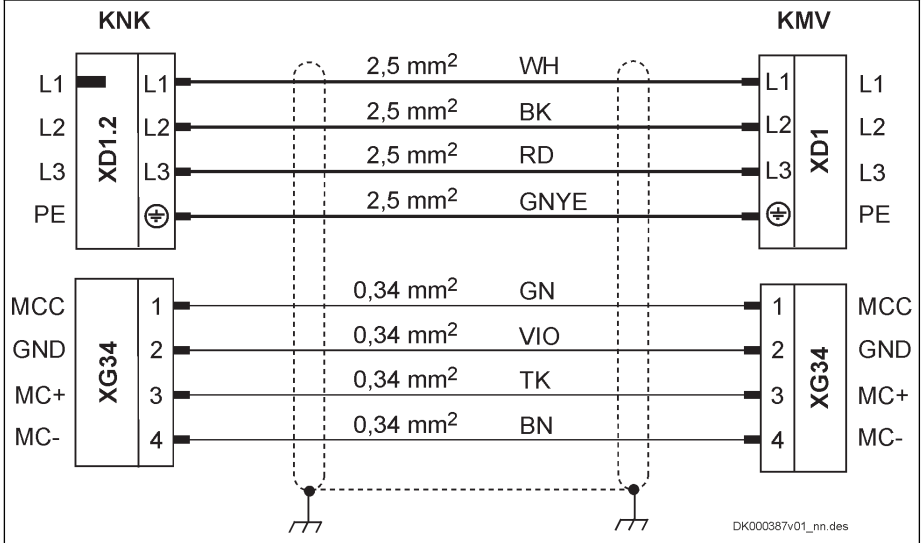
5.9.7 Interconnection diagrams for ready-made hybrid cables used for mains connection

KNK03 - KMV03 (RKH0800)

Applies to: RKH0800

KNK03 plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KMV03 plug-in connector
RHS0017/K03	REH0803	RHS0018/K03
		

Interconnection diagram



KNK03/KMV03 plug-in connector

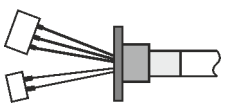
Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0800	XD1 connector XG34 connector	XD1 connector XG34 connector

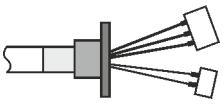
Tab. 5-41: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables used for mains connection

KNK03 - KMV03 (RKH0801)

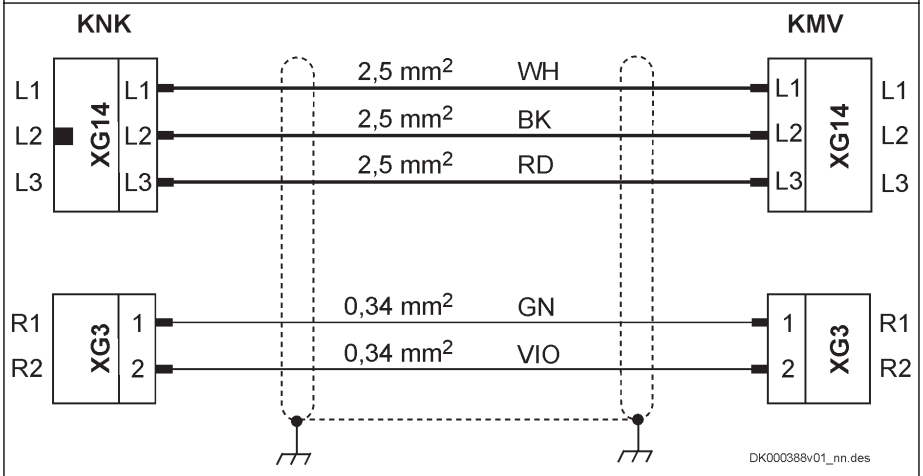
Applies to: RKH0801

KNK03 plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KMV03 plug-in connector
RHS0019/K03	REH0803	RHS0020/K03





Interconnection diagram



KNK03/KMV03 plug-in connector

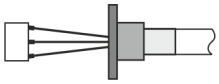
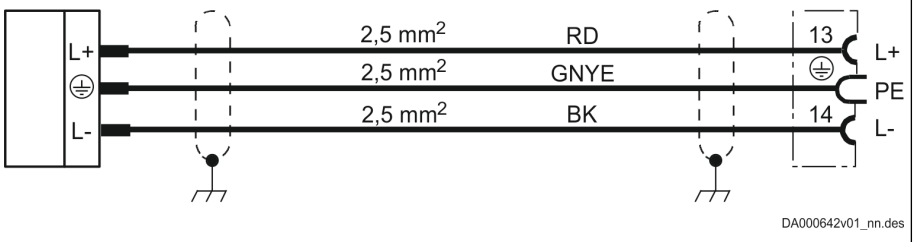
Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0801	XG14 connector XG3 connector	XG14 connector XG3 connector

Tab. 5-42: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables used for mains connection

5.9.8 Interconnection diagrams for ready-made hybrid cables used for DC bus connection

KLC03 - KMV03 (RKH0802)

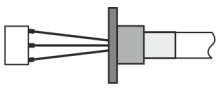
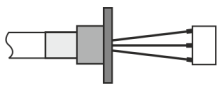
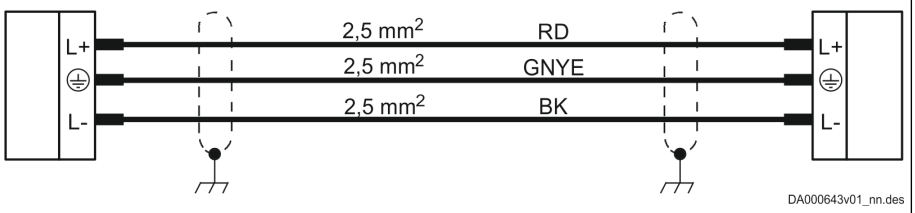
Applies to: RKH0802

KLC03 plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KMV03 plug-in connector
RHS0009/KM04 	REL0015	RHS0026/CM04 
Interconnection diagram		
		
KLC03/KMV03 plug-in connector		
Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0802	XG9 connector	X103.1

Tab. 5-43: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables used for DC bus connection

KLC03 - KLC03 (RKH0803)

Applies to: RKH0803

KLC03 plug-in connector	Bulk cable	KLC03 plug-in connector
RHS0009/KM04 	REL0015	RHS0009/KM04 
Interconnection diagram		
		
KLC03/KLC03 plug-in connector		
Cable type	L-End	R-End
RKH0803	XG9 connector	XG9 connector

Tab. 5-44: Parts of ready-made hybrid cables used for DC bus connection

6 Connection points

6.1 System connection points

6.1.1 Connection point of equipment grounding conductor

Cabinet-bound drive systems

⚠ WARNING **Dangerous contact voltage at device housing! Lethal electric shock!**

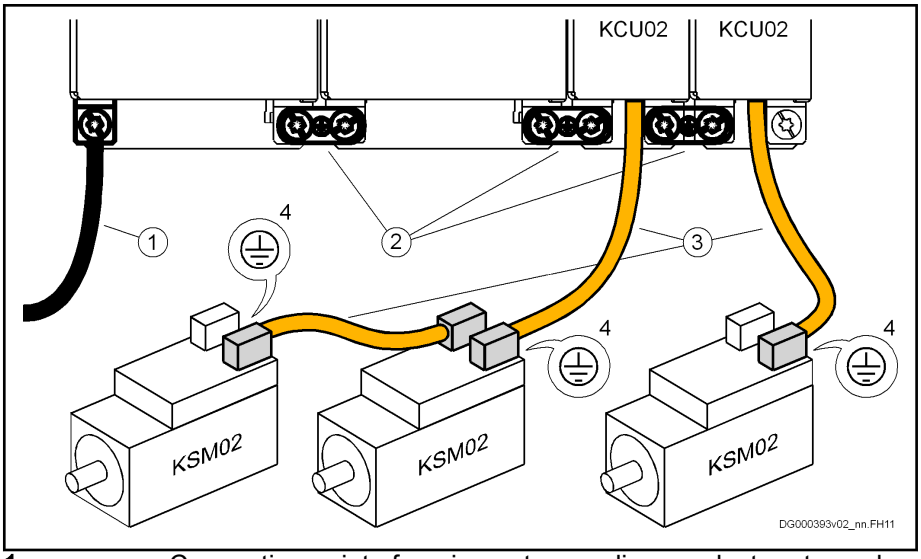
The devices of the IndraDrive Mi product range are devices with increased leakage current (greater than AC 3.5 mA or DC 10 mA).

Therefore, always install a stationary connection of the equipment grounding conductor.

In a IndraDrive Mi drive system, connect the equipment grounding conductor connections of all devices and additional components to the equipment grounding system.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the devices by spark discharge of static charges**

In some applications (e.g., printing or packaging), high static charges can develop. Make sure that these charges can be directly discharged against ground at their point of origin. Therefore, connect the second connection point of equipment grounding conductor of the devices to the equipment grounding system of the installation.



1 Connection point of equipment grounding conductor at supply unit with connection to equipment grounding system

2 Joint bars connect equipment grounding conductors of neighboring devices
If connecting with joint bars is impossible, use cables to connect neighboring devices.

3 Hybrid cables connect equipment grounding conductors of KSM/KMS with one another and with equipment grounding conductor of KCU

4 Second equipment grounding conductor connection point at KSM/KMS

Fig. 6-1: Equipment grounding conductor connection point

The connection point of the equipment grounding conductor shown above also applies to KMS near motor servo drives.

Cabinet free drive systems

⚠ WARNING **Dangerous contact voltage at device housing! Lethal electric shock!**

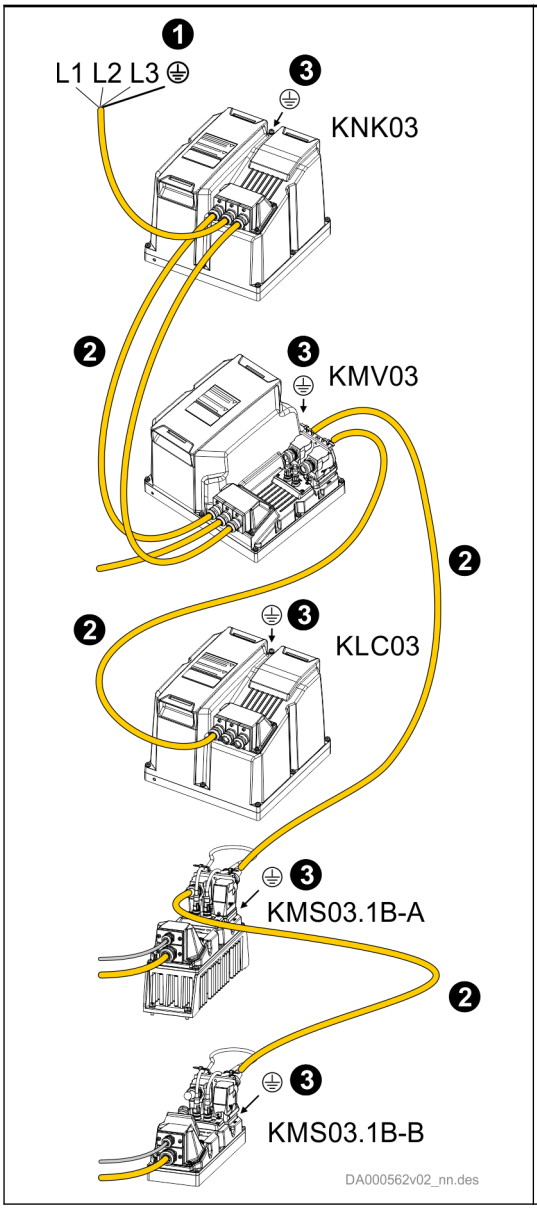
The devices of the IndraDrive Mi product range are devices with increased leakage current (greater than AC 3.5 mA or DC 10 mA).

Therefore, always install a stationary connection of the equipment grounding conductor.

In a IndraDrive Mi drive system, connect the equipment grounding conductor connections of all devices and additional components to the equipment grounding system.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the devices by spark discharge of static charges**

In some applications (e.g., printing or packaging), high static charges can develop. Make sure that these charges can be directly discharged against ground at their point of origin. Therefore, connect the second connection point of equipment grounding conductor of the devices to the equipment grounding system of the installation.



1. Connection point of equipment grounding conductor at KNK03 mains filter with connection to equipment grounding system
2. Hybrid cables connect equipment grounding conductors of the devices
3. Second equipment grounding conductor connection point

Tab. 6-1: Equipment grounding conductor connection point

6.1.2 Ground connection

The ground connection of the housing is used to provide functional safety of the devices and protection against contact in conjunction with the equipment grounding conductor.

Ground the housings of the devices:

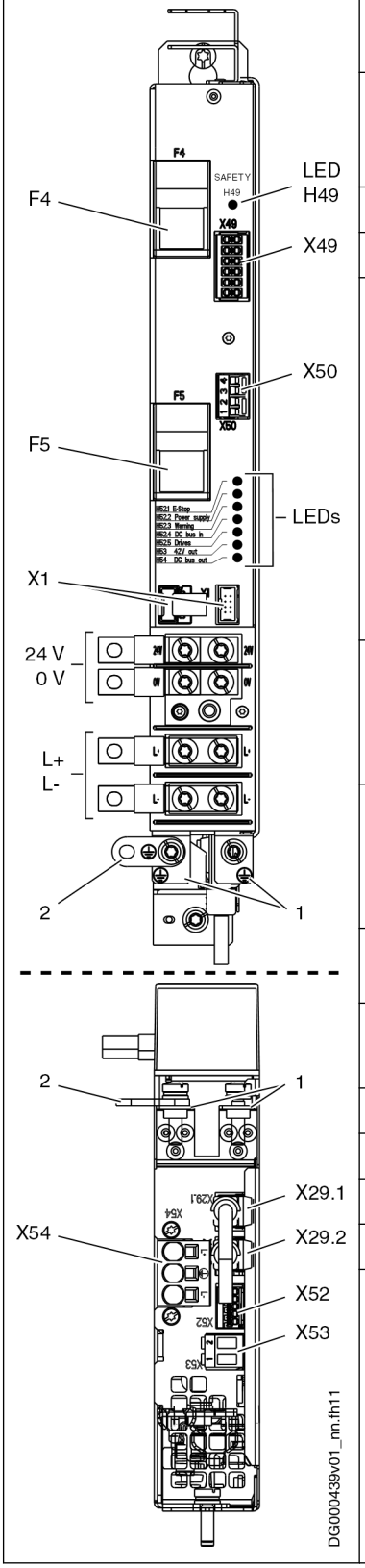
1. Connect the bare metal back panel of the devices in conductive form to the mounting surface in the control cabinet. To do this, use the supplied mounting screws.
2. Connect the mounting surface of the control cabinet in conductive form to the equipment grounding system.

2 drive lines

If you connect 2 drive lines from terminal connector to terminal connector, provide equipotential bonding (ground connection) between the drive lines.

6.2 KCU02 connection points

6.2.1 Positions of the connection points

Figure	Element	Significance	Notes
	1	Equipment grounding conductor	For connection to the equipment grounding system
	2	Joint bar of equipment grounding conductor	IndraDrive: For connection to neighboring device (part of basic accessory HAS01) ctrlX DRIVE: Use cable instead of joint bar
	F4	Fuse for output X54 (L+)	30 A
	F5	Fuse for output X54 (L-)	30 A
	LEDs	H49: Safety	Diagnostic displays
		H52.1: E-Stop	
		H52.2: Power Supply	
		H52.3: Warning	
		H52.4: DC Bus In	
		H52.5: Drives	
		H53: 42 V Out	
		H54: DC Bus Out	
	24 V, 0 V	Control voltage	IndraDrive: For connection to supply unit via contact bars (part of basic accessory HAS01) ctrlX DRIVE: Use cables instead of contact bars
	L+, L-	DC bus	IndraDrive: For connection to supply unit via contact bars (part of basic accessory HAS01) ctrlX DRIVE: Use cables instead of contact bars
	X1	Module bus	Keep ribbon cable in parking position, when there is no connection to neighboring device.
	X29.1 X29.2	Multi-Ethernet	Signals are looped through
	X49	Safety technology	L3 (Safe Torque Off)
	X50	E-Stop	E-Stop input
	X52	Status messages	For exchanging status messages
	X53	42 V, 0 V	42 V output; control voltage supply
	X54	DC bus, equipment grounding conductor	DC bus output; power supply

Tab. 6-2: KCU02 connection points

☞ At a KCU02, exclusively operate KSM02 motor-integrated servo drives or KMS02/KMS03 near motor servo drives.

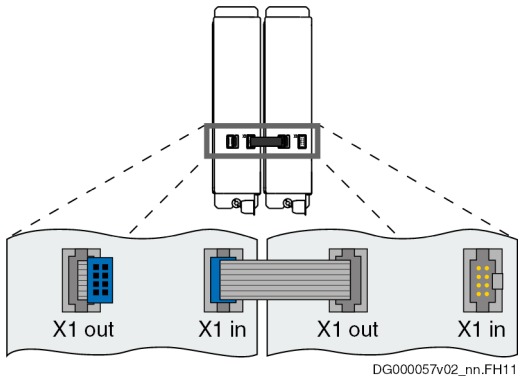
For the correct and safe function of the drive, **all** connection points must be connected.

At X29.1 or X29.2, X52, X53 and X54, use the hybrid cable RKH by Rexroth.

6.2.2 X1, module bus

Function, pin assignment

The module bus is an **internal system connection** and is used to exchange data between the devices.

View	Identification	Function
	X1 in	Receives the module bus connector
	X1 out	Passes the module bus connection to the neighboring device

Tab. 6-3: X1, Module Bus

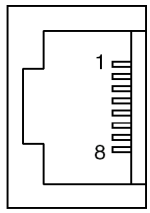
Installation instructions

- Keep the ribbon cable in the **parking position**, if the connection to the neighboring device is not established.
- If used for the module bus, **extension cables** must be **shielded**. Their total length may not exceed a **maximum of 40 m**. The module bus connection can be extended by means of accessory **RKB0001**.
- When using **DC bus capacitor units**:

  Do not establish this connection at the DC bus capacitor unit, if the DC bus capacitor unit is the last device in the drive system.

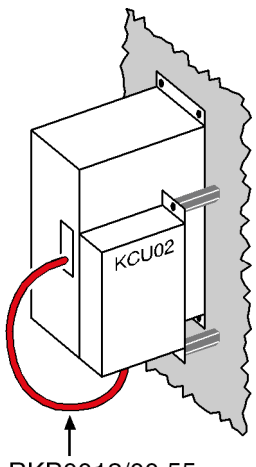
6.2.3 X29.1, X29.2, Multi-Ethernet

The signals at X29.1 are directly looped through to X29.2.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000041v01_nn.FH	1	TD+	Transmit, Differential Output A
	2	TD-	Transmit, Differential Output B
	3	RD+	Receive, Differential Input A
	4	n. c.	-
	5	n. c.	-
	6	RD-	Receive, Differential Input B
	7	n. c.	-
	8	n. c.	-
	Housing		Shield connection
Properties			
Standard	• Ethernet • Type: RJ-45, 8-pin		
Compatibility	100Base-TX according to IEEE 802.3u		
Recommended cable type	• According to **CAT5e**; ITP type of shield (Industrial Twisted Pair) • Ready-made cables that can be ordered: – **RKB0021** Long cables (100 m at maximum) to connect the drive system to the higher-level control unit or remote communication nodes. Minimum bending radius: – 48.75 mm with flexible installation – 32.50 mm with permanent installation Order code for a 30 m long cable: RKB0021/030,0 – **RKB0013** Short cables to connect devices arranged side by side in the control cabinet. 4 lengths available: 0.19 m; 0.25 m; 0.35 m; 0.55 m Order code for a 0.55 m long cable: RKB0013/00,55 Minimum bending radius: 30.75 mm		

Tab. 6-4: Function, pin assignment, properties

RKB0013, KCU02 ↔ drive controller

The RKB0013/00,55 cable (length: 0.55 m) connects a KCU02 to a neighboring drive controller.	

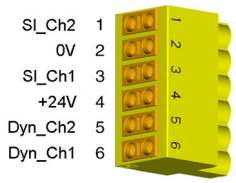
Tab. 6-5: RKB0013/00,55

netSWITCH sercos III

With sercos III and for the Engineering of the drive system, you can connect our "netSWITCH sercos III" accessory into the sercos III ring.

6.2.4 X49, L3 - Safe Torque Off

Data

View	Identification	Function
	X49	Safe Torque Off

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Connection cable	mm^2	1	1,5
Stranded wire	AWG	16	16
Stripped length	mm	8	
Output current per output	mA	-	350
Input current 24V supply	mA	-	700
Voltage load	V	-	60
Polarity reversal protection for power supply	-	Available	

Tab. 6-6: Data

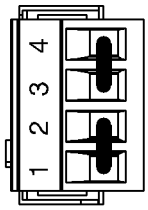
Pin Assignment, Function

Function	Signal	Connection	Technical data
Selection channel 1	SI_Ch1	3	chapter 14.1.2 "Digital inputs (safety technology L options)" on page 385
Selection channel 2	SI_Ch2	1	
Dynamization output channel 1	Dyn_Ch1	6	chapter 14.2.1 "Digital outputs (safety technology L options)" on page 387
Dynamization output channel 2	Dyn_Ch2	5	
Power supply of **isolated** inputs and outputs	+24V	4	DC 19.2 … 30 V
	0V	2	The power supply for X49 must be external (e.g. external 24 V power supply). The connection point X50 (E-Stop input) must not be used for power supply of X49!

Tab. 6-7: Pin Assignment, Function

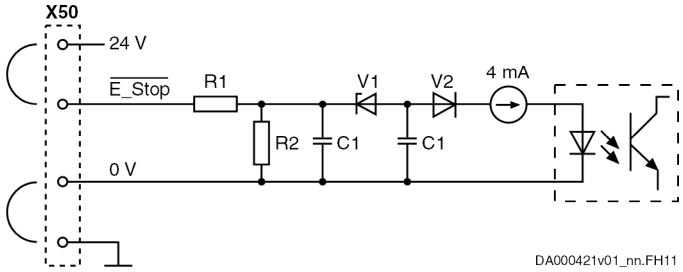
When the dynamization outputs do not work, check the power supply connection. The polarity might possibly have been reversed.

6.2.5 X50, E-Stop Input

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DG000189v01_nn.fh11 Condition as supplied: With jumpers at 1-2 and 3-4	4	24V	24V output for E-Stop input [1]
	3	$\overline{\text{E-Stop}}$	Digital input for E-Stop (isolated; active with input voltage "L")
	2	0V	
	1	0V	0V output for E-Stop input [2]

The input complies with EN61131-2, type 1.

Input circuit (R1 = approx. 1k; R2 = approx. 7k4; C1 = approx. 10 nF; V1 = approx. 6 V; V2 = approx. 0.7 V):



Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	0,5	1,5
Connection cable	AWG	20	16
Allowed input voltage	V	-3	30
Input voltage "H"	V	15	30
Input current "H"	mA	2	15
Input voltage "L"	V	0	5
Input current "L"	mA	0	> 0,5
Input resistance	kΩ	2,5	

1) Exclusively use the 24 V output for the E-Stop input in conjunction with the jumper from X50.3 to X50.4. Maximum power rating: 15 mA.

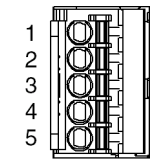
2) Exclusively use the 0 V output for the E-Stop input in conjunction with the jumper from X50.1 to X50.2. Maximum rating: 15 mA.

Tab. 6-8: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

See also description of the **E-Stop function**: chapter "E-Stop function" on page 248

6.2.6 X52, Status Messages

Connection to the overall system takes place via the drive connection box KCU02.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000036_nn.FH11	1 (TQ*)	_____ E-Stop	Internal signals between KCU02 and KSM02/ KMS02
	2 (VT*)	_____ Module bus	
	3 (BN*)	SI_Ch2	Internal connection X49.1 ↔ X52.3
	4 (GN*)	0V_SI	Internal connection X49.2 ↔ X52.4
	5 (GY*)	SI_Ch1	Internal connection X49.3 ↔ X52.5
Spring terminal (connector at hybrid cable)	**Unit**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	n.s.	
Connection cable	AWG		
Voltage range	V	0	24 +10%
Voltage level "H"	V	15	n.s.
Voltage level "L"	V	n.s.	5
Output current	mA	n.s.	500

* Conductor color of the ready-made cable RKH

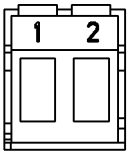
Tab. 6-9: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

6.2.7 X53, Control Voltage Output

⚠ WARNING **High electrical voltage! Danger to life by electric shock!**

Do not remove connectors when the component has been powered. Do not plug in connectors when the component has been powered.

Wait at least 30 minutes after switching off the supply voltages to allow discharging.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000178v01_nn.FH11	1 (WH*)	GND	• Output of DC-DC converter (24V – 42V) in KCU02 (GND is not connected to 0V of the 24V supply) • Supplies KSM02/KMS02 with control voltage
	2 (GN*)	42 V	

Screw terminal (connector at hybrid cable)	Unit	Min.	Max.
Tightening torque	Nm	1,5	1,7
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	Connection via hybrid cable RKH	
Connection cable	AWG		
Output data		U_{out}, P_{out} (see technical data of KCU02)	
Short circuit protection		–	Present
Overload protection		–	Present

* Conductor color of the ready-made cable RKH

Tab. 6-10: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

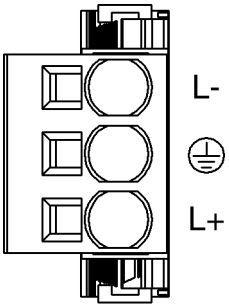
Control Voltage Monitoring

The control voltage is constantly monitored. If the allowed voltage range is left, the control voltage for the connected KSM02/KMS02 devices is switched off and LED H53 emits red light. Thereafter, the motors are coasting down because a return movement is no longer possible.

Notes on Operation

Do not remove connectors when the component has been powered. Do not plug in connectors when the component has been powered.

6.2.8 X54, DC Bus, Equipment Grounding Conductor Output KSM02/ KMS02

View	Connection	Function
 DG000185v01_nn.FH11	L- (BK*)	DC bus; negative pole
	⏚ (GNYE*)	Equipment grounding conductor
	L+ (RD*)	DC bus; positive pole
Spring terminal (connector at hybrid cable)	**Unit**	
Connection cable stranded wire		Connection via hybrid cable RKH
Connection cable		
Short circuit protection L+, L-		Fuses F4, F5
Voltage L+, L-	V	U_{out} (see technical data of KCU02)

* Conductor color of the ready-made cable RKH

Tab. 6-11: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

6.2.9 DC Bus Connection L+, L-

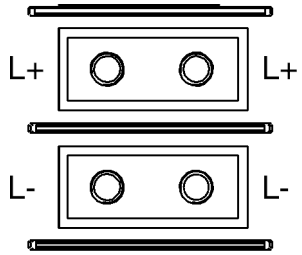
⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working on live parts: De-energize installation and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.

Wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

Check whether voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

Technical Data of the Connection Point

View	Identification	Function	
 DA000176v01_nn.FH11	L+ L-	Connection points for connecting DC bus connections	
Screw connection M6 thread at device (terminal block)	**Unit**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Tightening torque	Nm	5,5	6,5
Short circuit protection		Via fusing elements connected in the incoming circuit to the mains connection	
Overload protection		Via fusing elements connected in the incoming circuit to the mains connection	
Current carrying capacity "looping through" from L+ to L+, L- to L- (contact bars in scope of supply of accessory HAS01)			
With contact bars -072	A		220
Additionally with contact bars -042 and end piece	A		245

Tab. 6-12: Function, Pin Assignment, Properties

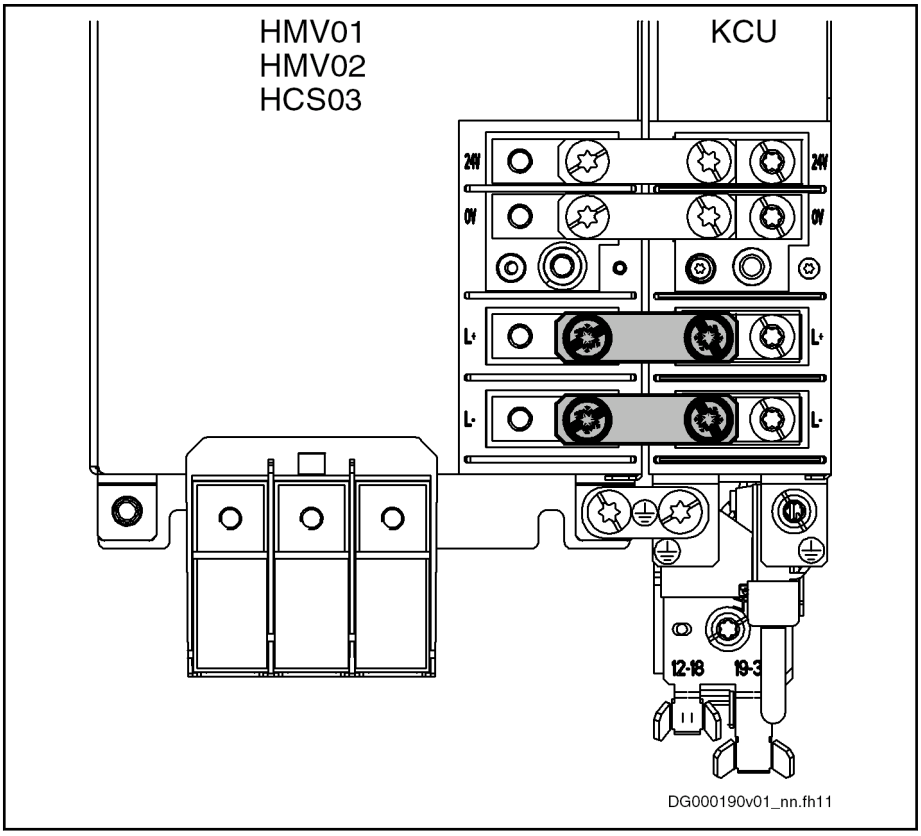


Fig. 6-2: Connection of Contact Bars

Notes on Installation

If in special cases it is not possible to use the contact bars provided to establish the connection, the connection must be established using the shortest possible **twisted** wires.

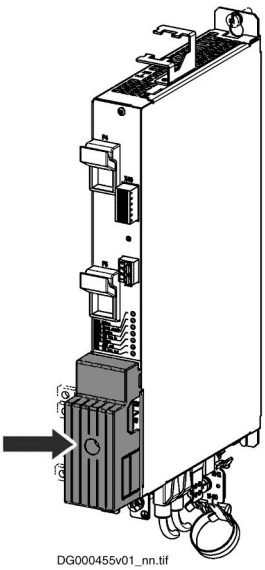
NOTICE **Risk of damage by voltage arcing!**

Insulate ring terminals and lines with a heat-shrinkable sleeve. Afterwards, only strip the insulation of the contact surface of the ring terminal.

When connecting the lines, make sure the polarity is correct.

Length of twisted wire	Max. 2 m
Line cross section	Min. 10 mm^2, but not smaller than cross section of supply feeder
Line protection	By means of fuses in the mains connection
Dielectric strength of single strand against ground	≥ 750 V (e.g.: strand type – H07)

Tab. 6-13: DC Bus Line

	**WARNING!** Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V! The appropriate touch guard must be mounted for each device following connection work. Never operate the device without the touch guard mounted.

Tab. 6-14: Touch Guard

Adjusting Mounting Depths

HMV01 and HCS03 devices have greater mounting depths than the drive connection box KCU. For connecting the drive connection box KCU to an HMV01 or HCS03 device, you must therefore use the control cabinet adapter HAS03.1-002 which compensates the different mounting depths.

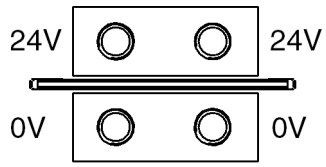
6.2.10 Control voltage supply +24V, 0V

PELV[1] for 24V power supply unit

For the 24V supply of the devices of the IndraDrive Mi range, use a power supply unit or a control-power transformer with protection by PELV according to IEC 60204-1 (section 6.4).

A UL508-certified power supply unit has to be used in the scope of CSA/UL.

Technical data of the connection point

View	Identification	Function
 DA000175v01_nn.FH11	+24V	Power supply Connection to neighboring devices with contact bars from accessory HAS01.1
	0V	Reference potential for power supply Connection to neighboring devices with contact bars from accessory HAS01.1

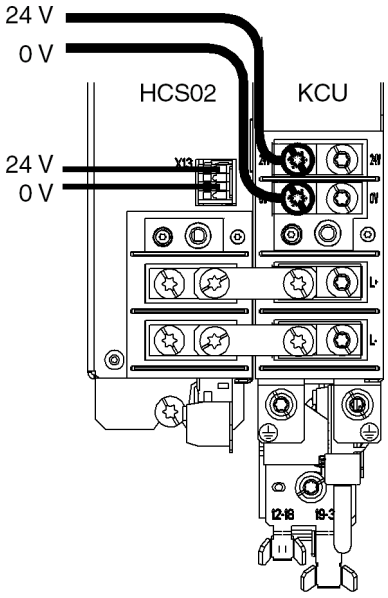
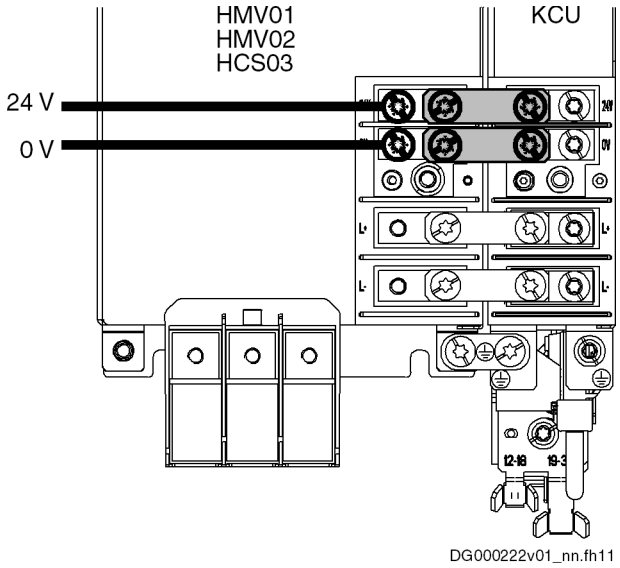
Screw connection M6 thread at device (terminal block)	**Unit**	**Min.**	**Max.**
Tightening torque	Nm	5.5	6.5
Power consumption	W	P_{N3} (see technical data)	
Voltage load capacity	V	U_{N3} (see technical data)	
Polarity reversal protection		Within the allowed voltage range by internal protective diode	
Current carrying capacity "looping through" from 24V to 24V, 0V to 0V (contact bars in scope of supply of accessory HAS01)			
With contact bars -072	A	220	

Tab. 6-15: Function, pin assignment, properties

Control Voltage Monitoring

The control voltage is constantly monitored. If the allowed voltage range is left, the control voltage for the connected KSM02/KMS02 devices is switched off and LED H53 emits red light. Thereafter, the motors are coasting down because a return movement is no longer possible.

1) Protective Extra-Low Voltage

HCS02	HCS03, HMV01, HMV02
 DG000221v01_nn.FH11 For HCS02 devices, the 24V supply is connected to the drive connection box KCU with **cables** (cross section: min. 6 mm^2 (AWG 10)).	 DG000222v01_nn.fh11 For HCS03, HMV01 and HMV02 devices, the 24V supply is connected to the drive connection box KCU with **contact bars**.

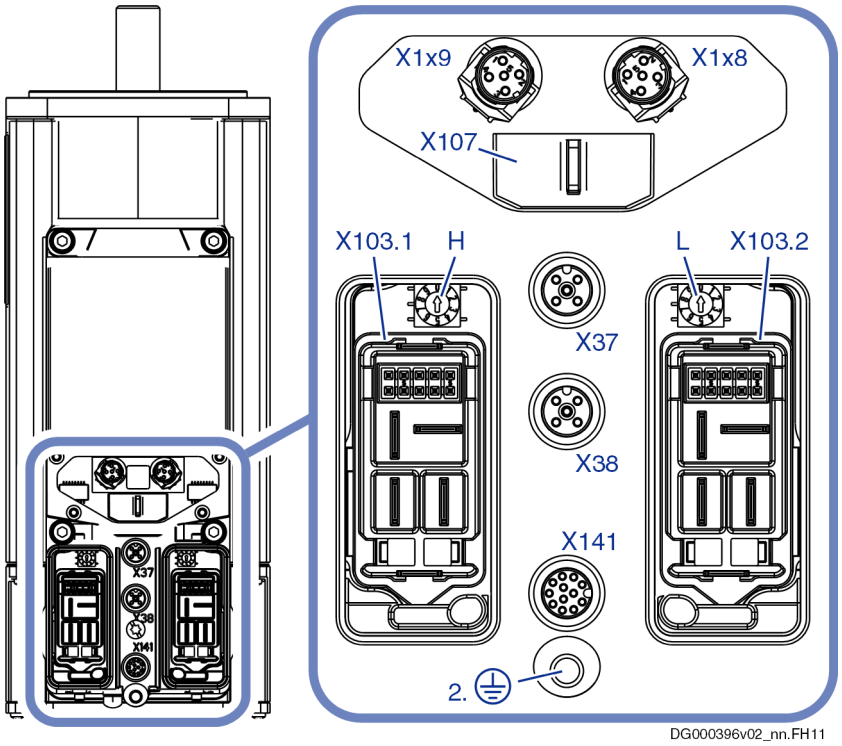
Tab. 6-16: Connecting the 24V supply

6.3 KSM02 connection points

6.3.1 Positions of the connection points

Use ready-made hybrid cables and terminal connectors by Rexroth for X103.1 and X103.2.

X107 (programming module) is only accessible after the cover has been removed.

Figure	Element	Significance
	H	Address selector switch (10×)
	L	Address selector switch (1×)
	X37 X38	Digital inputs/outputs
	X103.1 X103.2	Hybrid cable
	X107	Programming module
	X1x8 X1x9	Communication (optional) • X108, X109: Communication output coupling • X118, X119: External communication
	X141	Safety technology (optional)
	2nd ⏚	Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor

Tab. 6-17: KSM02 connection points

6.3.2 X37, X38, digital inputs/outputs

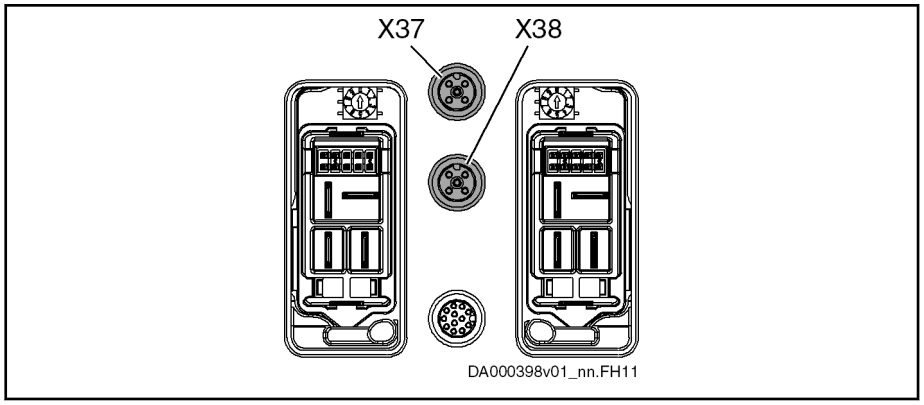
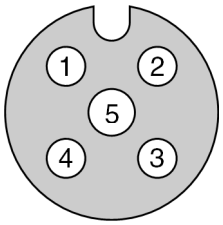
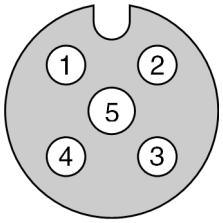


Fig. 6-3: X37 and X38

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000197v01_nn.FH11	X37.1	U_{ext}	External supply 19 … 30 V, max. 1 A, connected to X38.1
	X37.2	I/O_3	dig. I/O, configurable
	X37.3	0 V_{ext}	Reference potential; external supply, connected to X38.3
	X37.4	I/O_1	dig. I/O, configurable, can be used as probe
	X37.5	PE	For cable shield
 DA000197v01_nn.FH11	X38.1	U_{ext}	External supply 19 … 30 V, max. 1 A, connected to X37.1
	X38.2	I/O_4	dig. I/O, configurable
	X38.3	0 V_{ext}	Reference potential; external supply, connected to X37.3
	X38.4	I/O_2	dig. I/O, configurable, can be used as probe
	X38.5	PE	For cable shield

M12 (5-pin, A-coded) female	Unit	min.	max.
Connection cable, stranded wire	mm^2	0.25	0.25
Cable cross section	AWG	-	-
Ready-made connection cable		RKS0010 (optional accessory)	

Tab. 6-18: Function, pin assignment, properties

The digital inputs/outputs comply with IEC 61131-2, type 1.

Properties

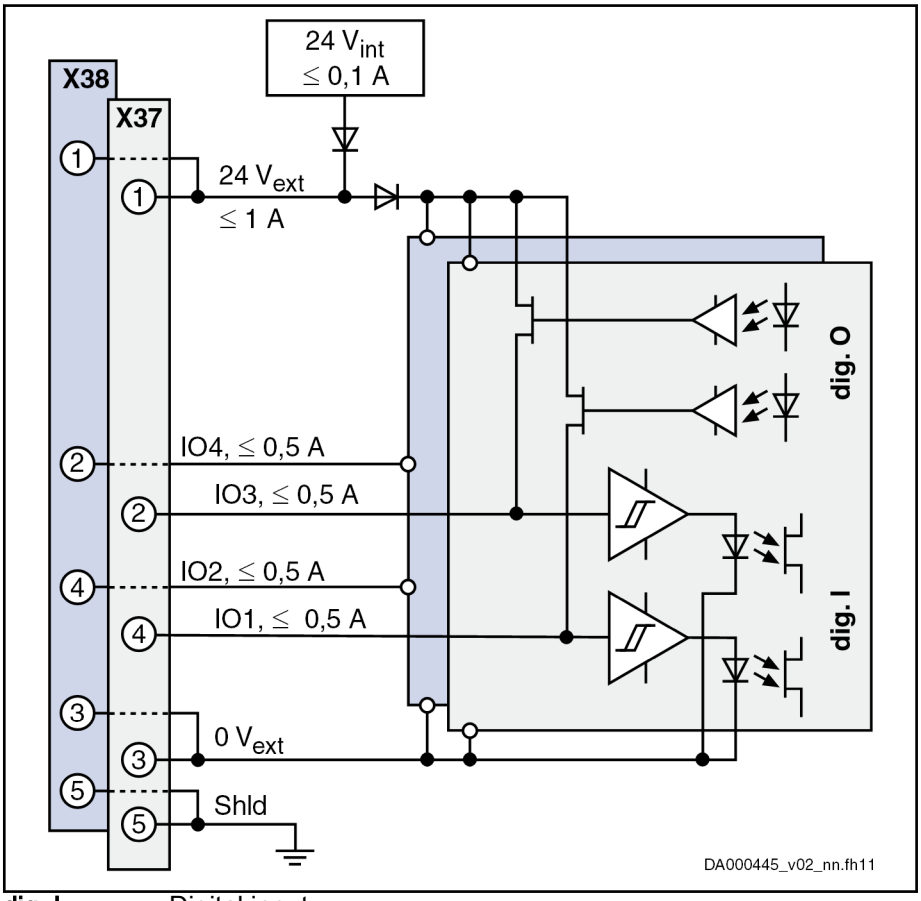
- There is a total of **4 configurable**, **isolated inputs/outputs** which are distributed over two 5-pin M12 connectors (X37 and X38).

  The configuration is carried out with the parameter "P-0-0300, Digital I/Os, assignment list".
- The inputs **I_1** (X37.4) and **I_2** (X38.4) can be used as **probe inputs**.

- The outputs and U_{ext} are internally supplied with **isolated 24 V** (±20%). This allows sensors to be directly (without any additional external 24 V supply) connected to KSM/KMS, if their total current consumption (X37 and X38) is smaller than 100 mA.

  If more current is required in total, 24 V has to be supplied externally in addition, via connections X38.1 or X37.1 (U_{ext}).
- Each of the **short-circuit proof** outputs can be loaded with 0.5 A. In total, a maximum of 1 A is possible.
- In the condition as supplied, there is an **O-ring** at the root of the thread between the female connector insert and the electronics housing which assures the tightness of the M12 female connectors. Neither the protective cap nor the connector is tight without this O-ring!

Internal design



dig. I Digital input
dig. O Digital output
24 V_{int} Voltage from internal power supply
24 V_{ext} Voltage from external power supply
Shld Shield

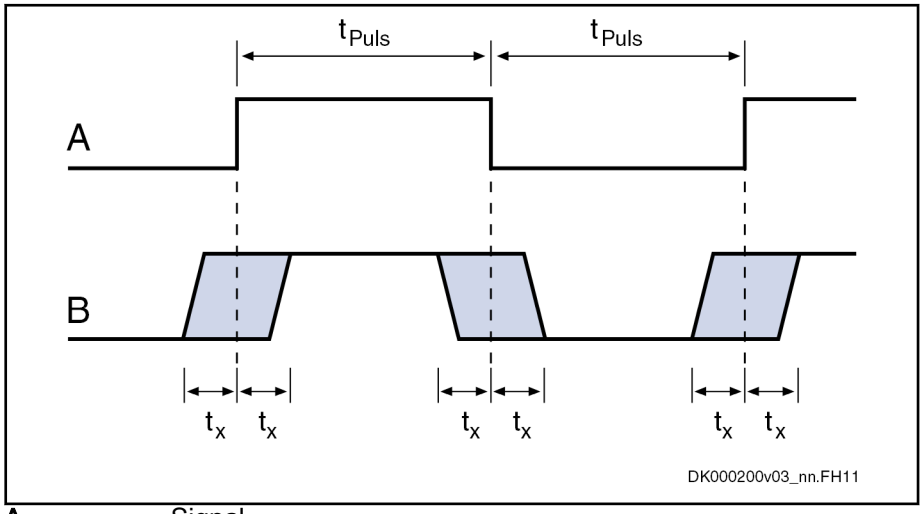
Fig. 6-4: Internal design of the digital inputs and digital outputs

Data: Inputs

Data	Unit	min.	typ.	max.
Allowed input voltage	V	-3		30
On	V	15		
Off	V			5
Input current	mA	2		15
Input resistance	kΩ	6.3		
Sampling frequency	kHz	Depending on firmware		
Delay time	µs	20		100 + 1 cycle time of position control
Pulse width t_{pulse} (probe)	µs	4		
Measuring accuracy t_x (probe)	µs			1

Tab. 6-19: Digital inputs

Probe input



A Signal
B Signal detection at probe input
t_{Puls} Pulse width
t_x Measuring accuracy of the signal edges

Fig. 6-5: Signal detection at probe input

Probe inputs are inputs used to acquire fast digital input signals. For control use **bounce-free** switching elements (e.g., electronic switches) to avoid incorrect evaluation.

External power supply

At the pins 1 and 3 of the connectors X37 and X38, you can connect an external 24 V power supply to increase the maximum output current of the digital outputs. The external 24 V supply has to comply with a voltage tolerance of ±20%.

Data: Outputs

Data	Unit	min.	typ.	max.
Output voltage ON (**with** external supply)	V	U_{ext} - 0.5	24	U_{ext}
Output voltage ON (**without** external supply)	V	19.2	21	28.8
Output voltage OFF	V	n.s.	n.s.	2.1
Output current OFF	mA	n.s.	n.s.	0.05
Allowed output current per output (**with** external supply)	mA	n.s.	n.s.	500
Allowed output current total or per group (**with** external supply)	mA	n.s.	n.s.	1000
Allowed output current per output (**without** external supply)	mA	n.s.	n.s.	100
Allowed output current total or per group (**without** external supply)	mA	n.s.	n.s.	100
Update interval	ns	Depending on firmware		
Short circuit protection		Present		
Overload protection		Present		
Allowed energy content of connected inductive loads, e.g. relay coils; only allowed as single pulse	mJ	n.s.	n.s.	400

Tab. 6-20: Digital outputs

The digital outputs have been realized with high-side switches. This means that these outputs only can actively supply current.

The energy absorption capacity of the outputs is used to limit voltage peaks caused when inductive loads are switched off. Limit voltage peaks by using free-wheeling diodes directly at the relay coil.

6.3.3 X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point

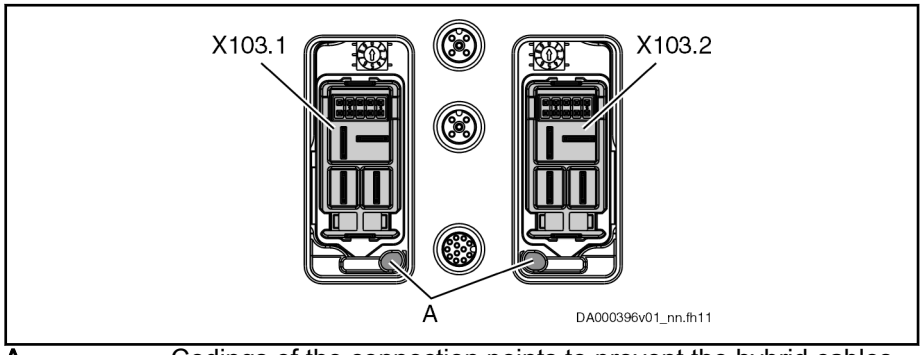
⚠ WARNING **High electrical voltage! Danger to life by electric shock!**

Do not remove connectors when the component has been powered. Do not plug in connectors when the component has been powered.

Wait at least 30 minutes after switching off the supply voltages to allow discharging.

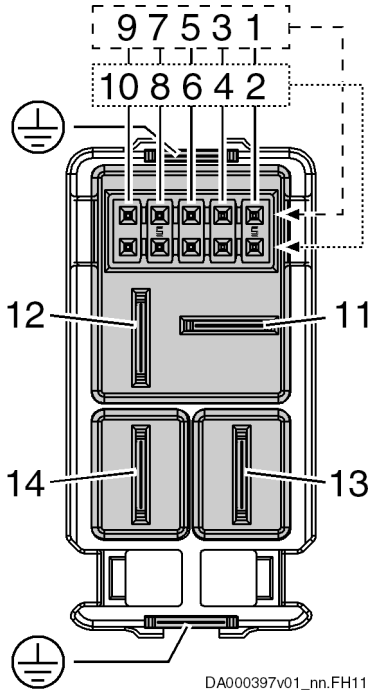
NOTICE **Risk of damage from frequently plugging in the hybrid cable.**

Allowed number of **plugging cycles: ≤ 50**



A Codings of the connection points to prevent the hybrid cables from being incorrectly connected

Fig. 6-6: X103.1 and X103.2

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	⏚	PE	Equipment grounding conductor
	14	L-	Power supply, DC 750 V, 25 A
	13	L+	
	12	0V	42 V supply, max. 15 A
	11	42V	
	10	Ext_SI_Ch1_In (X103.1) Ext_SI_Ch1 (X103.2)	Control signals (24 V)
	9	Ext_GND_In (X103.1) Ext_GND (X103.2)	
	8	Ext_SI_Ch2_In (X103.1) Ext_SI_Ch2 (X103.2)	
	7	bModulbus	
	6	bE_Stop_In (X103.1) bE_Stop_Out (X103.2)	
	5	Shield	Multi-Ethernet
	4	RxD-	
	3	TxD-	
	2	TxD+	
	1	RxD+	
Contact design	Pins at device		

Tab. 6-21: Function, pin assignment, properties

Installation instructions

- Exclusively operate KSM02/KMS02/KMS03 at a KCU02 or KMV03 or HCS01.1E-W0054 + HAS05.1-023.
- Always connect the hybrid cable of KCU02 to the connection point **X103.1** of the **first** KSM02/KMS02 of a drive line.
- Hybrid cables contain power lines and control lines. Always route hybrid cables in such a way that the hybrid cables are protected against external damage (in accordance with EN 61800-5-1 and EN 61800-5-2).

Notes on operation

- Do not remove connectors when the component has been powered. Do not plug in connectors when the component has been powered.
- Avoid removing and plugging in the hybrid cable unless it is necessary. Allowed number of plugging cycles: ≤ 50

6.3.4 X107, programming module

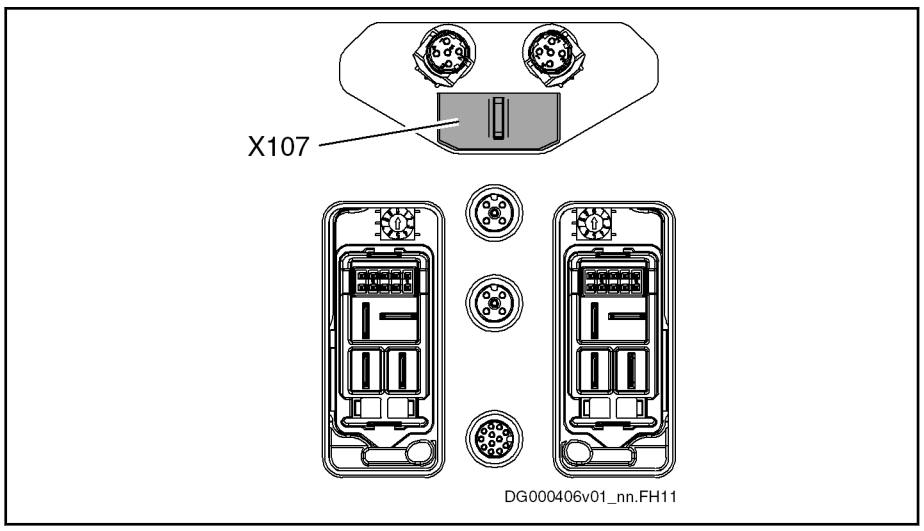


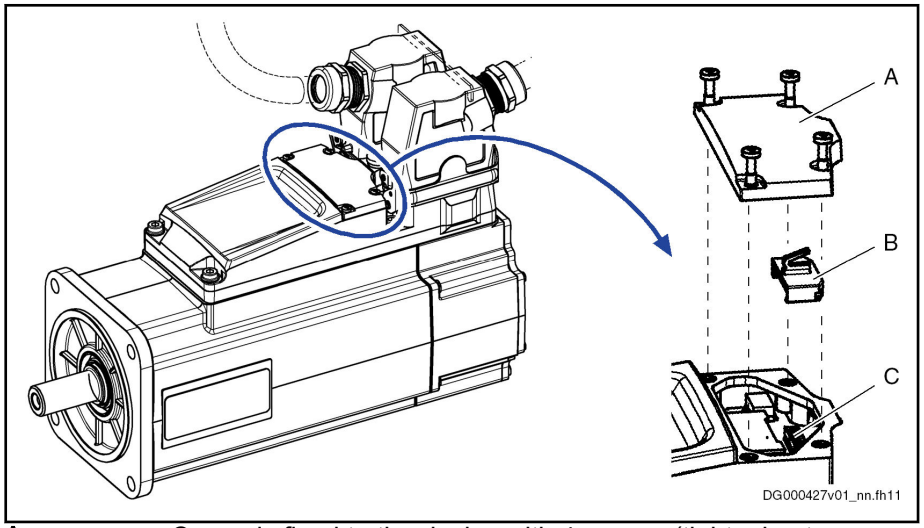
Fig. 6-7: Programming module at X107

X107 is the connection point of the PFM03.1 programming module. The programming module contains the firmware and parameter memory. It is not possible to operate the device without the programming module.

NOTICE **Risk of damage by plugging or removing the programming module!**

Neither plug nor remove the programming module when voltage has been applied.

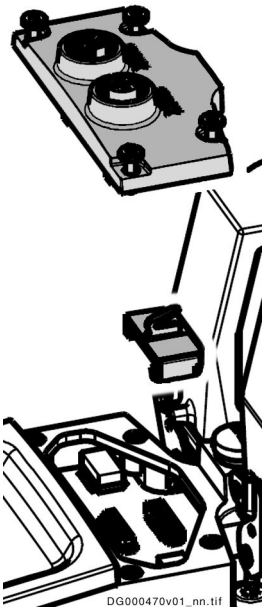
Clean the device housing before removing the programming module cover. Make sure that neither dirt nor moisture penetrate the housing.



A Cover; is fixed to the device with 4 screws (tightening torque: 1 Nm)
B Programming module
C X107

Fig. 6-8: Removing the programming module

Devices with communication output coupling



Information for devices with connection points for communication (e.g., X108/X109 or X118/X119)

- The cover may only be removed from the housing in vertical upward direction and placed onto the housing in vertical downward direction.

  Never rotate the cover while placing it back onto the housing and tightening the screws. Otherwise, the plug-in connections might be damaged.
- At the bottom of the cover with the connection points there is a circuit board.

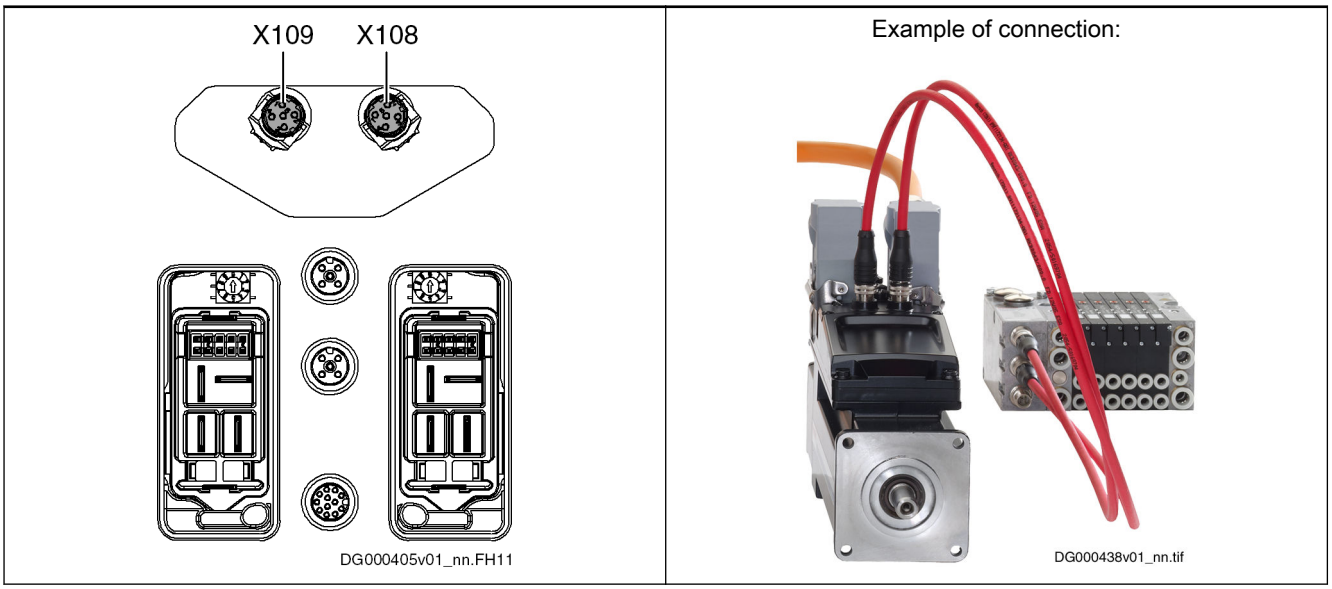
  Always leave this circuit board at its place. Otherwise, the seals (O-rings) might fall out of the cover.
- Before placing the cover back onto the housing and tightening the screws:

  Ensure that the circuit board with the connection points is still correctly plugged in under the cover.

Tab. 6-22: Cover with connection points

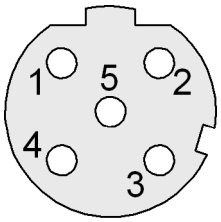
6.3.5 X108, X109, communication output coupling

The optional connection point X108/X109 is an additional Multi-Ethernet interface used to connect components with Ethernet-based communication (Sercos, PROFINET IO, EtherNet/IP, EtherCAT, POWERLINK) in distributed form.



Tab. 6-23: Communication output coupling

X108, X109

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000403v02_nn.FH11	1	Tx+	Transmit, Differential Output A
	2	Rx+	Receive, Differential Input A
	3	Tx-	Transmit, Differential Output B
	4	Rx-	Receive, Differential Input B
	5	Shield	Shield connection (Only use shielded cables for which the shield has been connected to ground over the largest possible surface area via the housing.)
Female connector M12 (5-pin, D-coded)			
Ready-made connection cable	• RKB0043 (M12 → M12) • RKB0044 (M12 → RJ-45)		

Tab. 6-24: X108, X109; function, pin assignment, properties

Do not use angled connectors at the connection points.

Unused output coupling

If you do not use the communication output coupling, connect X108 and X109 to the RKB0043 cable. Otherwise, the communication in the drive line is interrupted. The HAS10.1-001-002-NN accessory is used to fasten the cable to the device.

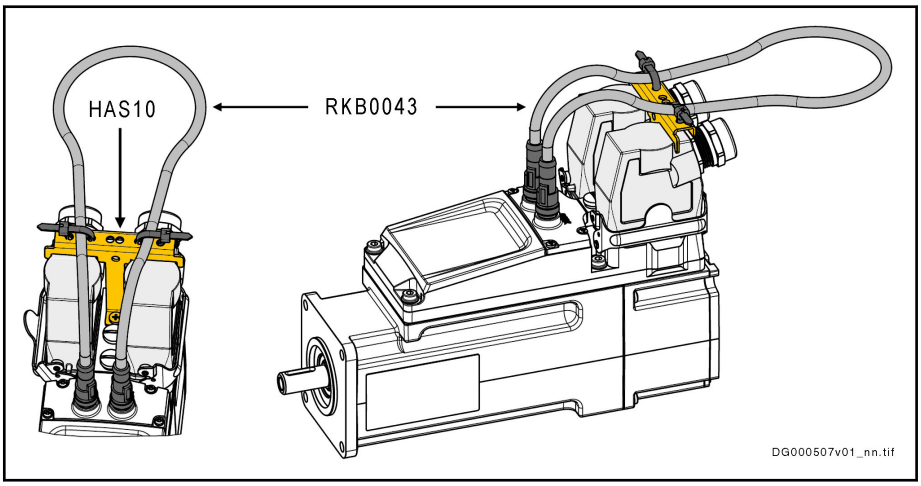
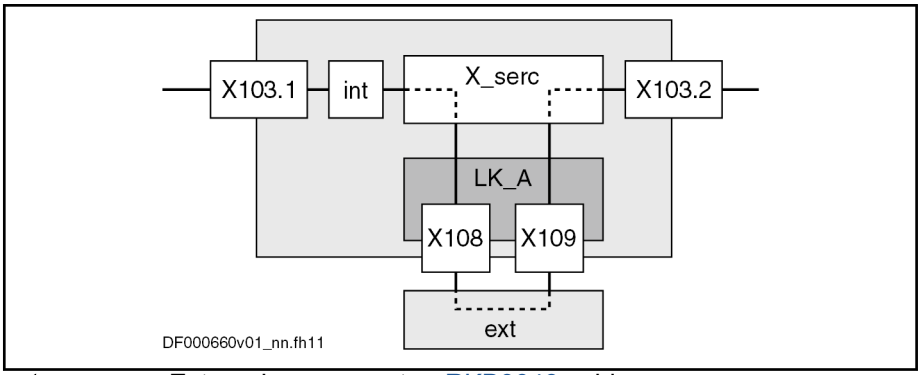


Fig. 6-9: Cable for unused output coupling

Principle of output coupling

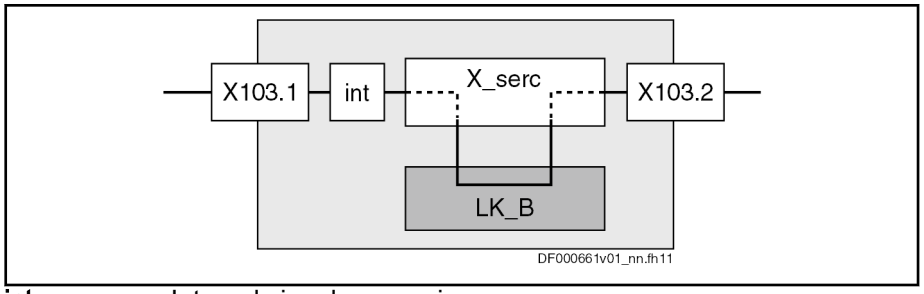
In the case of devices with communication output coupling, the communication signals are transmitted to the connection points X108 and X109 via a circuit board (see figure: LK_A). If neither a component nor the RKB0043 cable has been connected to X108 and X109, the communication in the drive line is interrupted.



ext External component or RKB0043 cable
int Internal signal processing
LK_A Internal circuit board for communication output coupling
X_serc Internal communication interface

Fig. 6-10: Devices with communication output coupling

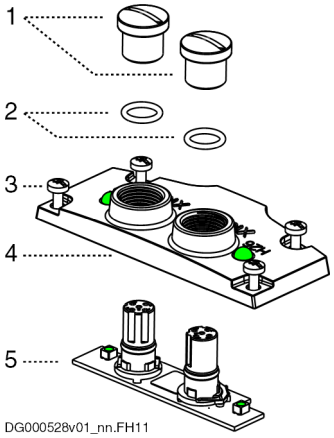
In the case of devices without communication output coupling, the communication signals are directly transmitted via a circuit board (see figure: LK_B).



int Internal signal processing
LK_B Internal circuit board for transmitting the communication signals
X_serc Internal communication interface

Fig. 6-11: Devices without communication output coupling

Parts

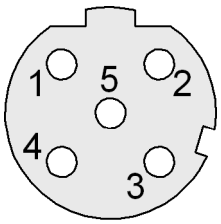
Parts	Description
	To replace the programming module (see X107), the cover with the connection points X108 and X109 has to be removed. At the bottom of the cover (4) there is a circuit board (5). **Always leave the circuit board (5) at its place.** Otherwise, the seals (2) might fall out of the cover (4). The figure shows how the parts are correctly arranged, in case you have to reassemble the parts. 1. Protective caps (2×) 2. Seals (O-rings; 2×) 3. Screws (4×; the screws are locked and cannot fall out of the cover) 4. Cover 5. Circuit board

Tab. 6-25: Parts

6.3.6 X118, X119, external communication

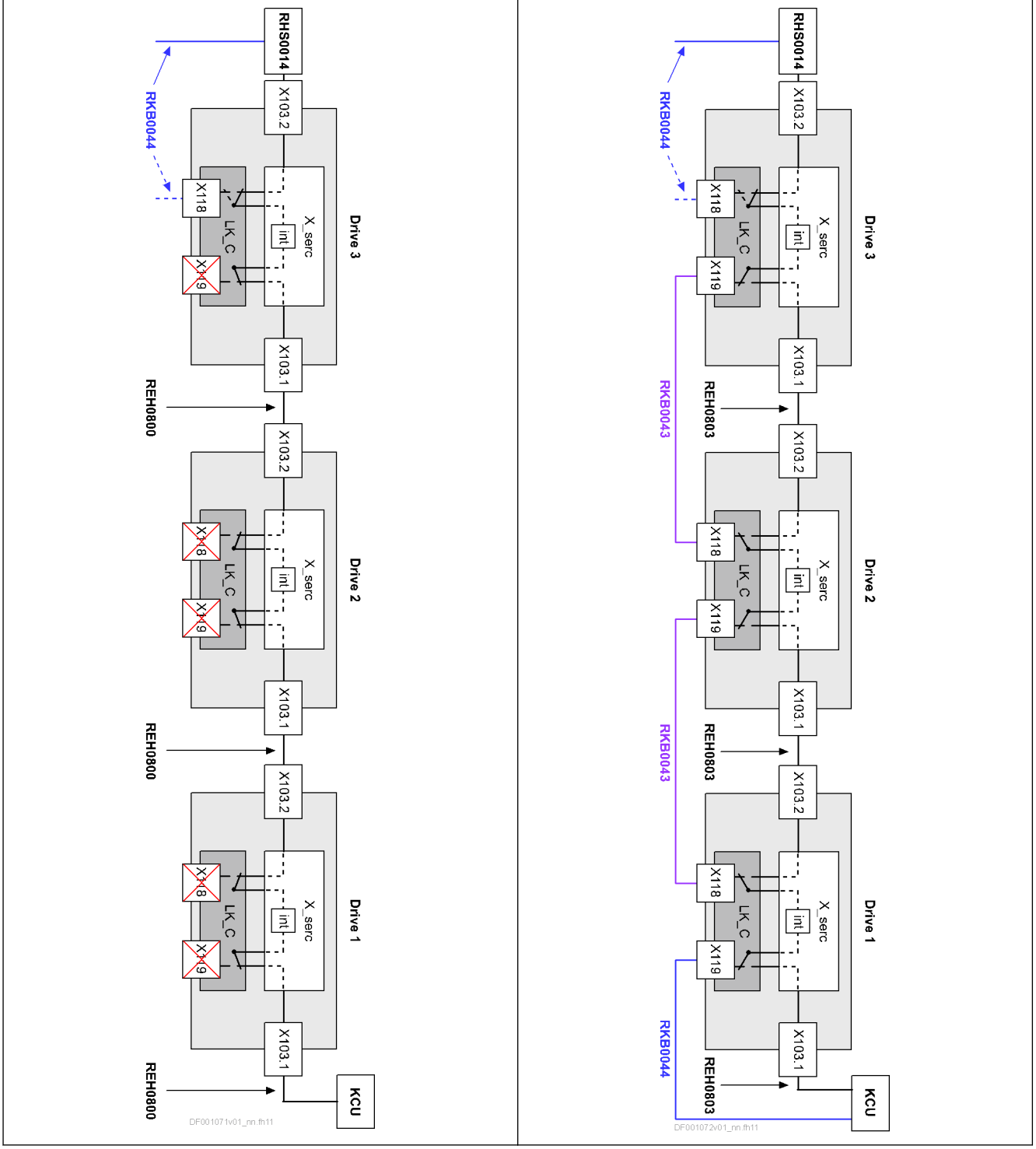
The optional connection point X118/X119 is a Multi-Ethernet interface used to connect components with Ethernet-based communication (Sercos, PROFINET IO, EtherNet/IP, EtherCAT, POWERLINK) in distributed form.

X118, X119

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000403v02_nn.FH11	1	Tx+	Transmit, Differential Output A
	2	Rx+	Receive, Differential Input A
	3	Tx-	Transmit, Differential Output B
	4	Rx-	Receive, Differential Input B
	5	Shield	Shield connection (Only use shielded cables for which the shield has been connected to ground over the largest possible surface area via the housing.)
Female connector M12 (5-pin, D-coded)			
Ready-made connection cable	• RKB0043 (M12 → M12) • RKB0044 (M12 → RJ-45)		

Tab. 6-26: X118, X119; function, pin assignment, properties

System with hybrid cable incl. communication (REH0800)	System with hybrid cable without communication (REH0803)



REH0800 Hybrid cable incl. communication: The external communication signal is input via the RKB0044 connection cable at the RHS0014 terminal connector or at connection point X118 (X119 cannot be used), and it is transmitted to KCU via the hybrid cable. The unused connection points X118 and X119 are deactivated.

REH0803	Hybrid cable without communication: The external communication signal is input via the RKB0044 connection cable at the RHS0014 terminal connector or at connection point X118 (alternative: X119), and it is transmitted to KCU via the RKB0043 and RKB0044 connection cables.
RKB0043	Connection cable (M12 → M12)
RKB0044	Connection cable (M12 → RJ-45)
RHS0014	Terminal connector
int	Internal signal processing
LK_C	Internal circuit board for communication
X_serc	Internal communication interface

Tab. 6-27: Connection

6.3.7 X141, safety technology and service input "release brake"

All distributed drives and supply units feature the connection point X141, independent of the device options installed.

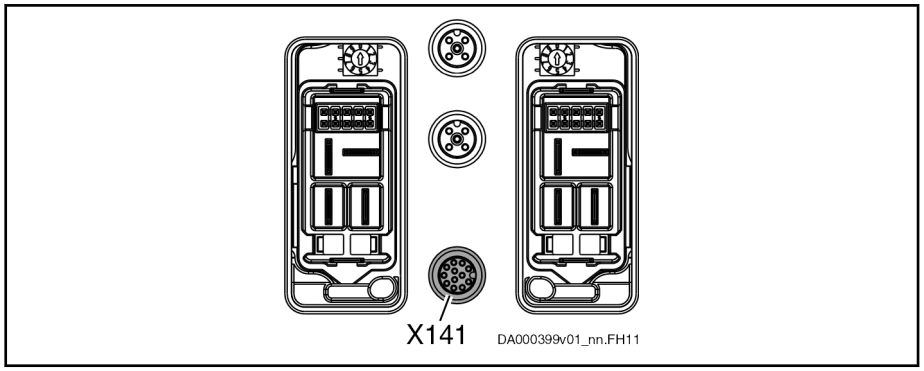


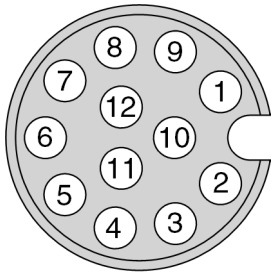
Fig. 6-12: X141

The function of the connection point differs according to the devices and device options:

- Distributed drive:
  - chapter "X141, safety technology Safe Torque Off" on page 180
  - chapter "X141, Safe Motion safety technology (S3, SD options)" on page 182
  - chapter "X141, without safety technology" on page 183
- Distributed supply unit:
  - chapter 6.6.5 "X141, safety technology (KMV03)" on page 207

X141, safety technology "Safe Torque Off"

☞ To operate a device with optional safety technology "Safe Torque Off", it has to be equipped at X141.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000400v01_nn.FH11 **Female connector M12 (12-pin, D-coded)**	1	SI_Ch1	Input for selection of channel 1 (connected to X103.2.10)
	2	SI_Ch2	Input for selection of channel 2 (connected to X103.2.8)
	3	Zone_Br	X141.3 has to be accordingly controlled for the desired function: • Safety zone beginner: Input not connected • Safety zone node: Short circuit to X141.11 (input voltage: 0 … 6 V) • "Release brake": Short circuit to X141.9 (input voltage: 24 V ±20%)
	4	24V	Dynamization outputs power supply
	5	SI_Ch1_In	Input for selection of channel 1, preceding axis (connected to X103.1.10)
	6	0V_In	0V selection, preceding axis (connected to X103.1.9)
	7	SI_Ch2_In	Input for selection of channel 2, preceding axis (connected to X103.1.8)
	8	Dyn_Ch1	Channel 1 dynamization output [1)]
	9	24V_ZBr	Internal interface only; 24 V for "release brake" function
	10	0V	Inputs and outputs power supply (connected to X103.2.9)
	11	GND_Zone	For "safety zone node" function
	12	Dyn_Ch2	Channel 2 dynamization output [1)]

Ready-made connection cable	RKB0033 If a KSM/KMS with optional safety technology is to be a safety zone beginner, X141 has to be equipped with the RKB0033 connection cable.
Connector for safety zone node	RBS0023 If a KSM/KMS with optional safety technology is to be a safety zone node within a safety zone, X141 has to be equipped with the RBS0023 connector. At X141, the connector RBS0023 jumpers the following connections: • 5 ↔ 1 • 7 ↔ 2 • 6 ↔ 10 • 11 ↔ 3

1) If the two outputs are used for different functions, short circuit between the two signal wirings has to be excluded.

Tab. 6-28: Function, pin assignment, properties

Technical data

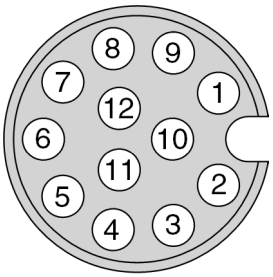
Function	Signal	Connection	Technical data
Channel 1 selection	SI_Ch1	1	chapter 14.1.2 "Digital inputs (safety technology L options)" on page 385
Channel 2 selection	SI_Ch2	2	
Channel 1 dynamization output	Dyn_Ch1	8	chapter 14.2.1 "Digital outputs (safety technology L options)" on page 387
Channel 2 dynamization output	Dyn_Ch2	12	
Power supply of **isolated** inputs and outputs	+24V	4	DC 19.2 … 30 V max. 700 mA
	0V	10	

Tab. 6-29: Technical data

X141, "Safe Motion" safety technology (S3, SD options)

Devices with safety technology "Safe Motion" cannot be operated in a "Safe Torque Off" safety zone.

For any "mixed operation", drives with safety technology "Safe Motion" in the drive line have to be connected behind the safety zones. The RBS0023 safety zone connector should not be used.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000400v01_nn.FH11 **Female connector M12 (12-pin, D-coded)**	1	SI_In_Ch1	Input 1
	2	SI_In_Ch2	Input 2
	3	Zone_Br	X141.3 has to be accordingly controlled for the desired function: • "Release brake": Short circuit to X141.9 (input voltage: 24 V ±20%)
	4	+24V	Power supply of the inputs and outputs
	5	SI_In_Ch1_Zone	Input 1 from preceding axis
	6	0V_Zone	0 V from preceding axis
	7	SI_In_Ch2_Zone	Input 2 from preceding axis
	8	SI_Out_Ch1	Safe output channel 1
	9	24V_Br	Internal interface only; 24 V for "release brake" function
	10	0V	Power supply of the inputs and outputs
	11	GND	GND for "zone detection" function
	12	SI_Out_Ch2	Safe output channel 2
Ready-made connection cable	RKB0033 Can be used for processing of the inputs and controlling of the outputs. Can be used for "releasing the brake".		

Tab. 6-30: Function, pin assignment, properties

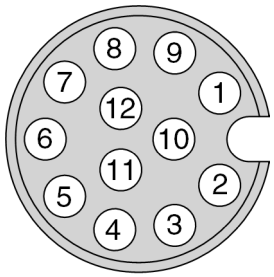
Technical data

chapter 14.1.3 "Digital inputs (safety technology S options)" on page 386
chapter 14.2.2 "Digital outputs (safety technology S options)" on page 388

X141, without safety technology

Devices without safety technology can be operated within a safety zone, because the signals are transmitted to the next safety zone node via X103.1 and X103.2. The RBS0023 safety zone connector is not required.

There is no reaction to the signals of safety technology.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000400v01_nn.FH11 **Female connector M12 (12-pin, D-coded)**	1	n. c.	-
	2	n. c.	-
	3	Zone_Br	X141.3 has to be accordingly controlled for the desired function: • "Release brake": Short circuit to X141.9 (input voltage: 24 V ±20%)
	4	n. c.	-
	5	n. c.	-
	6	n.c.	-
	7	n. c.	-
	8	n. c.	-
	9	24V_Br	Internal interface only; 24 V for "release brake" function
	10	n.c.	-
	11	-	-
	12	n. c.	-
Ready-made connection cable	RKB0033 Can be used to "release brake".		

Tab. 6-31: Function, pin assignment, properties

6.3.8 Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor

Parts of the installation with attached KSM0x/KMS0x have to be connected to the equipment grounding system of the installation. The housings of KSM0x/KMS0x then are connected to the equipment grounding system of the installation via the flange. This connection is required in addition to the equipment grounding conductor in the hybrid cable, because the leakage current of a KSM0x/KMS0x servo drive is greater than 3.5 mA.

Additionally connect the KSM0x/KMS0x housing via a **second** equipment grounding conductor to the equipment grounding system of the installation, if KSM0x/KMS0x is attached to parts of the installation which

- have bad electroconductive properties

  or

- cannot be connected to the equipment grounding system of the installation.

⚠ WARNING **High housing voltage and high leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury from electric shock!**

Connect the **second connection point of equipment grounding conductor** at KSM0x/KMS0x to the equipment grounding system of the installation, if the electric resistance between the mechanical holder of the flange and the equipment grounding system of the installation is greater than **5 ohm**.

If you would like to measure the resistance, the following conditions previously must have been complied with:

- The installation has been switched off

  (This avoids parasitic leakage currents.)

- The hybrid cables have not been connected to the drive

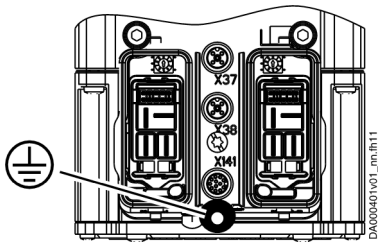
  (This disables the first equipment grounding connection via the hybrid cable.)

NOTICE **Risk of damage to the devices by spark discharge of static charges**

In some applications (e.g., printing or packaging), high static charges can develop. Make sure that these charges can be directly discharged against ground at their point of origin. Therefore, connect the second connection point of equipment grounding conductor of the devices to the equipment grounding system of the installation.

☞ The **first** equipment grounding conductor is routed via the hybrid cable from **X103.1 / X103.2 (KSM0x/KMS0x)** to the connection point **X54 (KCU02)** and connected to the equipment grounding system of the installation via KCU02.

Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor at housing

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	⏚	Equipment grounding conductor	Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor Is used to connect KSM0x/KMS0x to a grounded part of the installation, e.g. the machine base
Thread M5 (for ring cable lug)	**Unit**	**min.**	**max.**
Tightening torque	Nm	2.6	3.1
Cable cross section stranded wire	mm^2	2.5	-
	AWG	14	-

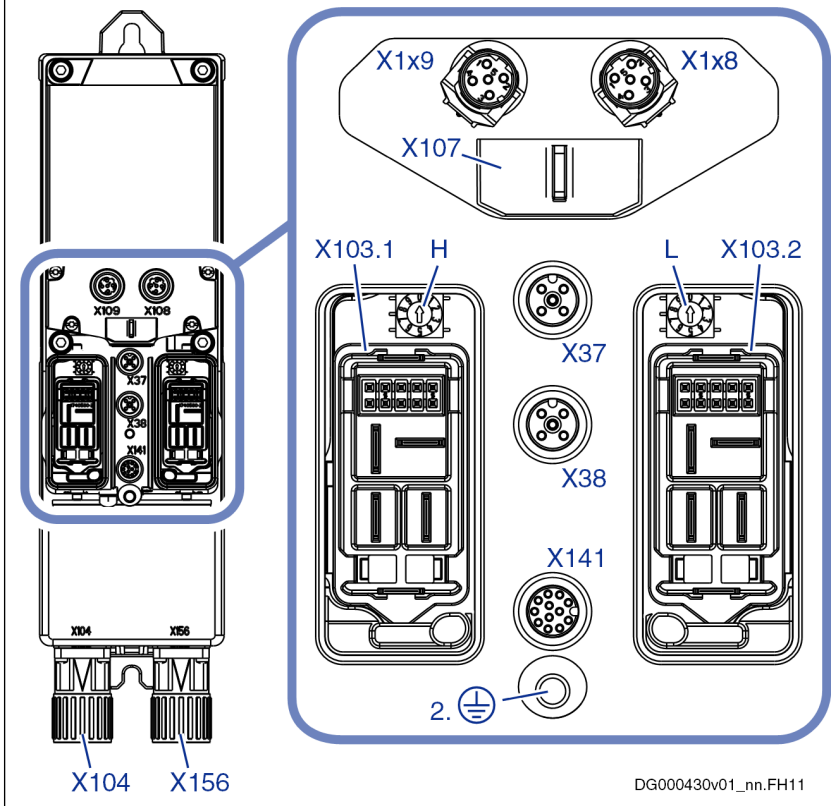
Tab. 6-32: Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor, properties

6.4 KMS02 connection points

6.4.1 Positions of the connection points

Use ready-made hybrid cables and terminal connectors by Rexroth for X103.1 and X103.2.

X107 (programming module) is only accessible after the cover has been removed.

Figure	Element	Significance
	H	Address selector switch (10×)
	L	Address selector switch (1×)
	X37 X38	Digital inputs/outputs
	X103.1 X103.2	Hybrid cable
	X104	Motor encoder Does not exist at KMS02.1B-xxxx-x-xx-xx-**ENA**-xx-xx-xx KMS02.1B-xxxx-x-xx-xx-xxx-xx-**WN/WT/WE**-xx: Angular connector
	X107	Programming module
	X1x8 X1x9	Communication (optional) • X108, X109: Communication output coupling • X118, X119: External communication
	X141	Safety technology (optional)
	X156	Motor KMS02.1B-xxxx-x-xx-xx-**ENA**-xx-xx-xx: Motor, motor encoder KMS02.1B-xxxx-x-xx-xx-xxx-xx-**WN/WT/WE**-xx: Angular connector
	2nd ⏚	Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor

Tab. 6-33: KMS02 connection points

6.4.2 X37, X38, digital inputs/outputs

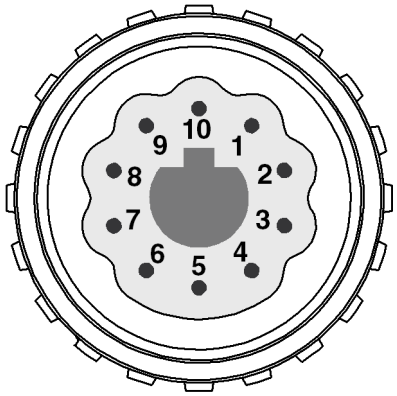
See description KSM02 (chapter 6.3.2 "X37, X38, digital inputs/outputs" on page 165).

6.4.3 X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point

See description KSM02 (chapter 6.3.3 "X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point" on page 169).

6.4.4 X104, motor encoder connection

Description For encoders with a supply voltage of **12 volt (max. 60 mA)**:
Sin-cos encoder 1 V_{pp}; HIPERFACE®
The connection only exists at devices with an ENH encoder interface.

View	Connection	Signal name S1, M1 (HIPERFACE®)	Function
 DA000417v01_nn.fh11	1	VCC_Encoder	Power supply
	2	GND_Encoder	Power supply reference potential
	3	A +	Track A positive; cos
	4	A -	Track A negative; refcos
	5	B +	Track B positive; sin
	6	B -	Track B negative; refsin
	7	EncData+	Data transmission
	8	EncData-	Data transmission
	9	n. c.	-
	10	n. c.	-
	Overall shield via connector housing		

10-pin, female connector	Unit	min.	max.
Connection cable, stranded wire	mm^2	n.s.	n.s.
Order type of cable	RKG4201		
Allowed length	m	n.s.	7.5

Tab. 6-34: X104, motor encoder

6.4.5 X107, programming module

See chapter 6.3.4 "X107, programming module" on page 171

6.4.6 X108, X109, communication output coupling

See chapter 6.3.5 "X108, X109, communication output coupling" on page 173

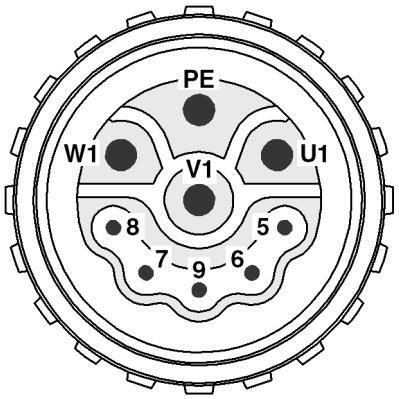
6.4.7 X118, X119, external communication

See chapter 6.3.6 "X118, X119, external communication" on page 176.

6.4.8 X141, safety technology

See chapter 6.3.7 "X141, safety technology and service input release brake" on page 179.

6.4.9 X156, motor connection

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000418v01_nn.fh11	U1, V1, W1	-	Power output
	PE	-	Equipment grounding conductor
	5	MotTemp+	Temperature measurement input
	6	MotTemp-	
	7	Br+ / +24V	Output for controlling the motor holding brake of the "applied without current" type
	8	Br- / 0V	
	9	GND_shld	Shield

9-pin, female connector	Unit	min.	max.
Output for controlling the motor holding brake (X156.7/8)			
Output current (A)	A	0.15 1)	1
Continuous power overvoltage protection (B)	W	n.s.	1.5
Energy absorption (B)	Ws	n.s.	3
Number of switching actions		Wear-free electronic contact	
Cable	RKL4305		
Allowed length	m	n.s.	7.5

1) With deactivated brake current monitoring: 0 A

Tab. 6-35: X156, motor

6.4.10 X156, motor/motor encoder connection (single-cable connection)

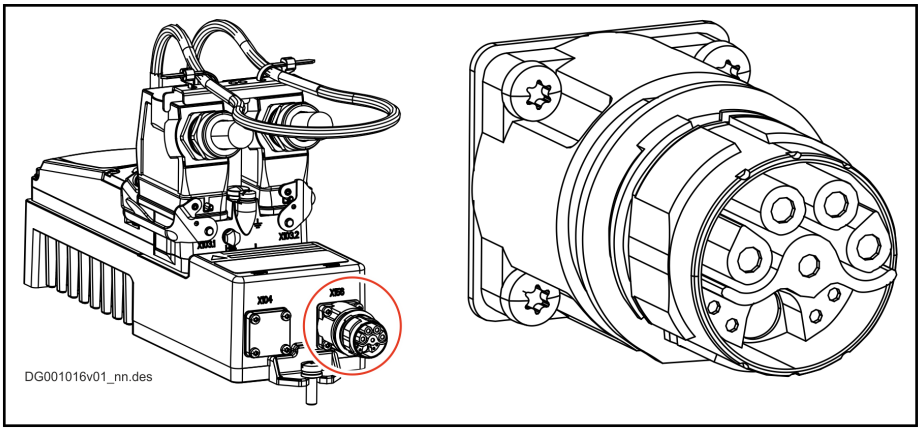
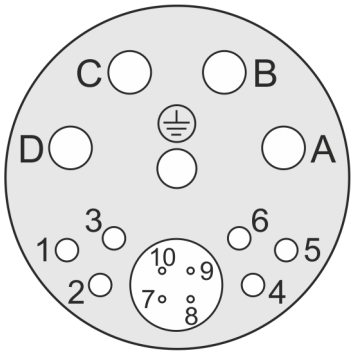


Fig. 6-13: X156 (single-cable connection)

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000687v01_nn.des	A	-	Power output U1
	B	-	Power output V1
	C	-	Power output W1
	D	-	-
	⏚	-	Equipment grounding conductor (PE)
	4	BD+	Output for controlling the motor holding brake of the "applied without current" type
	5	BD-	
	6	GND_shld	Shield (motor holding brake)
	7	VCC_Encoder	Power supply 12 V ±5%
	8	GND_Encoder	Power supply reference potential
	9	EncData-	Data transmission
	10	EncData+	Data transmission

15-pin, female connector	Unit	min.	max.
Output for controlling the motor holding brake (X156.4/5)			
Output current (A)	A	0.15 [1)]	1
Continuous power overvoltage protection (B)	W	n.s.	1.5
Energy absorption (B)	Ws	n.s.	3
Number of switching actions		Wear-free electronic contact	
Cable	RH2-020BB RH2-030DB		

Allowed length	m	n.s.	5
Allowed length for motors with revision index "CA" and above	m	n.s.	15

1) With deactivated brake current monitoring: 0 A

Tab. 6-36: X156, motor/motor encoder (single-cable connection)

6.4.11 Second equipment grounding conductor connection point

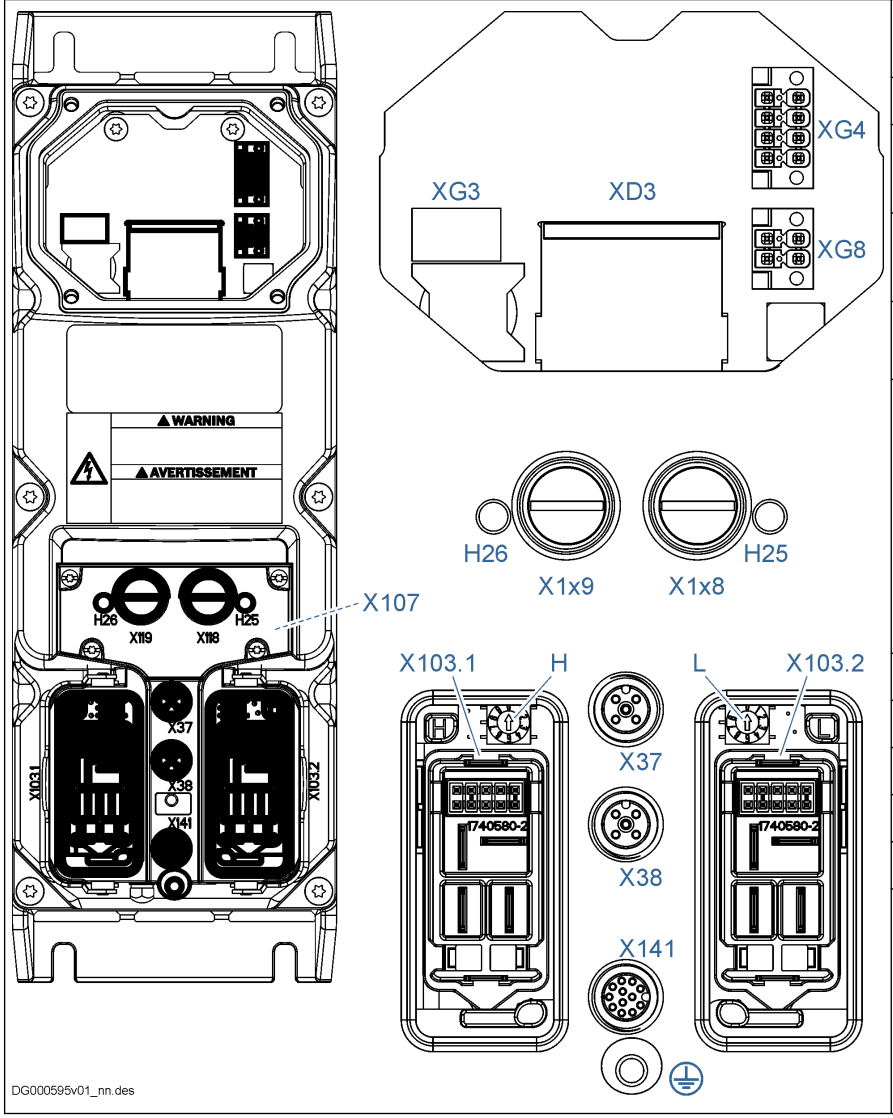
See chapter 6.3.8 "Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor" on page 184

6.5 KMS03 connection points

6.5.1 Positions of the connection points

Use ready-made hybrid cables and terminal connectors by Rexroth for X103.1 and X103.2.

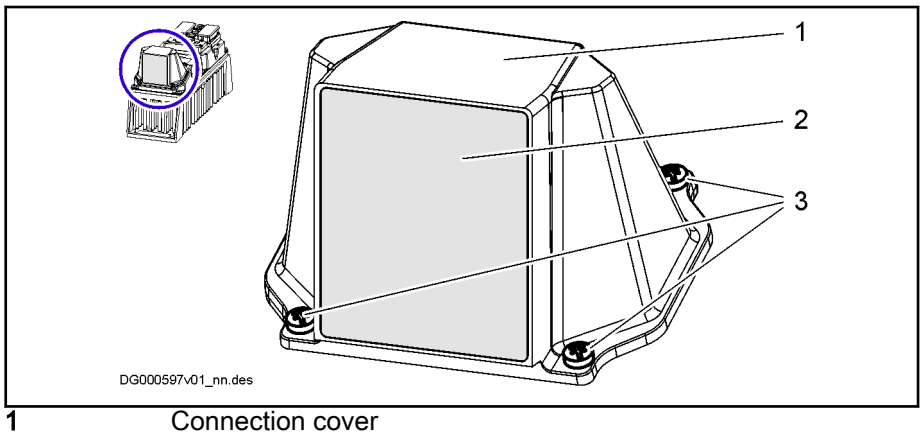
X107 (programming module) is only accessible after the cover has been removed.

Figure	Element	Significance
	H	Address selector switch (10×)
	L	Address selector switch (1×)
	X37 X38	Digital inputs/outputs
	X103.1 X103.2	Hybrid cable
	X107	Programming module (underneath the cover)
	X1x8 X1x9	Communication (optional) • X108, X109: Communication output coupling • X118, X119: External communication
	X141	Safety technology (optional)
	XD3	Motor
	XG3	Brake/temperature
	XG4	Motor encoder, digital
	XG8	Motor encoder, analog
	⏚	Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor

Tab. 6-37: KMS03 connection points

6.5.2 Motor cable and encoder cable connection

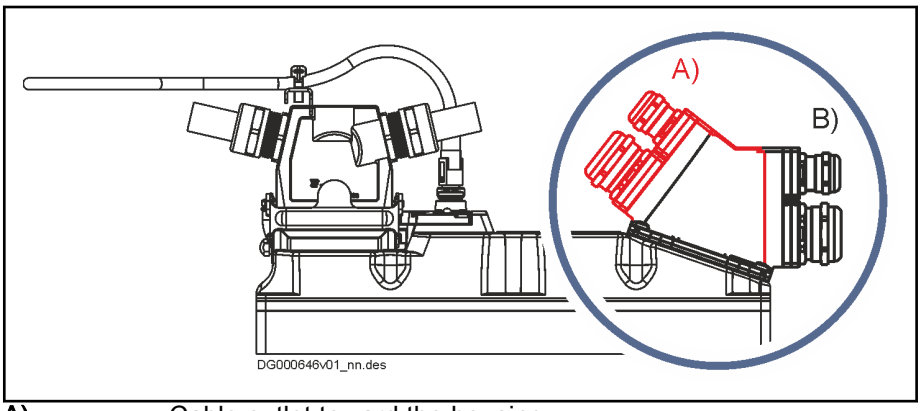
Condition as supplied



1 Connection cover
2 Protective covering
3 Screws (M4, 2.5 Nm)

Fig. 6-14: Connection cover with protective covering

Connection cover: Mounting options



A) Cable outlet toward the housing
B) Cable outlet away from the housing

Fig. 6-15: Connection cover: Mounting options

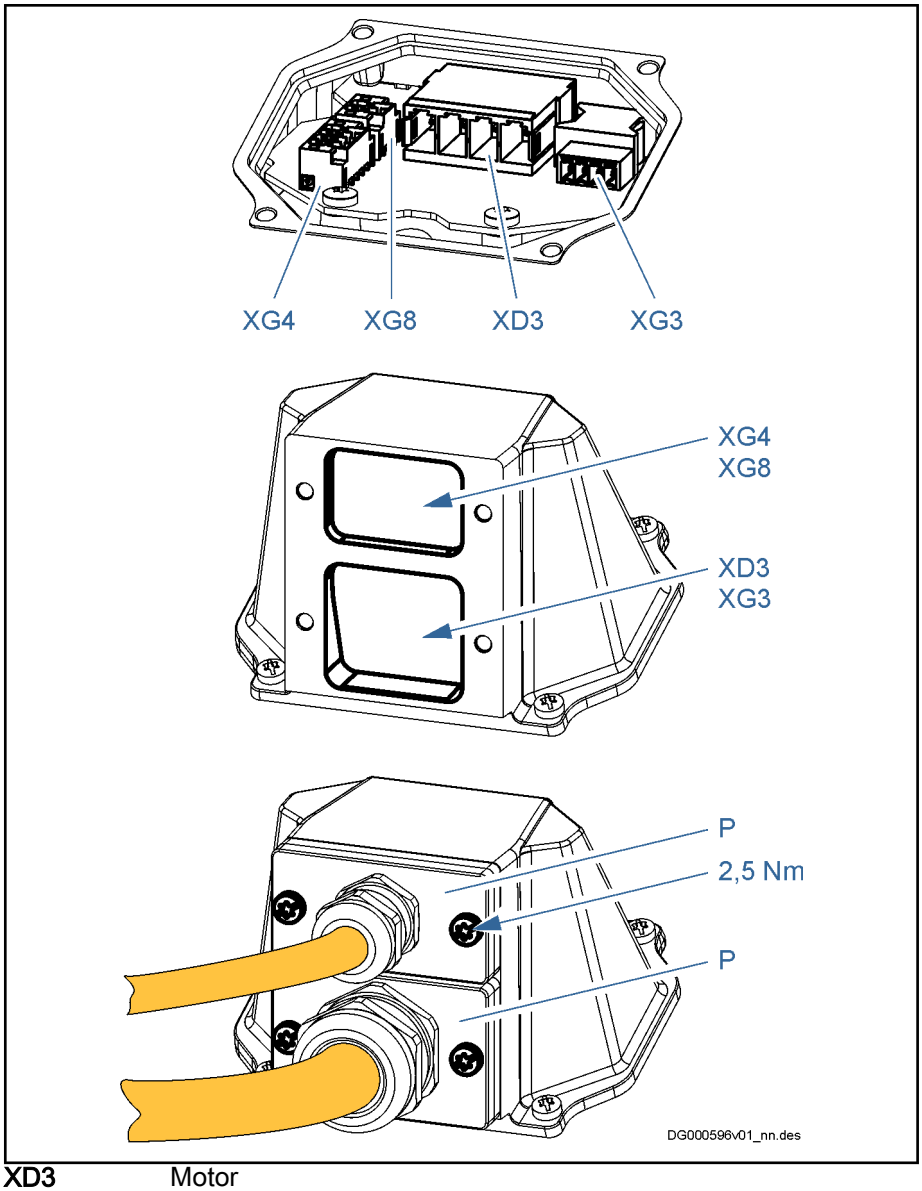
Two-piece connection cover

See chapter 14.3 "Two-piece connection cover" on page 390.

Connecting the cables

1. Take off connection cover and remove protective covering
2. Put motor power cable connector (RLS0725) through big opening and plug connector (XD3, XG3) into device.

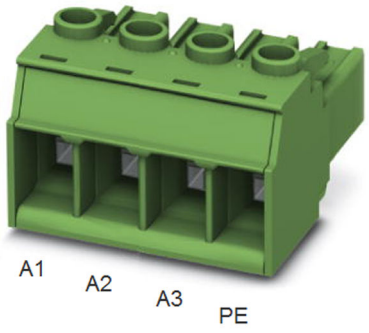
   (RHS0725 additionally contains the connector for digital motor encoders (XG4). With RHS0725 it is not required to connect the separate encoder cable and the HAS05.1-018 dummy cover is put on the connection cover.)
3. Screw on cable plate at connection cover with 2.5 Nm.
4. Put encoder cable connector (RGS0725) through small opening and plug connector (XG4, XG8) into device.
5. Screw on cable plate at connection cover with 2.5 Nm.
6. Screw on connection cover with 2.5 Nm.



XD3	Motor
XG3	Brake/temperature
XG4	Motor encoder, digital
XG8	Motor encoder, analog
P	Cable plate

Fig. 6-16: Motor cable and encoder cable

6.5.3 XD3, motor connection

View	Connection	Function
	A1	For power connection U1 at motor
	A2	For power connection V1 at motor
	A3	For power connection W1 at motor
	PE	For equipment grounding conductor of motor

Tab. 6-38: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	0.2	6
	AWG	24	10
Stripped length	mm	10	
Tightening torque	Nm	0.5	0.8

Tab. 6-39: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Rated voltage	V	1000	
Nominal current	A	41	

Tab. 6-40: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	See description of connectors: RLS0725 RHS0725
Maximum allowed length	7.5 m (Maximum allowed length of **all** motor cables when using KNK03/KMV03: 50 m)

Tab. 6-41: Cable

6.5.4 XG3, motor temperature monitoring and motor holding brake

⚠ WARNING **Dangerous movements! Danger to persons from falling or dropping axes!**

The standard motor holding brake provided or an external motor holding brake controlled directly by the drive controller are not sufficient on their own to guarantee personal safety!

Personal safety must be achieved using higher-level, fail-safe measures:

- Block off danger zones with safety fences or safety guards
- Additionally secure vertical axes against falling or dropping after switching off the motor power by, for example,
  - mechanically securing the vertical axes
  - adding external braking/arrester/clamping mechanisms
  - ensuring sufficient equilibration of the vertical axes

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V!**

The input of the motor temperature evaluation is **not** galvanically isolated from the housing. Excess voltage at the input (e.g., by the motor winding voltage flashing over) can get to the housing. Make sure that the temperature sensor of the connected motor is **double-**insulated from the motor winding.

NOTICE **Risk of damage to device from excess voltage at motor temperature evaluation input!**

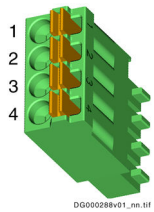
Only the allowed control voltage for the device is allowed at the motor temperature evaluation input. Excess voltage at the input can damage the device.

Function

Connection point XG3 contains the connections for

- Monitoring the motor temperature
- Controlling the motor holding brake

☞ Via an integrated contact element (BR), the power section switches the voltage of the **external** 24 V supply to the output for controlling the motor holding brake.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	1	MotTemp+	Motor temperature evaluation input
	2	MotTemp-	
	3	+24VBr	Output for controlling the motor holding brake
	4	0VBr	

Tab. 6-42: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connection cable Stranded wire	mm^2	0.25	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Stripped length	mm	10	

Tab. 6-43: Mechanical data

Electrical data (output for controlling motor holding brake [XG3.3/4])

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Output current	A	0.15 [1)]	1.29
Overvoltage protection continuous power	W	n.s.	1.5
Energy absorption	Ws	n.s.	3

1) With deactivated brake current monitoring: 0 A

Tab. 6-44: Electrical data (output for controlling motor holding brake [XG3.3/4])

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	See description of connectors: RLS0725 RHS0725
Maximum allowed length	7.5 m

Tab. 6-45: Cables

Motor holding brake: Selection

Maximum current carrying capacity of XG3 outputs: 1.29 A

$\Rightarrow R_{br\ (min)} = U_{br\ (max)} / 1.29\ A$

$R_{br\ (min)}$: minimum allowed resistance of motor holding brake

$U_{br\ (max)}$: maximum supply voltage of motor holding brake

If $U_{br\ (max)}$ = 24 V +5% = 25.2 V, then:

$R_{br\ (min)}$ = 19.53 Ω (applies to all operating and ambient conditions)

Motor holding brake: Notes on installation

Make sure the **power supply** is sufficient for the motor holding brake at the motor. Observe that voltage drops on the supply line. Use connection lines with the largest possible cross section of single strands.

Use an **external contact element in accordance with the required safety category** if you wish to supply motor holding brakes with higher currents than the current load allowed at XG3. Make sure to comply with the required minimum current consumption of 100 mA when using an external contact element. Otherwise, the brake current monitor will signal an error.

Connection diagram

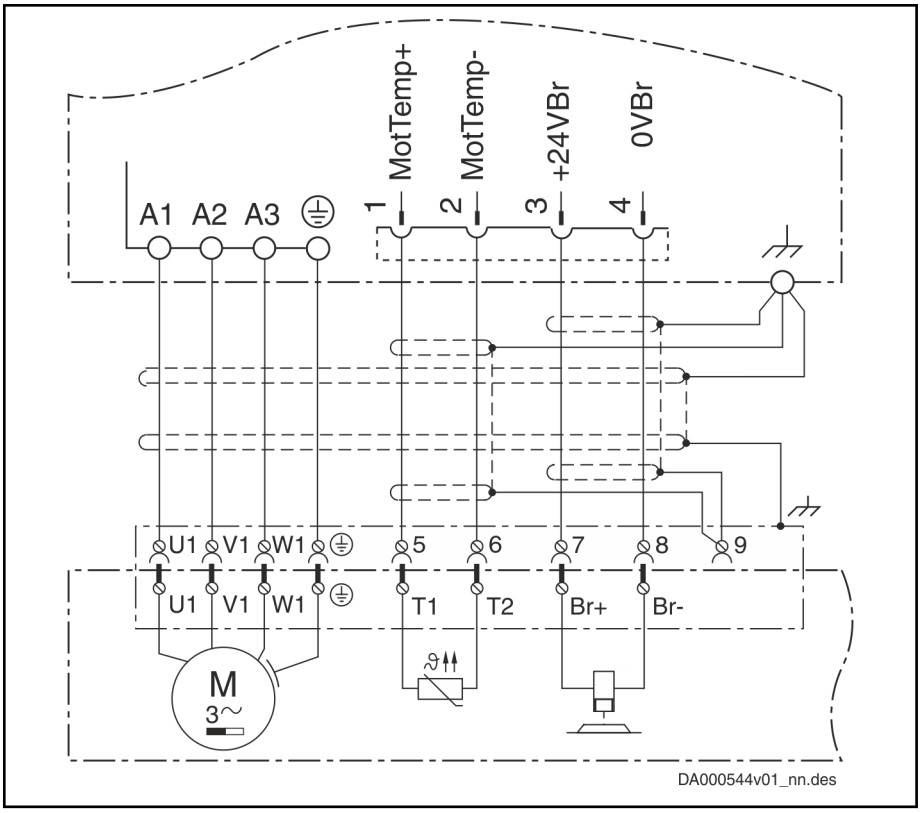


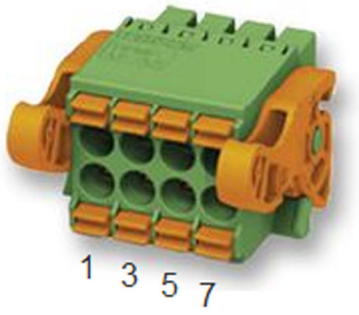
Fig. 6-17: Connection of motor temperature monitoring and motor holding brake

6.5.5 XG4, digital motor encoder connection

Description For encoders with a supply voltage of **5 volt (max. 300 mA)** or **12 volt (max. 60 mA)** and shielding:

- HIPERFACE®
- EnDat2.1
- EnDat2.2
- ACURO-Link
- MSM motor encoder
- SSI encoder
- BiSS C

Clock connections for EnDat2.1, EnDat2.2, SSI, BiSS C.

View	Connection	Signal name S1, M1 (HIPERFACE®)	Function
 DG000592v01_nn.tif	1	EncData+	RS485 data transmission positive
	2	EncData-	RS485 data transmission negative
	3	EncCLK+	RS485 clock positive
	4	EncCLK-	RS485 clock negative
	5	+5V	Encoder supply 5 V
	6	+12V	Encoder supply 12 V
	7	GND_Encoder	0V reference potential for power supplies
	8	GND_shld	Signal shields connection (inner shield)

Tab. 6-46: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Stripped length	mm	10	

Tab. 6-47: Mechanical data

Cable

Description	Value
Order type	See description of connectors: RGS0725 RHS0725
Maximum allowed length	7.5 m (Maximum allowed length of **all** encoder cables when using KNK03/ KMV03: 50 m)
Maximum allowed length for motors with revision index "CA" and above	15 m

Tab. 6-48: Cable

6.5.6 XG8, analog motor encoder connection

Description Connection for analog signals (sine and cosine signal only, no reference signal, no supply voltage):

- HIPERFACE®
- EnDat2.1
- 1Vpp
- Combined encoder for SSI

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DG000593v01_nn.tif	1	A+	max. 1.65 V_{pp} track A analog positive
	2	B+	max. 1.65 V_{pp} track B analog positive
	3	A-	max. 1.65 V_{pp} track A analog negative
	4	B-	max. 1.65 V_{pp} track B analog negative

Tab. 6-49: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	min.	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	0.2	1.5
	AWG	24	16
Stripped length	mm	10	

Tab. 6-50: Mechanical data

Cable

Description	Value
Order type	See description of connectors: RGS0725
Maximum allowed length	7.5 m (Maximum allowed length of **all** encoder cables when using KNK03/ KMV03: 50 m)

Tab. 6-51: Cable

6.5.7 X37, X38, digital inputs/outputs

See description KSM02 (chapter 6.3.2 "X37, X38, digital inputs/outputs" on page 165).

6.5.8 X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point

See description KSM02 (chapter 6.3.3 "X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point" on page 169).

6.5.9 X107, programming module

See chapter 6.3.4 "X107, programming module" on page 171.

6.5.10 X108, X109, communication output coupling

See chapter 6.3.5 "X108, X109, communication output coupling" on page 173.

6.5.11 X118, X119, external communication

See chapter 6.3.6 "X118, X119, external communication" on page 176.

6.5.12 X141, safety technology

See chapter 6.3.7 "X141, safety technology and service input release brake" on page 179.

6.5.13 X156, motor connection

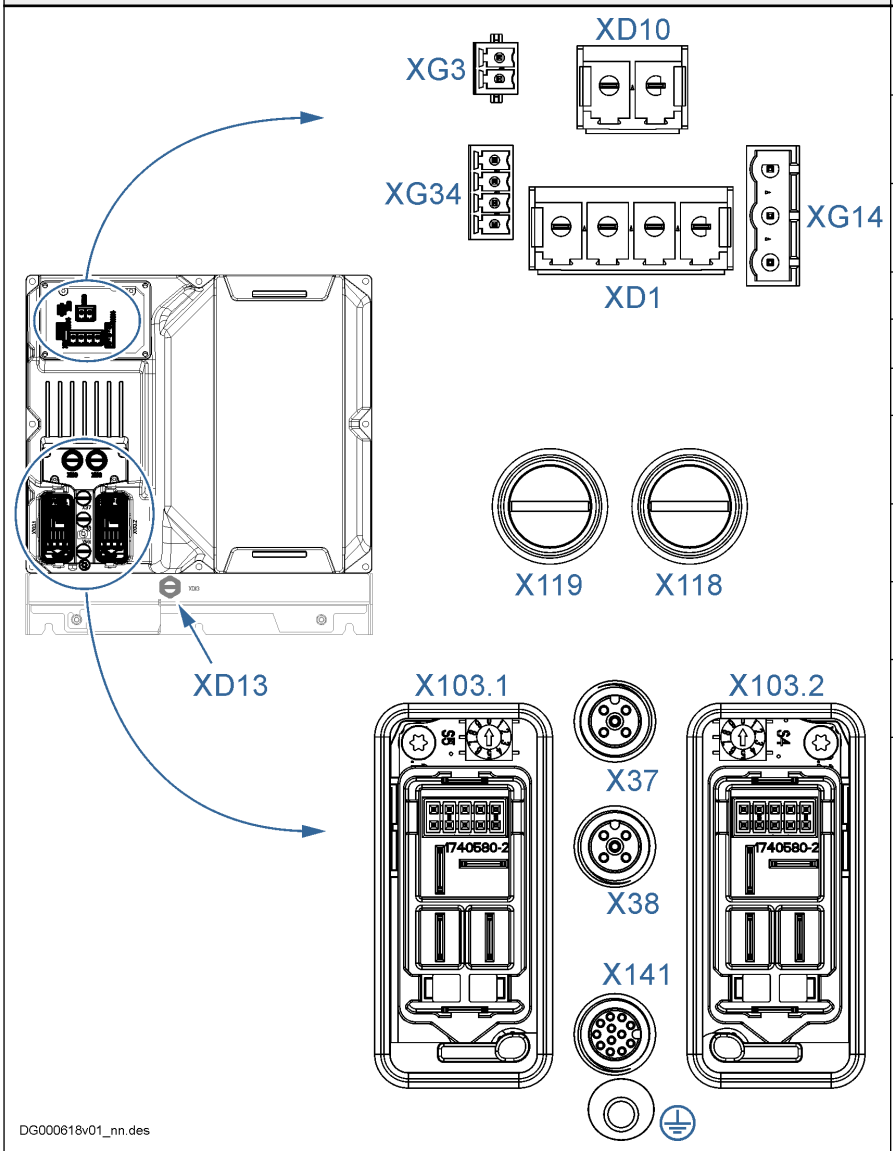
See chapter 6.4.10 "X156, motor/motor encoder connection (single-cable connection)" on page 190.

6.5.14 Second equipment grounding conductor connection point

See chapter 6.3.8 "Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor" on page 184.

6.6 KMV03 connection points

6.6.1 Positions of the connection points

Figure	Element	Significance
	X37 X38	Digital inputs/outputs
	X103.1 X103.2	Hybrid cable
	X118 X119	External communication
	X141	-
	XD1 [1]	Mains voltage
	XD10	Control voltage
	XD13 [3]	KMV03.1R-**W**xxxx: Fan
	XG3 [2]	Mains choke temperature contact
	XG14 [2]	Mains voltage synchronization
	XG34 [1]	Mains contactor control and feedback contacts (KNK03)
	⏚	Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor

1) RKH0800 cable connects KMV to KNK
2) RKH0801 cable connects KMV to KNK
3) RKB0054 cable

Tab. 6-52: KMV03 connection points

6.6.2 X37, X38, digital inputs/outputs

See description KSM02 (chapter 6.3.2 "X37, X38, digital inputs/outputs" on page 165).

Differs from KSM02:

- no internal 24 V power supply
- only 2 digital inputs (X37.2, X38.2) that can be assigned to parameters

6.6.3 X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point

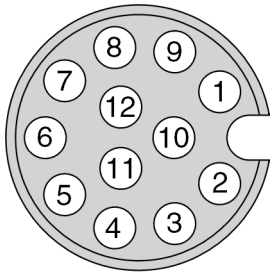
See description KSM02 (chapter 6.3.3 "X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point" on page 169).

6.6.4 X118, X119, external communication

See chapter 6.3.6 "X118, X119, external communication" on page 176

6.6.5 X141, safety technology (KMV03)

☞ A KMV03 distributed supply unit never is a node of a safety zone. However, the signals for a following "Safe Torque Off" safety zone can be input at KMV03 via X141.

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
 DA000400v01_nn.FH11 **Female connector M12 (12-pin, D-coded)**	1	SI_Ch1	Input for selection of channel 1 (connected to X103.2.10)
	2	SI_Ch2	Input for selection of channel 2 (connected to X103.2.8)
	3	n.c.	-
	4	n.c.	-
	5	n.c.	-
	6	n.c.	-
	7	n.c.	-
	8	n.c.	-
	9	n.c.	-
	10	0V	Inputs and outputs power supply (connected to X103.2.9)
	11	n.c.	-
	12	n.c.	-
Ready-made connection cable	RKB0033 Can be used to input the signals for "Safe Torque Off" safety technology.		

Tab. 6-53: Function, pin assignment, properties

Technical data

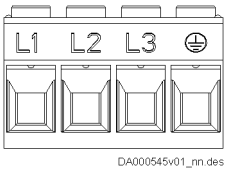
Function	Signal	Connection	Technical data
Channel 1 selection	SI_Ch1	1	chapter 14.1.2 "Digital inputs (safety technology L options)" on page 385
Channel 2 selection	SI_Ch2	2	

Tab. 6-54: Technical data

6.6.6 Second equipment grounding conductor connection point

See chapter 6.3.8 "Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor" on page 184

6.6.7 XD1, mains voltage

View	Connection	Function
	L1	Connection to mains filter (XD1.2.L1)
	L2	Connection to mains filter (XD1.2.L2)
	L3	Connection to mains filter (XD1.2.L3)
	⏚	Equipment grounding conductor

Tab. 6-55: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	6
	AWG	8
Stripped length	mm	10
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8

Tab. 6-56: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	Value
Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section	A	See technical data (I_{L_cont}, I_{L_max} and A_{LN})
Occurring voltage load	V	See technical data (U_{LN})

Tab. 6-57: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0800
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-58: Cables

6.6.8 XD10, control voltage

PELV[2] for 24V power supply unit

For the 24V supply of the devices of the IndraDrive Mi range, use a power supply unit or a control-power transformer with protection by PELV according to IEC 60204-1 (section 6.4).

A UL508-certified power supply unit (output voltage: DC 24 V; output current: ≤ 40 A) has to be used in the scope of CSA/UL.

View	Connection	Function
 DA000547v01_nn.des	+	Control voltage positive pole
	-	Control voltage negative pole

Tab. 6-59: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	6
	AWG	8
Stripped length	mm	10
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8

Tab. 6-60: Mechanical data

Cable

Description	Value
Order type	Cable cannot be ordered. Customer assembles the cable (HAS05.1-020 accessories required).

Tab. 6-61: Cable

6.6.9 XD13, fan power supply

Connection point for **RKB0054** cable.

See chapter 10.18 "RKB0054, fan cable" on page 342.

- Voltage: 24 V
- Current: 70 mA
- Inrush current: 320 mA

2) Protective Extra-Low Voltage

6.6.10 XG3, mains choke temperature contact

View	Connection	Function
	1	Connection to mains filter (mains choke temperature contact XG3.1/2)
	2	

Tab. 6-62: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	1.5
	AWG	16
Stripped length	mm	10

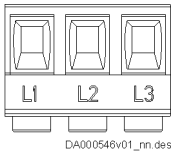
Tab. 6-63: Mechanical data

Cable

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0801
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-64: Cable

6.6.11 XG14, mains voltage synchronization

View	Connection	Function
	L1	Connection to mains filter(XG14.L1)
	L2	Connection to mains filter (XG14.L2)
	L3	Connection to mains filter (XG14.L3)

Tab. 6-65: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	6
	AWG	8
Stripped length	mm	10
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8

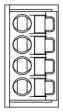
Tab. 6-66: Mechanical data

Cable

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0801
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-67: Cable

6.6.12 XG34, mains contactor control and feedback contacts (KNK03)

View	Connection	Function
	1	Mains contactor control
	2	Connection to mains filter (XG34.1/2)
	3	Mains contactor feedback (N/O contact)
	4	Connection to mains filter (XG34.3/4)

Tab. 6-68: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable	mm^2	1.5
stranded wire	AWG	16
Stripped length	mm	10

Tab. 6-69: Mechanical data

Cable

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0800
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-70: Cable

6.6.13 Connection cover: Mounting options

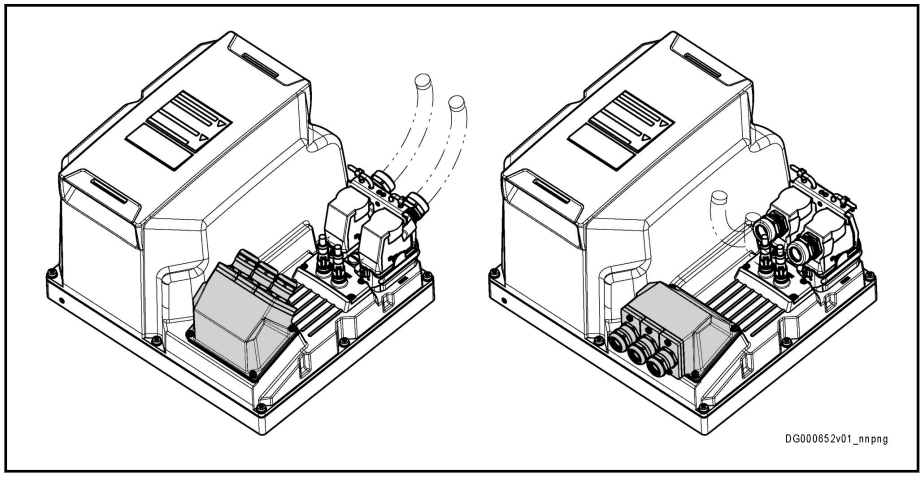


Fig. 6-18: Connection cover: Mounting options

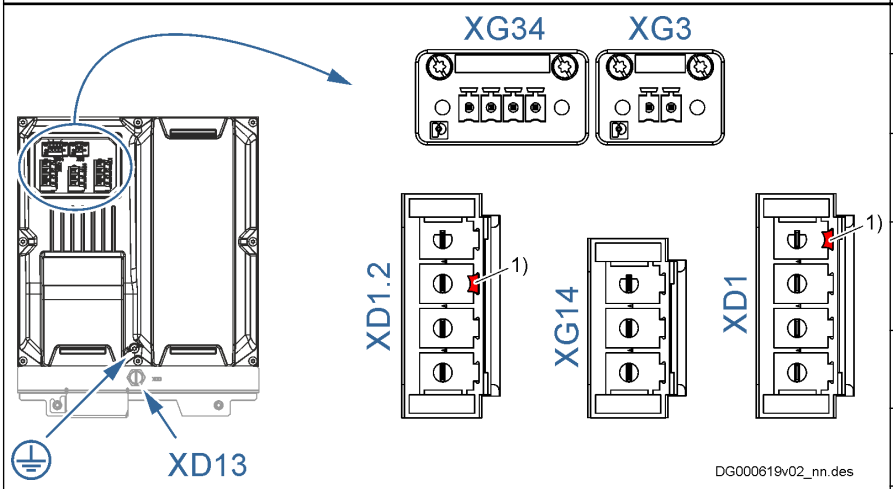
Tightening torque of the mounting screws: **2.5 Nm**

6.6.14 Two-piece connection cover

See chapter 14.3 "Two-piece connection cover" on page 390.

6.7 KNK03 connection points

6.7.1 Positions of the connection points

Figure	Element	Significance
	XD1	Mains voltage supply input [1]
	XD1.2 [2]	Output to load KMV03 (XD1, mains voltage) [1]
	XD13 [4]	KNK03.1A-NR-**W**xxxx: Fan
	XG14 [3]	Output to load KMV03 (XG14, mains voltage synchronization)
	XG3 [3]	Mains choke temperature contact
	XG34 [2]	Mains contactor control and feedback contacts
	⏚	Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor

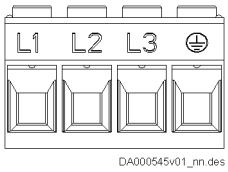
1) Coding pins prevent the connectors XD1 and XD1.2 from being incorrectly plugged
2) RKH0800 cable connects KMV to KNK
3) RKH0801 cable connects KMV to KNK
4) RKB0054 cable

Tab. 6-71: KNK03 connection points

6.7.2 Second equipment grounding conductor connection point

See chapter 6.3.8 "Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor" on page 184

6.7.3 XD1, mains voltage

View	Connection	Function
	L1	Mains voltage supply input
	L2	Mains voltage supply input
	L3	Mains voltage supply input
	⏚	Equipment grounding conductor

Tab. 6-72: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	6
	AWG	10
Stripped length	mm	10
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8

Tab. 6-73: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	Value
Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section	A	See technical data (I_{L_cont}, I_{L_max} and A_{LN})
Occurring voltage load	V	See technical data (U_{LN})

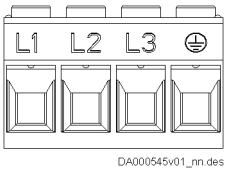
Tab. 6-74: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	Cable cannot be ordered. Customer assembles the cable (HAS05.1-019 accessories required).

Tab. 6-75: Cable

6.7.4 XD1.2, supply unit

View	Connection	Function
	L1	Connection to supply unit
	L2	Connection to supply unit
	L3	Connection to supply unit
	⏚	Equipment grounding conductor

Tab. 6-76: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	6
	AWG	10
Stripped length	mm	10
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8

Tab. 6-77: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	Value
Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section	A	See technical data (I_{L_cont}, I_{L_max} and A_{LN})
Occurring voltage load	V	See technical data (U_{LN})

Tab. 6-78: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0800
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-79: Cable

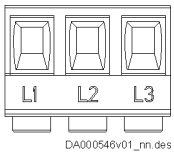
6.7.5 XD13, fan power supply

Connection point for **RKB0054** cable.

See chapter 10.18 "RKB0054, fan cable" on page 342.

- Voltage: 24 V
- Current: 70 mA
- Inrush current: 320 mA

6.7.6 XG14, mains voltage synchronization

View	Connection	Function
	L1	Connection to supply unit (XG14 L1)
	L2	Connection to supply unit (XG14 L2)
	L3	Connection to supply unit (XG14 L3)

Tab. 6-80: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	6
	AWG	10
Stripped length	mm	10
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8

Tab. 6-81: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	Value
Nominal current	A	41
Rated voltage	V	1000

Tab. 6-82: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0801
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-83: Cable

6.7.7 XG3, mains choke temperature contact

View	Connection	Function
	1	Temperature contact
	2	

Tab. 6-84: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	1.5
	AWG	16
Stripped length	mm	10

Tab. 6-85: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	Value
Nominal current	A	8
Nominal voltage	V	150

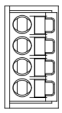
Tab. 6-86: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0801
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-87: Cable

6.7.8 XG34, mains contactor control and feedback contacts

View	Connection	Function
	1	Mains contactor control (N/C contact)
	2	
	3	Mains contactor feedback (N/O contact)
	4	

Tab. 6-88: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	1.5
	AWG	16
Stripped length	mm	10

Tab. 6-89: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	Value
Nominal current	A	8
Rated voltage	V	160

Tab. 6-90: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0800
Maximum allowed length	1 m

Tab. 6-91: Cable

6.7.9 Connection cover: Mounting options

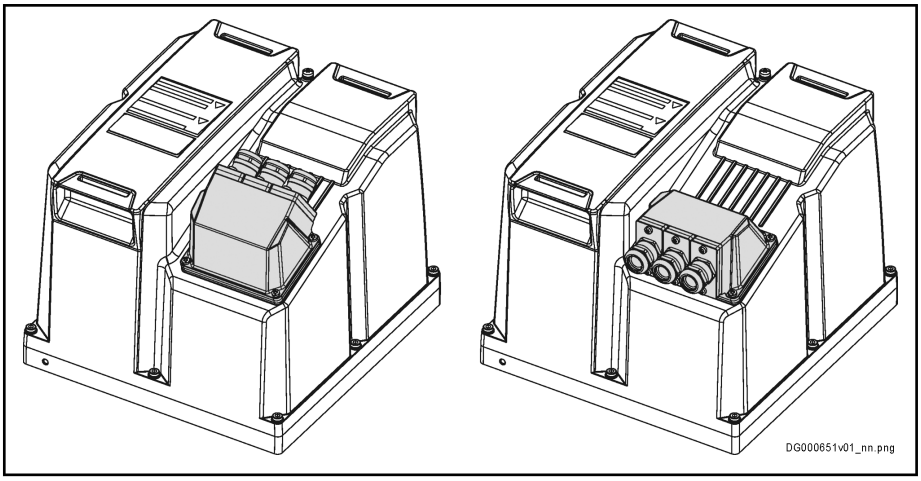


Fig. 6-19: Connection cover: Mounting options

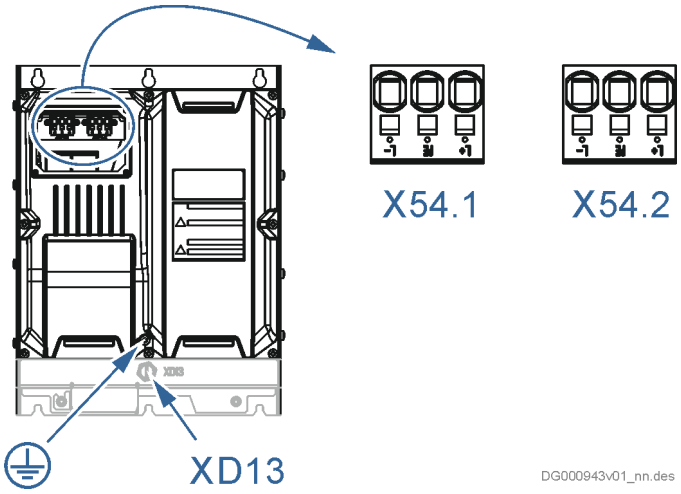
Tightening torque of the mounting screws: **2.5 Nm**

6.7.10 Two-piece connection cover

See chapter 14.3 "Two-piece connection cover" on page 390.

6.8 KLC03 connection points

6.8.1 Positions of the connection points

Figure	Element	Significance
	X54.1 X54.2	DC bus
	XD13	Fan
	⏚	Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor

Tab. 6-92: KLC03 connection points

6.8.2 Second equipment grounding conductor connection point

See chapter 6.3.8 "Second connection point of equipment grounding conductor" on page 184

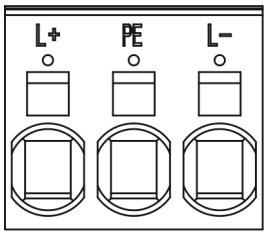
6.8.3 XD13, fan power supply

Connection point for **RKB0054** cable.

See chapter 10.18 "RKB0054, fan cable" on page 342.

- Voltage: 24 V
- Current: 70 mA
- Inrush current: 320 mA

6.8.4 X54.1, X54.2; DC bus

View	Connection	Function
	L+	DC bus positive pole
	PE	⏚
	L-	DC bus negative pole

Tab. 6-93: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable stranded wire	mm^2	6
	AWG	10
Stripped length	mm	10
Tightening torque	Nm	0.8

Tab. 6-94: Mechanical data

Electrical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	Value
Occurring current load and minimum required connection cross section	A	See technical data (I_{L_cont}, I_{L_max} and A_{LN})
Occurring voltage load	V	See technical data (U_{LN})

Tab. 6-95: Electrical data

Cables

Description	Value
Order type	RKH0802 (KMV03 ↔ KLC03) RKH0803 (KLC03 ↔ KLC03)
Maximum allowed length	tbd m

Tab. 6-96: Cable

6.8.5 Connection cover: Mounting options

See chapter 6.7.9 "Connection cover: Mounting options" on page 220.

6.8.6 Two-piece connection cover

See chapter 14.3 "Two-piece connection cover" on page 390.

7 Notes on project planning

7.1 Combining the individual components

7.1.1 Power supply

The combination of the individual components mainly depends on the desired power supply component:

- HMV01, HMV02, HCS02 or HCS03
- HCS01
- KMV03
- XVE, XVR, XCS, XCD

7.1.2 Sizing mains filters

KCU at supply unit and converter - number of axes, C_Y capacitances

The KCU drive connection box transmits the DC bus voltage of the supply unit to the KSM/KMS via the hybrid cable. KCU acts like **one more** axis with higher C_Y (capacitance against ground).

When selecting the supply unit or converter, observe the allowed combinations of mains filter and mains choke.

IndraDrive

Information on how to size the mains filter in mixed systems (IndraDrive Mi (KCU, KSM, KMS) components toghether with IndraDrive M (HMS, HMD) or IndraDrive C/Cs (HCS) components):

See chapter 14.4 "Sizing mains filters (drive system)" on page 391.

ctrlX DRIVE

See Project Planning Manual ctrlX DRIVE Drive Systems (R911386579).

7.1.3 Power supply by supply unit or converter

Supply units

Both supply units and converters can be used as supply units for an IndraDrive Mi drive system.

The sum of the electric powers of all KCU at the DC bus of the supply unit should not exceed P_{DC_cont} and P_{DC_max} of the supply unit/converter.

$$\sum P_{DC\_cont(KCU)} \leq P_{DC\_cont(Supply)}$$

$P_{DC\_cont(KCU)}$ KCU continuous power

$P_{DC\_cont(Supply)}$ Continuous power of supply unit/converter

Fig. 7-1: Continuous power of supply unit

$$\sum P_{DC\_max(KCU)} \leq P_{DC\_max(Supply)}$$

$P_{DC\_max(KCU)}$ KCU peak power

$P_{DC\_max(Supply)}$ Peak power of supply unit/converter

Fig. 7-2: Peak power of supply unit

Notes on project planning with HCS02 as supply unit for KCU02 and KSM/KMS

The HCS02.1E-W0054 and -W0070 types are allowed as supply units for KCU02 and KSM02/KMS02.

Additional capacitance C_{DC_ext} required for HCS02!

For operating HCS02 as a supply unit with low load at the motor output ($P \leq 10\ \% \times P_{DC\_cont(HCS02)}$; $I \leq 10\ \% \times I_{out\_cont(HCS02)}$) the performance data are available without additional capacitance C_{DC_ext} at the DC bus.

Use additional capacitors C_{DC_ext} at the DC bus, if the load at the motor output is higher.

If the DC bus capacitor unit HLC01.1 is used, the following **guide value** applies when determining the additional capacitance C_{DC_ext}:

- **50 µF** per kW of installed continuous power KSM/KMS, thus 700 µF for KCU02 operated at rated power.

KSM/KMS feature power supply monitoring that can be set.

See also "P-0-0114, Undervoltage threshold"

See also Functional Description of firmware → "Power supply".

7.1.4 Power supply by HCS01

HCS01.1E-W0054 drive controllers can be used to supply power to **KSM0x** motor-integrated servo drives or **KMS0x** near motor servo drives. In this case, the KCU drive connection box is not required.

See fig. 9-8 "IndraDrive Mi system with HCS01.1E-W0054" on page 301.

7.1.5 Power supply by ctrlX DRIVE devices

See fig. 9-9 "IndraDrive Mi drive system with ctrlX DRIVE" on page 302.

7.1.6 Power supply by KMV03 and KNK03

KMV03 supply unit, KNK03 mains filter

KMV03 supply units can be used together with **KNK03** mains filters to supply power to **KSM0x** motor-integrated servo drives or **KMS0x** near motor servo drives.

7.1.7 Control voltage power requirement 42 V

Power components	Symbol	Power requirement [W]	Explanation
Basic power of the component	P_{Basic}	15	Component: KSM, KMS, KMV, …
Digital inputs/outputs	P_{IO}	2.5	Connection point X37, X38 The power component is only available when the digital outputs are used without an additional external 24V supply.
Optional safety technology S3	P_{S3}	2.5	Safety option "Safe Motion (without SBC)"
Optional safety technology SD	P_{SD}	2.5	Safety option "Safe Motion"
Optional master communication output coupling TO	P_{TO}	-	No additional power required
Optional external master communication ES	P_{ES}	-	
Optional safety technology L3	P_{L3}	-	Power requirement contained in basic power of the component P_{Basic}
Motor holding brake KSM…041	P_{Br}	12	
Motor holding brake KSM…061		18	
Motor holding brake KSM…071		24	
Motor holding brake KSM…076		24	
Motor holding brake KMS		n.s.	See specification of motor holding brake of the connected motor

Tab. 7-1: Control voltage power requirement

Control voltage power requirement of one component

$$P_{N3\_42V} = P_{Basic} + P_{IO} + P_{S3/SD} + P_{Br}$$

Control voltage power requirement of multiple components of a drive line

$$P_{total} = \Sigma P_{N3\_42V}$$

7.1.8 KCU02 drive connection box

General information

Functions

The drive connection box KCU mainly fulfills the following functions:

- Transmitting the power supply to the drive line
- 42V supply of the KSM/KMS in the drive line
- Transmitting the communication signals to the drive line
- Exchanging status signals between motors and supply unit
- Displaying the status signals of the drive line for diagnostic purposes

Arrangement

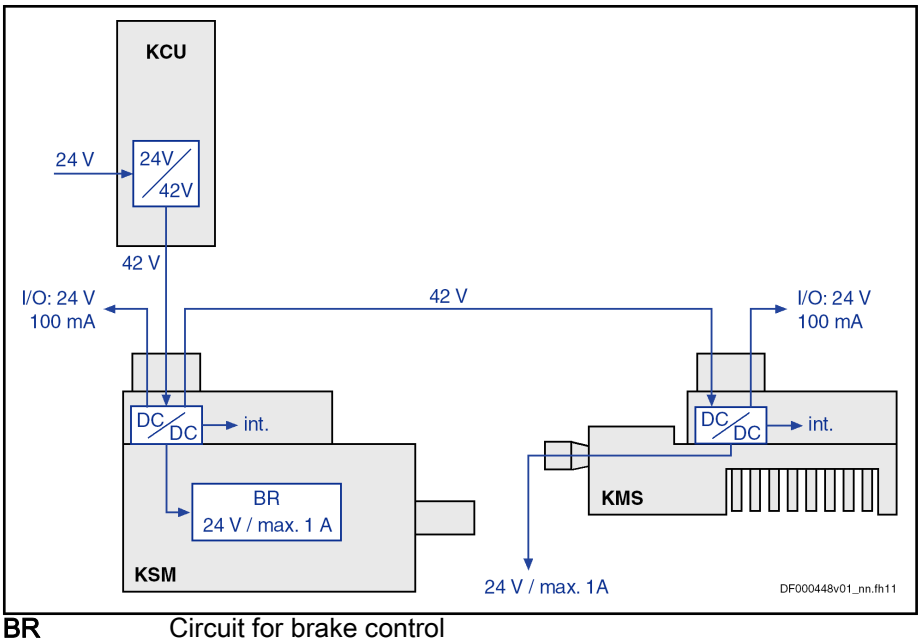
The KCU drive connection box is arranged next to the supply unit or next to other axes mounted between supply unit and KCU. Axes with a high degree of power consumption should be arranged as near as possible to the supply unit.

Control voltage supply

The KCU drive connection box needs 24V supply for operation. From the applied 24V supply,

- KCU supplies itself and
- at "X53, control voltage output" generates the 42V control voltage for the KSM/KMS in the drive line.

Control voltage KCU, KSM, KMS



BR Circuit for brake control
I/O Inputs/outputs
int. Internal electronics
KCU Drive connection box
KMS Near motor servo drive
KSM Motor-integrated servo drive

Fig. 7-3: Control voltage KCU, KSM, KMS

At a KCU, it is permitted to operate KSM/KMS with and without integrated holding brake (observe allowed number of axes and cable length). The load at X53 should not exceed the value of P_{out} (see technical data of KCU).

In operation under rated conditions, the sum of P_{out} and P_{Diss_cont} is generated at the "control voltage supply +24V, 0V" input of KCU as load for the 24V

supply (P_{Diss_cont} = power dissipation which KCU generates by converting the 24 V voltage to 42 V; depends on the load at the 42V supply.).

☞ Configure the 24V supply for the power consumption of KCU and the load-dependent inrush current.

Take into account that other loads (e.g. HMV, HCS) are operated at the same 24V supply.

KCU output X53 load:

$$P_{42V} = f_{cable} \times \left[n \times P_{N3} + m \times (P_{N3}) \right]$$

P_{42V}	KCU load at X53
f_{cable}	1.3 (correction factor for losses on the hybrid cable)
n	Number of KSM/KMS without holding brake
m	Number of KSM/KMS with holding brake
P_{N3}	KSM/KMS power consumption

Fig. 7-4: Load X53

KCU power consumption from 24V supply:

$$P_{N3(KCU)} = f_{SMPS} \times P_{42V}$$

$P_{N3\ (KCU)}$	KCU power consumption
f_{SMPS}	1.2 (correction factor for KCU power supply unit losses)
P_{42V}	KCU load at X53

Fig. 7-5: KCU power consumption from 24V supply

☞ The 24V supply has to make available the inrush current generated when each KCU drive connection box is switched on. The inrush current depends on the power consumption $P_{N3\ (KCU)}$ (see calculation above):

- $P_{N3(KCU)} \leq 288$ W

  Inrush current $I_{N3\_EIN} = 10$ A

- $288\ W < P_{N3(KCU)}$

  Inrush current $I_{N3\_EIN} = P_{N3(KCU)}/U_{N3}$

The holding brakes integrated in KSM have no effect on the inrush current of KCU.

Power supply to KSM/KMS (KCU)

A drive line for power supply in the IndraDrive Mi system is designed as a bus (L+, L-) and consists of:

- X54 connector at KCU
- RKH hybrid cable
- X103.1 and X103.2 connectors at KSM/KMS
- RHS0014 terminal connector at KSM/KMS

Comply with UL rating I_{Bypass}

In the case of equal load, the greatest load of the hybrid cable is on the first cable segment.

In the drive line, place powerful KSM/KMS as near as possible to the output of the drive connection box KCU.

Observe the maximum allowed bypass current I_{Bypass} in each segment (see technical data of KSM or technical data of KMS).

If necessary, install more KCU devices.

Available power at drive line

Available power P_{KCU_strang} at a drive line:

$$P_{KCU\_strang} = U_{out} \times I_{out\_max}$$

P_{KCU_strang}	Available power at drive line
U_{out}	Output voltage, depending on supply unit
I_{out_max}	Output current; see technical data of KCU

Fig. 7-6: Available power at KCU drive line

With a small number of KSM/KMS and a low degree of power consumption in a drive line (operation at partial load), the measurable value I_{strang} at the output of KCU is above the value which would result from the calculation of the power P_{LN} of KSM/KMS and U_{out} of KCU. The deviation is due to reactive currents. The influence of these currents is insignificant in operation under rated conditions.

Continuous power

Comply with continuous power

The sum of the electric powers of all KSM/KMS of a drive line should not exceed the calculated value P_{KCU_strang} of the KCU drive connection box.

$$\sum P_{LN\_nenn} \leq P_{KCU\_strang}$$

P_{LN_nenn}	Nominal power KSM/KMS
P_{KCU_strang}	Available power at drive line

Fig. 7-7: Checking the continuous power

Instead of P_{LN_nenn}, it is allowed to use the actually occurring continuous power of the KSM/KMS.

Taking the average speed and simultaneity factor into account, the sum of the installed rated motor powers therefore can be significantly higher with servo operation.

Peak power

Comply with KCU peak power

The sum of the electric powers of all KSM/KMS of a drive line should not exceed the indicated value P_{DC_max} of the KCU drive connection box.

$$\sum P_{LN\_max} \leq P_{DC\_max}$$

P_{LN_max} Peak power of KSM/KMS
P_{DC_max} KCU peak power

Fig. 7-8: KCU peak power

Derating of Peak Power

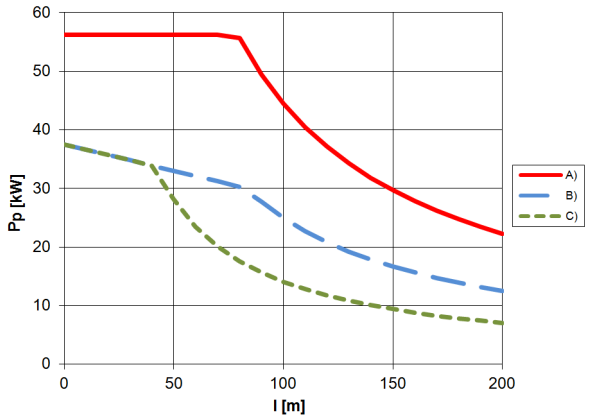
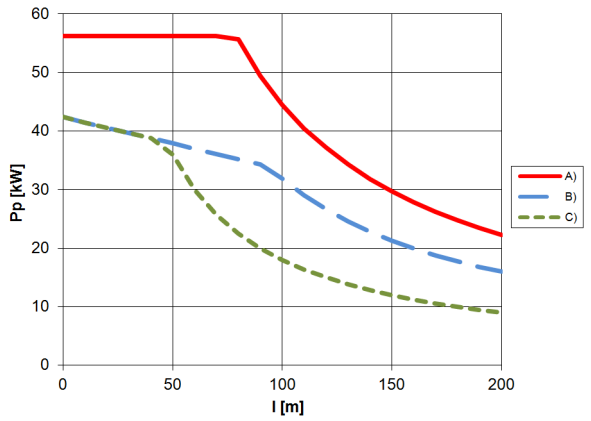
As the length of the hybrid cable increases, the peak power available at the cable end is reduced.

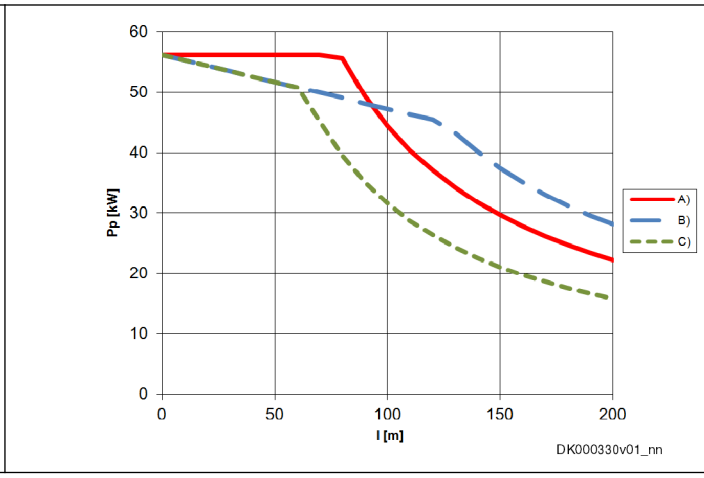
Peak power depending on the cable length

Due to occurring voltage drops, the effective length of the cable influences the available peak power at KSM/KMS.

Observe the following diagrams and the sections

- "Peak power when accelerating" on page 232
- " Peak Power when Decelerating" on page 233

DC 500 V	
DC 565 V	

DC 750 V	

Data used for the diagrams:

- Maximum peak current of 3 × I_{Bypass}: 75 A
- Threshold of braking resistor in supply unit or converter: 820 V
  See also "P-0-0833, Braking resistor threshold"
  See also "P-0-0860, Converter configuration"

A) Peak power when decelerating
B) Peak power when accelerating (n < 0.8 × n_{eck}; n_{eck}: speed at which the torque characteristic is inflected)
C) Peak power when accelerating (n < 0.9 × n_{eck}; n_{eck}: speed at which the torque characteristic is inflected)
P_P Maximum peak power (sum of all P_{DC_max} in the drive line)
l_{total} Sum of the lengths of all hybrid cables at a KCU

Tab. 7-2: Available Peak Power vs. Cable Length for DC 500 V and DC 750 V

Peak power when accelerating

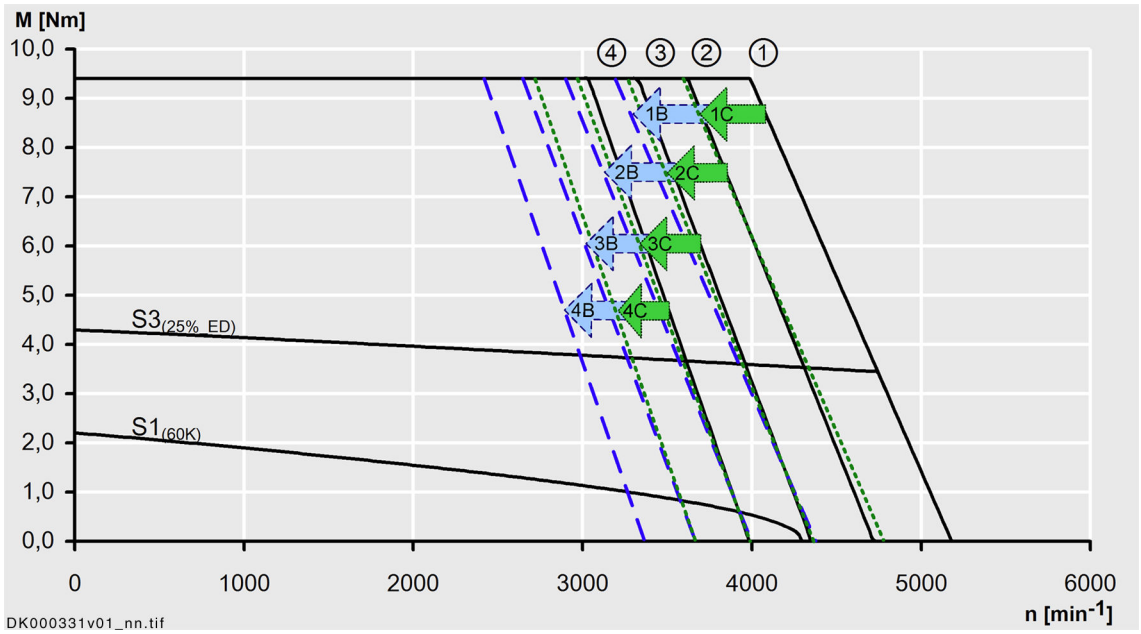
Due to voltage drops, less peak power is available at KSM/KMS with increasing length of the motor cable. During acceleration, this becomes noticeable by the reduction of the corner speed. The figure shows exemplary curves of reduction to 80% and 90% of the data sheet corner speeds. The maximum speed is proportional to the DC bus voltage available at the motor.

In the drive line, place the KSM/KMS with the greatest power as near as possible to the output of KCU.

Examples (cable length: 100 m)

565 V DC	750 V DC
• Motive: 32 kW at most • Regenerative: 45 kW at most • With 18 kW, a maximum speed of approx. 90% of the corner speed can be reached.	• Motive: 47 kW at most • Regenerative: 45 kW at most • With 32 kW, a maximum speed of approx. 90% of the corner speed can be reached in motive form.

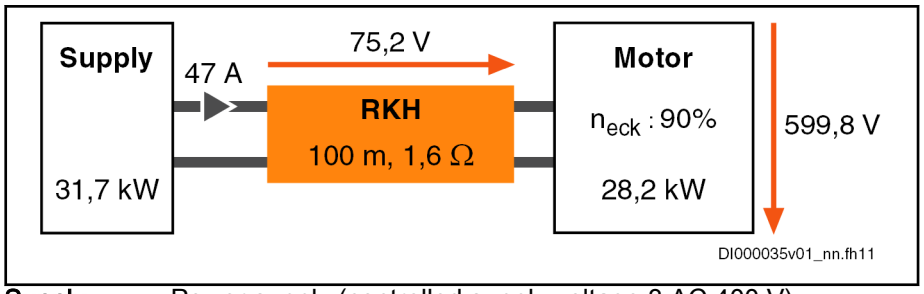
Tab. 7-3: Examples



S1, S3	Characteristics apply to a PWM frequency of 4 kHz
①	M_{max}, controlled supply 3 AC 400 V
②	M_{max}, uncontrolled supply 3 AC 480 V
③	M_{max}, uncontrolled supply 3 AC 440 V
④	M_{max}, uncontrolled supply 3 AC 400 V
B	Corner speed reduced to 80%
C	Corner speed reduced to 90%

Fig. 7-9: Example of how long lines reduce the corner speeds

Power distribution



Supply	Power supply (controlled supply voltage 3 AC 400 V)
RKH	Hybrid cable
Motor	KSM or KMS and Motor

Fig. 7-10: Example of power distribution with cable length of 100 m and corner speed reduced to 90%

Peak Power when Decelerating

The peak power when decelerating is **independent** of the supply unit used and the mains voltage. But the peak power is reduced as of a cable length of approx. 80 m, due to the voltage limitation taking effect in KSM/KMS.

The critical case is when all motors decelerate at the same time with peak torque out of maximum speed (e.g., in the case of E-Stop).

☞ **Observe installed motor peak power**

The sum of installed motor peak powers must be smaller than maximum peak power P_P indicated in the diagram.

If necessary, install more KCU devices.

Exception: When the design and arrangement within a drive line ensure that the occurring motor peak powers do not add.

This is the case, for example, when the drives have been mechanically connected in such a way that the energy flows to the DC bus are inversely directed when decelerating. One drive absorbs the energy which another drive in the same line delivers when decelerating. These drives must be arranged side by side in the line.

7.1.9 KLC03 DC bus capacitor unit

Application notes

Using a DC bus capacitor unit can increase the storable energy in the DC bus.

- Increases the peak power within the DC bus
- Provides energy reserves in the case of mains failure (e.g., for return motions)
- Avoids load peaks on the mains side (when using the "Smart Energy Mode")

A maximum of 2 KLC03 at one KMV03 are allowed per drive line.

Resulting maximum **DC bus capacitance** (C_{KMV03} + 2 × C_{KLC03}):

2.35 mF + 2 × 4.7 mF = **11.75 mF**

Project planning software

The project planning software **HMV_SmartEnergyMode.exe** by Rexroth can be used to **size the DC bus capacitance**. If necessary, please contact our sales representative.

The project planning software calculates the minimum required DC bus capacitance depending on the voltage offset to the mains peak.

The project planning software works with the following variables:

- DC bus power profile

  (The DC bus power profile has to be available as an ASCII file with the time values and the corresponding power values.)
- Supply unit (selection list)
- Mains voltage (selection list)
- Voltage offset to the mains peak as safety reserve (it is necessary to enter a value)

7.1.10 Hybrid cable length

Length of hybrid cable incl. communication

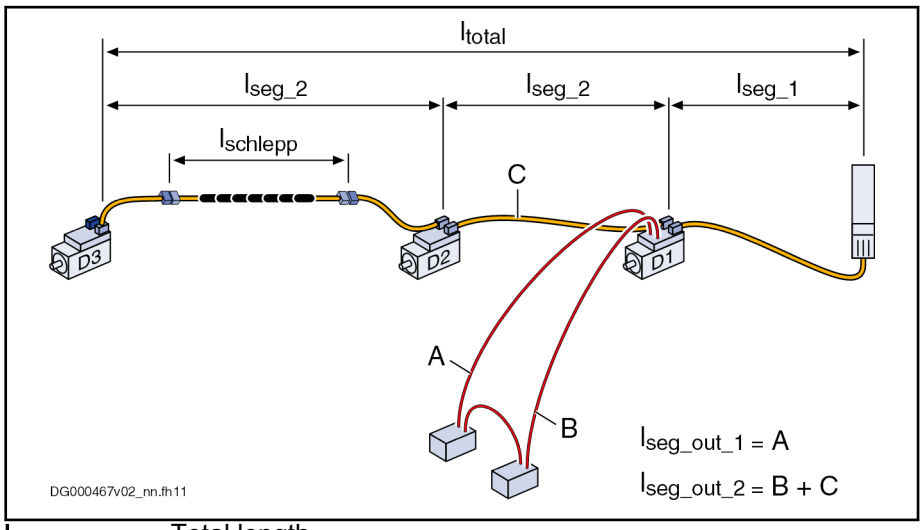
Allowed cable length depending on load

The maximum allowed total length is limited depending on the kind of load on the hybrid cable.

Observe the following limit values for total length and segment length within a drive line.

The number of KSM/KMS devices in the drive line has an influence on the allowed cable length (see also chapter "Hybrid cable length vs. KCU performance" on page 239).

Definition of the cable lengths



l_{total}	Total length
l_{seg}	Segment length
$l_{seg\_out\_1}$	Segment length with communication output coupling: D1_X108 ↔ external component
$l_{seg\_out\_2}$	Segment length with communication output coupling: [external component ↔ D1_X109] + [D1_X103.2 ↔ D2_X103.1]
$l_{schlepp}$	Flexible cable track length

Fig. 7-11: Definition of the lengths

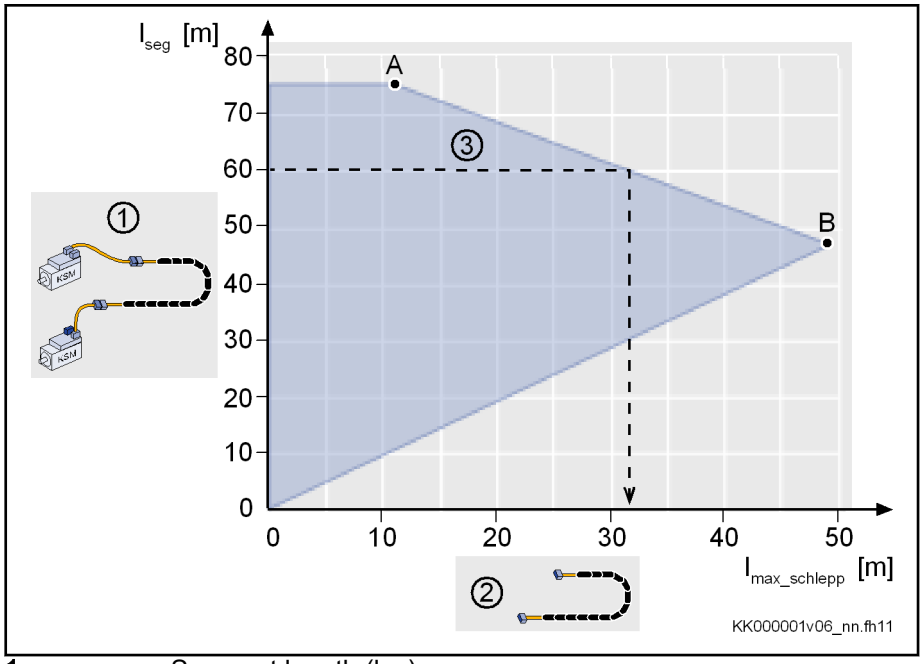
Allowed lengths

Limit values	Symbol	Unit	Value	
			min	max
For permanent routing				
Total length [1]	l_{total}	m	3	200
Segment length from supply component (e.g., KCU) to first KSM/KMS	l_{seg_1}	m	3 [2]	75
Segment length [3]	l_{seg_2}	m	1 [4]	75
Segment length with communication output coupling [5]	$l_{seg\_out\_1}$ $l_{seg\_out\_2}$	m	1.25 [4]	75
For routing with stress in flexible cable track				
Length in flexible cable track	$l_{schlepp}$	m	see fig. 7-12 "Maximum allowed cable length for routing in the flexible cable track" on page 237	

1) Total length: Total cable length from connection point of supply component (e.g., KCU) to last KSM/KMS of a drive line
2) For electric decoupling at rated current
3) Segment length: Cable length between two KSM/KMS
4) For thermal decoupling of the connection points at rated current
5) Segment length: Cable length between external component and KSM/KMS

Tab. 7-4: Cable length limit values

For routing in the flexible cable track, determine the "maximum allowed length in the flexible cable track" $l_{max\_schlepp}$ within the maximum segment length l_{seg} using the figure below.



1	Segment length (l_{seg})
2	Maximum allowed length in flexible cable track ($l_{max\_schlepp}$)
3	Example: With a segment length of 60 m, the maximum allowed length in the flexible cable track is approx. 32 m.
A	l_{seg} = 75 m; $l_{max\_schlepp}$ = 11.5 m
B	l_{seg} = 48 m; $l_{max\_schlepp}$ = 48 m

Fig. 7-12: Maximum allowed cable length for routing in the flexible cable track

The length $l_{max\_schlepp}$ taken from the figure is the length of the movable part of the cable connection between two motors. The RKH0700 cable can be used for the movable part of the flexible cable track connection so that it is replaceable and thereby easy to maintain.

Technical justification of the specified lengths: Only within the specified lengths is it ensured that the properties of the Ethernet communication (attenuation, crosstalk) remain in the allowed range during the service life of the cable.

Length of hybrid cable without communication

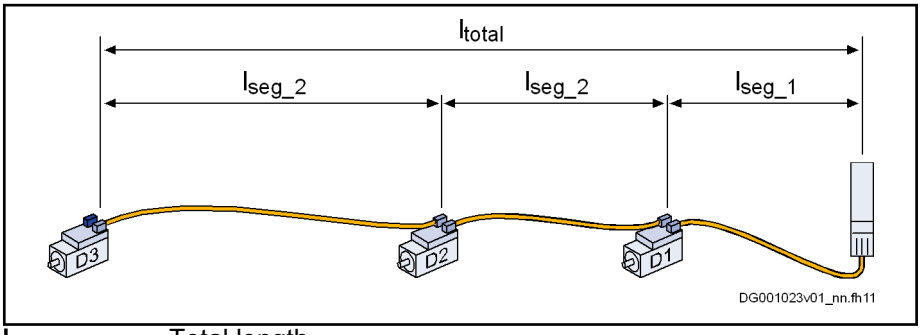
Allowed cable length depending on load

The maximum allowed total length is limited depending on the kind of load on the hybrid cable.

Observe the following limit values for total length and segment length within a drive line.

The number of KSM/KMS devices in the drive line has an influence on the allowed cable length (see also chapter "Hybrid cable length vs. KCU performance" on page 239).

Definition of the cable lengths



l_{total} Total length
l_{seg} Segment length

Fig. 7-13: Definition of the lengths

Allowed lengths

Limit values	Symbol	Unit	Value	
			min	max
For permanent routing				
Total length [1]	l_{total}	m	3	200
Segment length from supply component (e.g., KCU) to first KSM/KMS	l_{seg_1}	m	3 [2]	75
Segment length [3]	l_{seg_2}	m	1 [4]	75

1) Total length: Total cable length from connection point of supply component (e.g., KCU) to last KSM/KMS of a drive line
2) For electric decoupling at rated current
3) Segment length: Cable length between two KSM/KMS
4) For thermal decoupling of the connection points at rated current

Tab. 7-5: Cable length limit values

Hybrid cable length vs. KCU performance

The maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line can be determined using the power required by the servo drives.

The maximum number of drives per drive line depends on the following factors:

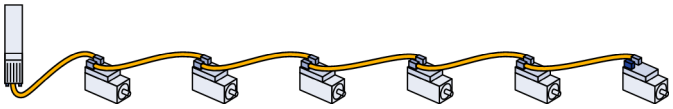
- DC bus power
- Power requirement of the control voltage
- Y-capacitance
- Leakage capacitance
- Cable length

The module bus always limits the maximum number to 30.

If necessary, install an additional KCU device.

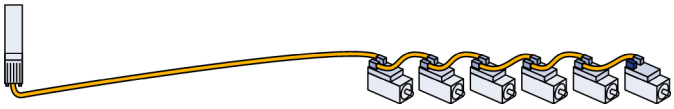
In the following paragraphs, we distinguish **3 cases**:

A: **Servo drives evenly distributed over the entire drive line**



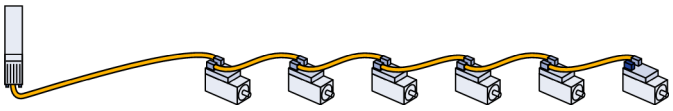
The servo drives are evenly distributed over the entire length of the drive line. The cables between the individual servo drives all have the same length.

B: **Servo drives evenly distributed at the end of the drive line**



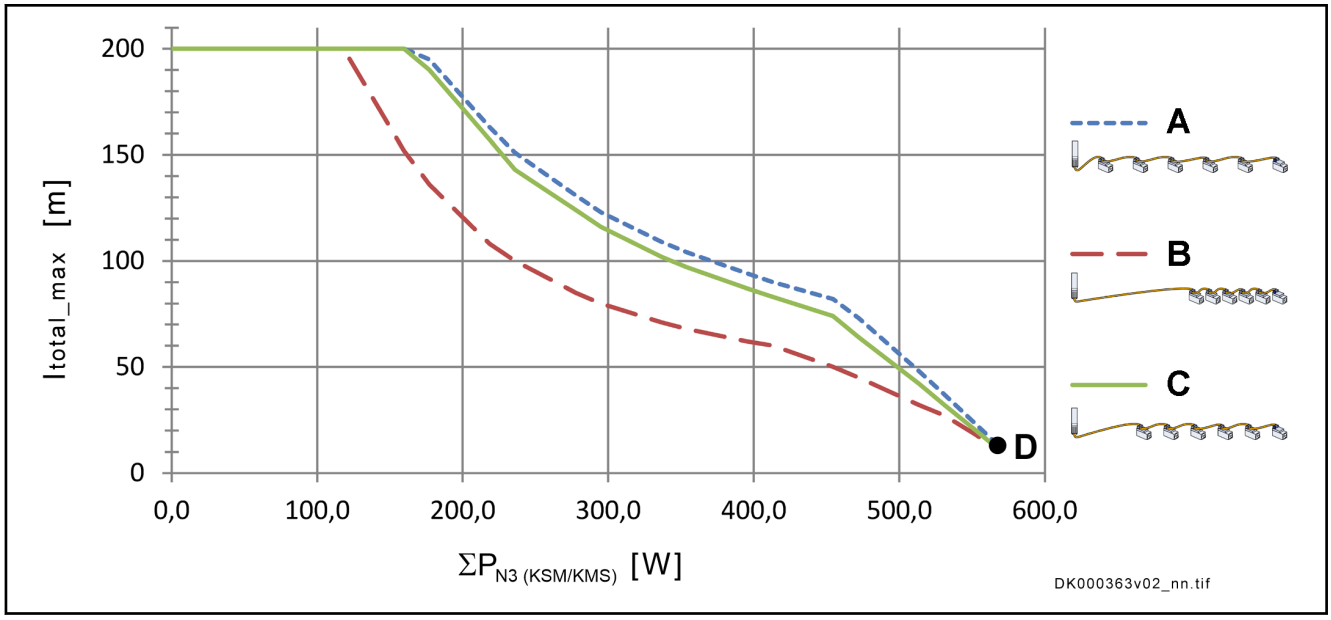
The servo drives are arranged at the end of the drive line and interconnected with short cables (1 m).

C: **Servo drives evenly distributed starting at 20% of the drive line**



The first servo drive is arranged at 20% of the length of the entire drive line. After this, the servo drives are evenly distributed up to the end of the drive line.

The figure below shows the maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line depending on P_{42V} (P_{42V} = KCU output X53 load).

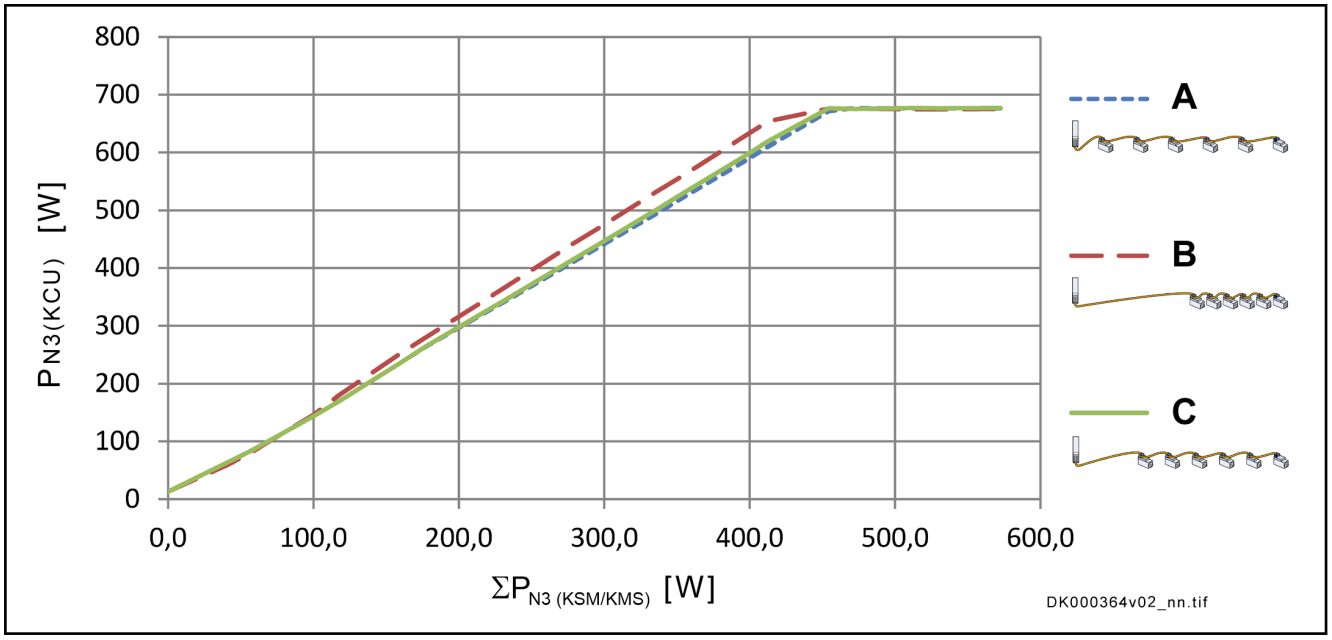


A	Servo drives evenly distributed over the entire drive line
B	Servo drives evenly distributed at the end of the drive line
C	Servo drives evenly distributed starting at 20% of the drive line
D	Limit value: Hybrid cable length = 16 m with P_{42V} = 588 W
l_{total_max}	Maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line
$\Sigma P_{N3\ (KSM/KMS)}$	KCU output X53 load (without cable losses)

Fig. 7-14: Maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line

☞ For exact calculations of the allowed hybrid cable lengths in limit cases, please contact our sales representative.

The figure below shows $P_{N3(KCU)}$ (KCU power consumption from 24V supply) depending on P_{42V} (KCU output X53 load).



A	Servo drives evenly distributed over the entire drive line
B	Servo drives evenly distributed at the end of the drive line
C	Servo drives evenly distributed starting at 20% of the drive line
$\Sigma P_{N3\ (KSM/KMS)}$	KCU output X53 load (without cable losses)
$P_{N3(KCU)}$	Maximum KCU power consumption from 24V supply

Fig. 7-15: $P_{N3(KCU)}$ vs. P_{42V}

☞ $P_{N3(KCU)}$ is a value for the project planning of the 24V supply.

It is impossible to deduce thermal losses in the control cabinet from the difference between the power $P_{N3(KCU)}$ and P_{42V}. The typical losses of KCU are approx. 40% less than the maximum calculated values.

Hybrid cable length vs. KMV03 performance

The maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line can be determined using the power required by the servo drives.

The maximum number of drives per drive line depends on the following factors:

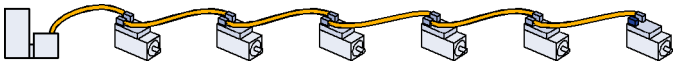
- DC bus power
- Power requirement of the control voltage
- Y-capacitance
- Leakage capacitance
- Cable length

The KNK mains filter always limits the maximum number to 14.

If necessary, install an additional KMV device.

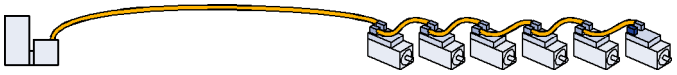
In the following paragraphs, we distinguish **3 cases**:

A: **Servo drives evenly distributed over the entire drive line**



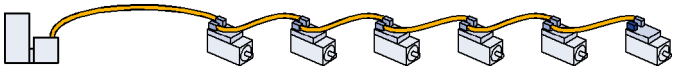
The servo drives are evenly distributed over the entire length of the drive line. The cables between the individual servo drives all have the same length.

B: **Servo drives evenly distributed at the end of the drive line**



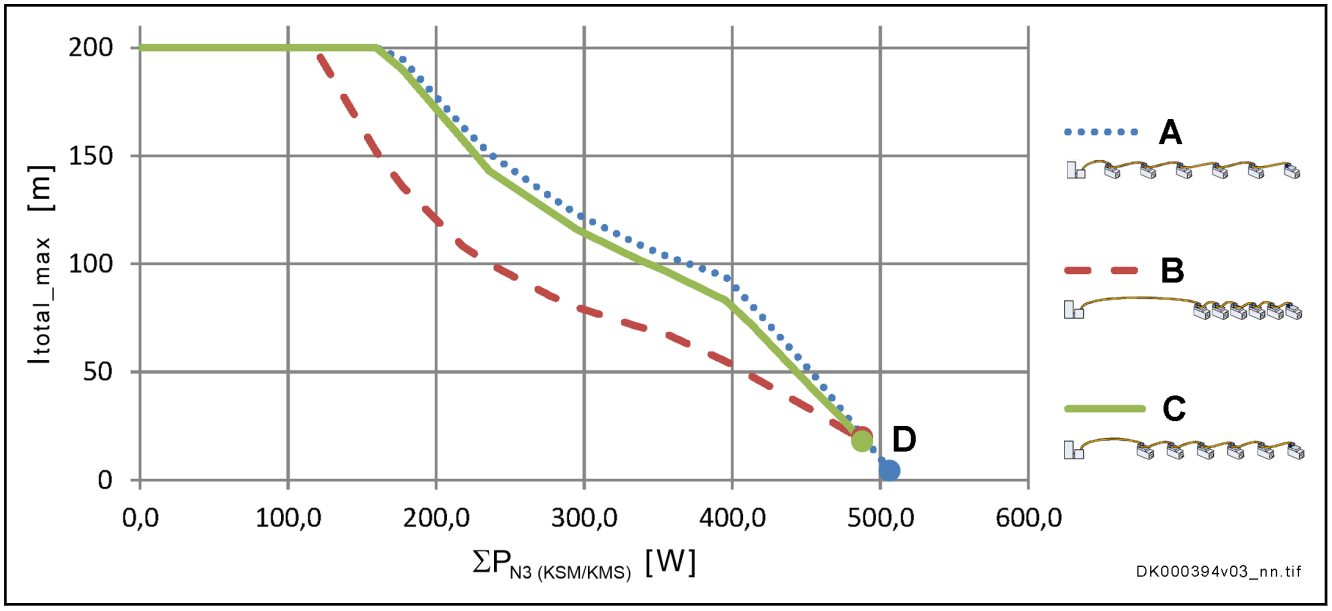
The servo drives are arranged at the end of the drive line and interconnected with short cables (1 m).

C: **Servo drives evenly distributed starting at 20% of the drive line**



The first servo drive is arranged at 20% of the length of the entire drive line. After this, the servo drives are evenly distributed up to the end of the drive line.

The figure below shows the maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line depending on P_{42V} (P_{42V} = KMV output XD10 load).

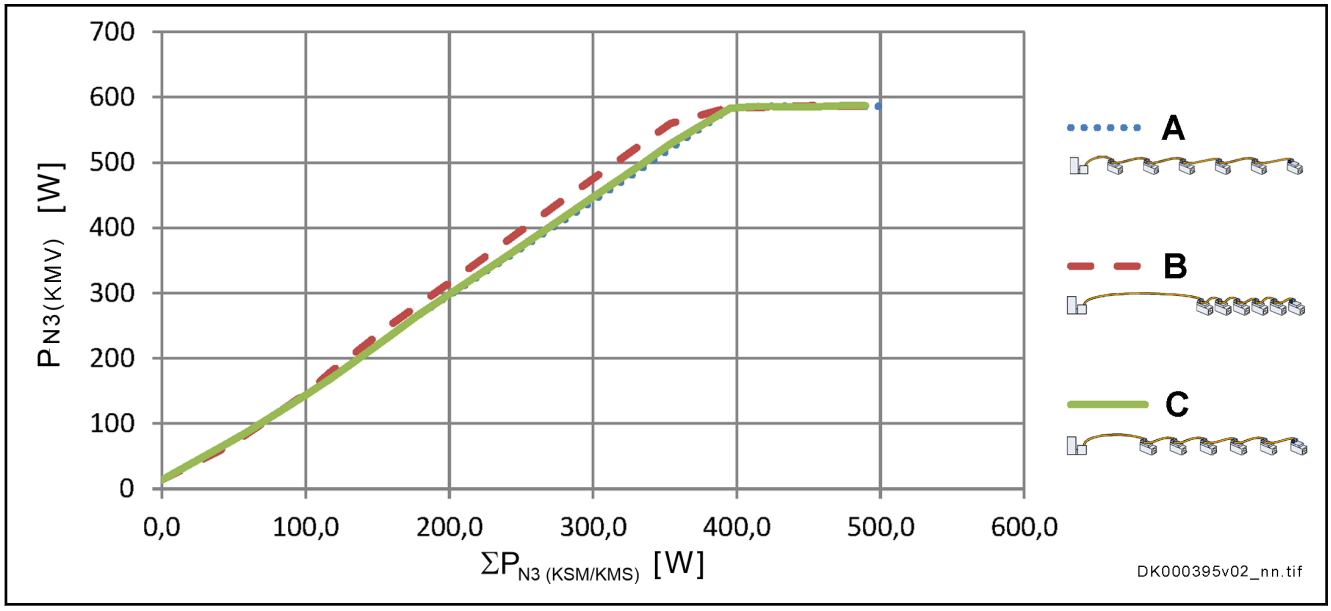


A	Servo drives evenly distributed over the entire drive line
B	Servo drives evenly distributed at the end of the drive line
C	Servo drives evenly distributed starting at 20% of the drive line
D	Limit value A: hybrid cable length = 4 m with P_{42V} = 507 W Limit value B: hybrid cable length = 18 m with P_{42V} = 489.5 W Limit value C: hybrid cable length = 17 m with P_{42V} = 489.5 W
l_{total_max}	Maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line
$\Sigma P_{N3\ (KSM/KMS)}$	KMV output XD10 load (without cable losses)

Fig. 7-16: Maximum allowed hybrid cable length of a drive line

☞ For exact calculations of the allowed hybrid cable lengths in limit cases, please contact our sales representative.

The figure below shows $P_{N3(KMV)}$ (KMV power consumption from 24V supply) depending on P_{42V} (KMV output XD10 load).



A	Servo drives evenly distributed over the entire drive line
B	Servo drives evenly distributed at the end of the drive line
C	Servo drives evenly distributed starting at 20% of the drive line
$\Sigma P_{N3\ (KSM/KMS)}$	KMV output XD10 load (without cable losses)
$P_{N3(KMV)}$	Maximum KMV power consumption from 24V supply

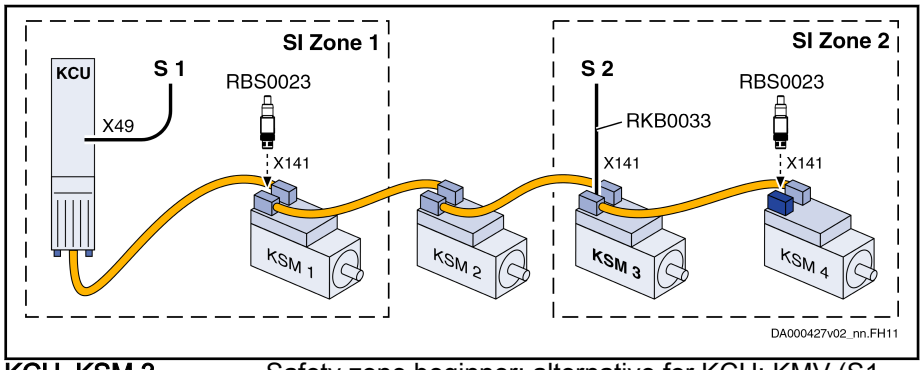
Fig. 7-17: $P_{N3(KMV)}$ vs. P_{42V}

7.1.11 Zone setup

Safety zones

Safety zone

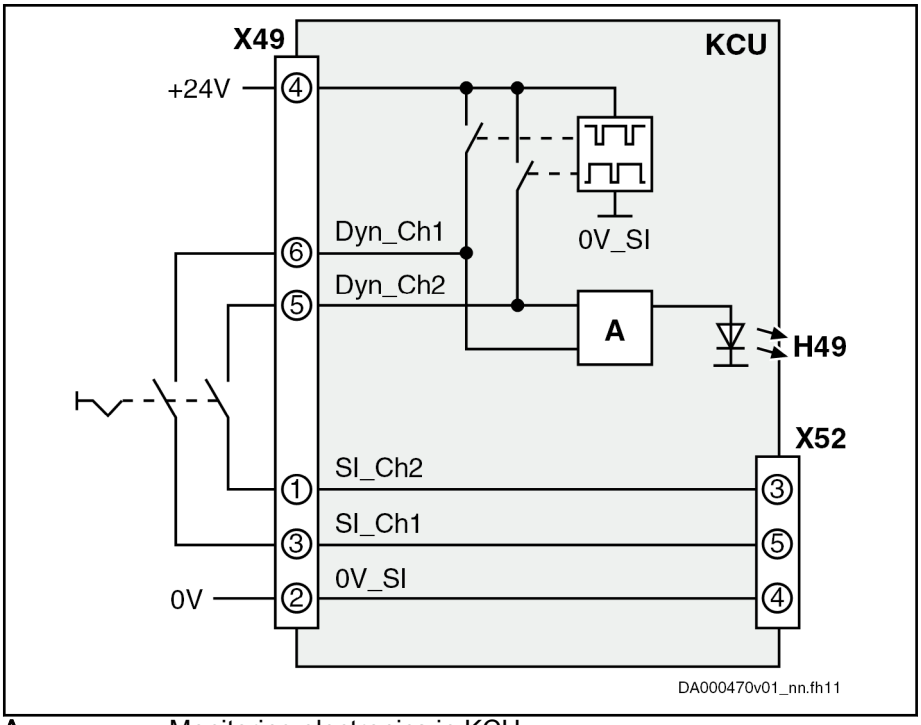
A **safety zone** consists of a **safety zone beginner** and one or several **safety zone nodes**. The example shows a drive system with 2 safety zones.



KCU, KSM 3	Safety zone beginner; alternative for KCU: KMV (S1 signal via X141 at KSM 1; KMV is not a safety zone node)
KSM 1, KSM 4	Safety zone node
KSM 2	KSM without optional safety technology ⇒ not a safety zone node
RBS0023	Connector for safety zone node at connection point X141 (only required for KSM/KMS with optional safety technology)
RKB0033	Cable for transmitting the safety-related signals
S 1, S 2	Signals of the individual safety zones
SI Zone 1, SI Zone 2	Safety zones
X49, X141	Connection points of safety technology

Fig. 7-18: Safety zones

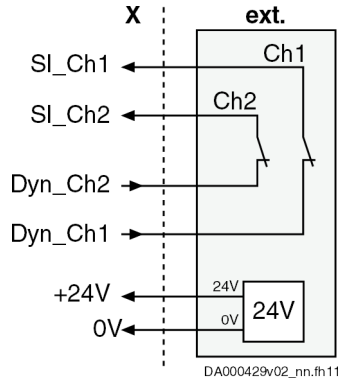
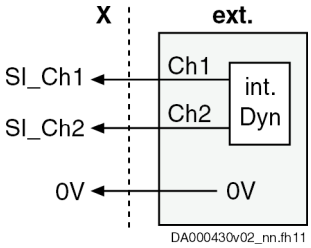
Safety zone beginner KCU



A Monitoring electronics in KCU
H49 Diagnostic display for safety technology signals
Fig. 7-19: Safety zone beginner KCU

Two options for signal input:

- Passive safety unit with internal dynamization pulses in conjunction with external safety technology contacts and an external 24V power supply unit
- Active safety unit via a safety PLC

Passive safety unit	Active safety unit
	

int. Dyn: Dynamization pulses are internally generated

ext. External safety unit for a safety zone
X Connection point of the safety zone beginner
Tab. 7-6: Signal input

Safety zone node

When a KSM/KMS **with** optional safety technology is to be a safety zone node within a safety zone, X141 has to be equipped with the connector RBS0023.

KSM/KMS **without** optional safety technology do not require the connector, because for these devices the signals are directly transmitted to the next safety zone node via X103.1 and X103.2. KSM/KMS without optional safety technology are not safety zone nodes and do not react to safety technology signals.

Documentation

The subject of safety technology is very complex so that it is not explained in detail in this Project Planning Manual.

For detailed information on safety technology, see the documentation "Rexroth IndraDrive Integrated Safety Technology as of MPx-1x" (mat. no.: R911332634).

E-Stop function

With **KCU**: The E-Stop function is wired at KCU and transmitted to KSM/KMS via the hybrid cable.

In this case, the E-Stop signal is input to the safety zone via an isolated 24V contact (X50.3) at KCU. The reference potential of the E-Stop signal within the safety zone is X53.1 (output of the DC-DC converter in KCU).

With **KMV**: The E-Stop function is wired at KMV (X141) and transmitted to KSM/KMS via the hybrid cable.

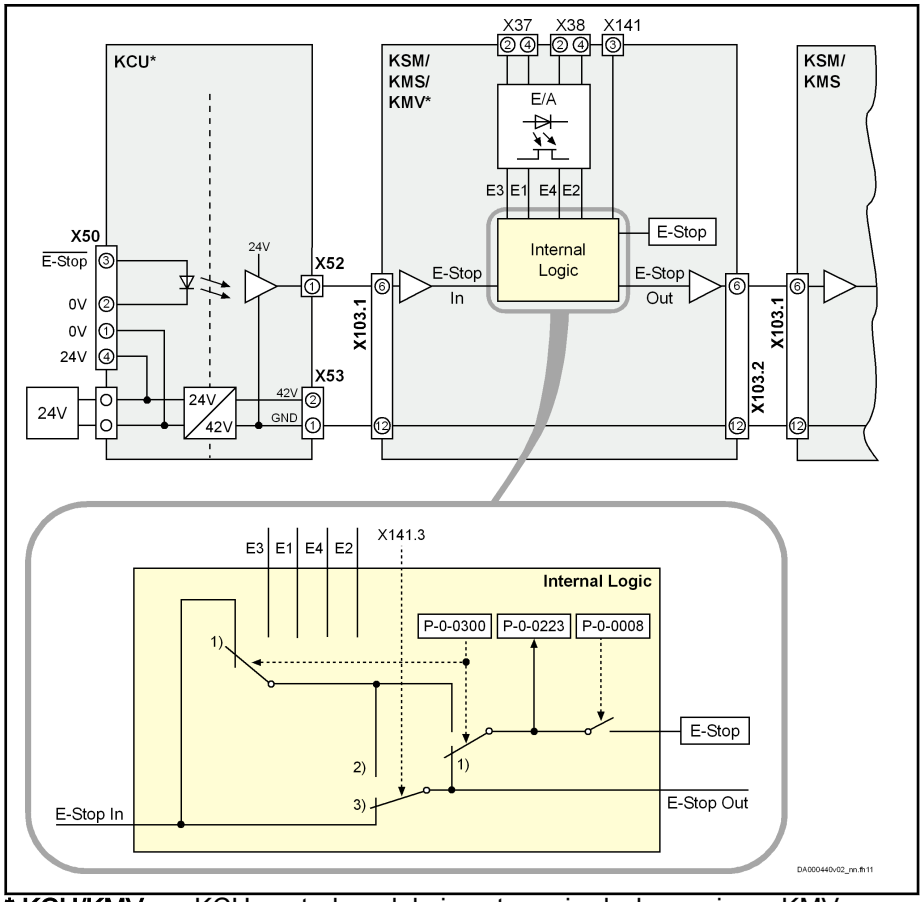
With **HCS01 + HAS05.1-023**: The E-Stop function is wired at HAS05.1-023 (X52.1.6) and transmitted to KSM/KMS via the hybrid cable.

The E-Stop signal is amplified in each KSM/KMS.

Assigning and transmitting E-Stop signals

- If a KSM/KMS/KMV has been configured as a **safety zone beginner** (X141.3 = n. c., P-0-0249 = 2) and an **E-Stop signal has been assigned** to this KSM/KMS/KMV via an I/O (X37/X38; with KMV: X37.4/X38.4), this E-Stop signal is transmitted to the subsequent KSM/KMS (parameters involved: P-0-0223, P-0-0300).

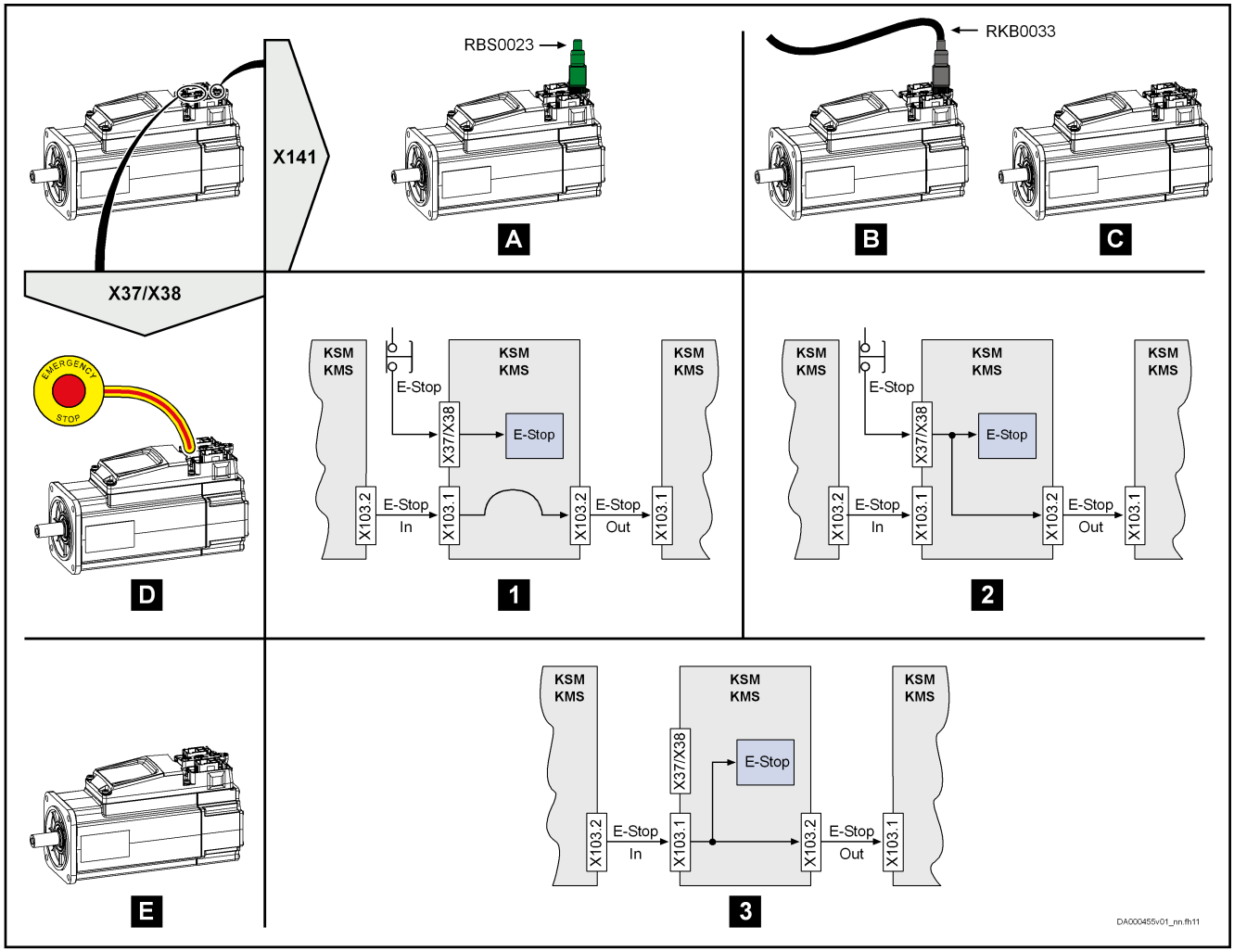
  When a new safety zone begins, a new E-Stop zone can be begun via a local I/O (X37.4/X38.4).
- If a KSM/KMS/KMV has been configured as a **safety zone beginner** (X141.3 = n. c., P-0-0249 = 2) and **no E-Stop signal has been assigned** to this KSM/KMS/KMV, the E-Stop signal of the preceding safety zone is transmitted.



*** KCU/KMV**	KCU control module is not required when using a KMV supply unit or HCS01 converter
E1, E2, E3, E4	Digital inputs
P-0-0300	Digital inputs, assignment list
P-0-0223	E-Stop input
P-0-0008	Activation E-Stop function
1)	Position of switch if P-0-0223 (E-Stop input) not entered in any element of P-0-0300 (default state)
2)	Position of switch if X141 equipped with RKB0033 cable or open; P-0-0249 = 2 (zone beginner)
3)	Position of switch if X141 equipped with RBS0023 connector; P-0-0249 = 1 (zone node)

Fig. 7-20: E-Stop zone setup

☞ The E-Stop zone setup is independent of whether a safety technology option L3 is available or not.



A	RBS0023 at X141
B	RKB0033 at X141
C	X141 not connected
D	E-Stop wired at X37/X38 and configured in P-0-0300
E	E-Stop not wired at X37/X38 and/or not configured in P-0-0300
1	Not an E-Stop zone node, local E-Stop takes effect
2	E-Stop zone beginner
3	E-Stop zone node

Fig. 7-21: Logic table of E-Stop zone setup

See also Functional Description of firmware "E-Stop function".

7.1.12 Motor fan for KSM02

Fans are not available for KSM02 motor-integrated servo drives.

7.1.13 Evaluating motor encoders at KMS

KMS02 chapter 6.4.4 "X104, motor encoder connection" on page 188

KMS03 chapter 6.5.5 "XG4, digital motor encoder connection" on page 201
chapter 6.5.6 "XG8, analog motor encoder connection" on page 203

Switching off power supply via firmware

The "parking axis" firmware command (C1600) causes the encoder power supply to be switched off.

7.1.14 Length of motor cables and encoder cables at KMS

The allowed length of motor cables at connection X156 or X104 of KMS is limited (see description of connection point X156 or X104).

7.1.15 Operation with standard motors

KMS02 near motor servo drives without X104 connection (encoder interface = "NNN") are provided for operating converter-proof standard motors.

Guide value "Rise of voltage at output"

When selecting **standard motors**, make sure that they comply with the occurring voltage load "rise of voltage at output" (see KMS data sheet).

Selecting standard motors

The table below shows the nominal powers P_{nenn} of standard motors which can be operated. The data are subject to the following conditions:

- Motor design:

  4-pole standard motor (2 pole pairs) with rated voltage 3 AC 400 V, 50 Hz at mains voltage U_{LN} ≥ 3 AC 400 V or
- Operation at minimum switching frequency $f_s = f_s$ (min.)
- Rotary field at output with $f_{out} > f_{out\_still}$
- Overload ratio K = P_{DC_peak} / P_{DC_base} according to "UEL_P_e" performance profile

Observe the performance data P_{DC_peak} and P_{DC_base} in the "UEL_P_e" performance profile of the supply unit and the performance data of the KCU drive connection box.

Selecting standard motors 3 AC 400 V - exemplary profiles

Description	Symbol	Unit	KMS02.1B-A018
Nominal power standard motor 3 AC 400 V; 50 Hz; t > 10 min; K = 1.0; f_s = 4 kHz[1)]	P_{Nenn}	kW	≤ 2.2
Nominal power standard motor 3 AC 400 V; 50 Hz; t = 60 s; T = 10 min; K = 1.1; f_s = 4 kHz[2)]	P_{Nenn}	kW	≤ 1.5
Nominal power standard motor 3 AC 400 V; 50 Hz; t = 60 s; T = 5 min; K = 1.5; f_s = 4 kHz[3)]	P_{Nenn}	kW	≤ 1.5
Nominal power standard motor 3 AC 400 V; 50 Hz; t = 2 s; T = 20 s; K = 2.0; f_s = 4 kHz[4)]	P_{Nenn}	kW	≤ 1.5
			Latest amendment: 2016-02-11*

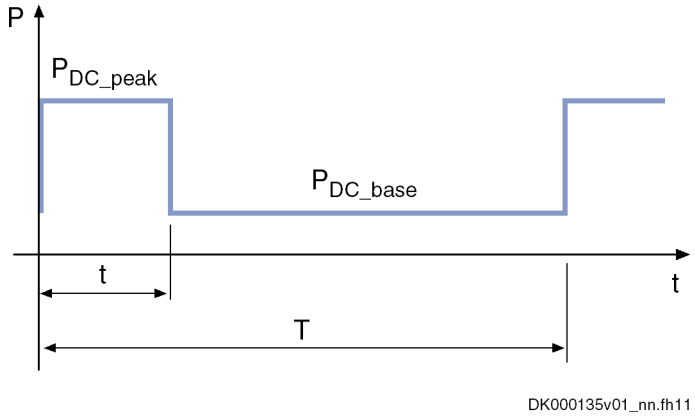
1) 2) 3) 4) See UEL_P_e profile definition

Tab. 7-7: KMS - Selecting standard motors 3 AC 400 V - exemplary profiles

Performance profile "UEL_P_e"

The following performance profiles have been defined for converters and inverters.

Observe the allowed performance data P_{DC_peak} and P_{DC_base} in the corresponding performance profile of the supply unit or converter.

Profile	Explanation
Performance profile "UEL_P_e" 	Characteristic of the selection of standard motors and servo drives.

Tab. 7-8: Definition of Performance Profiles, Infeeding Supply Units and Converters

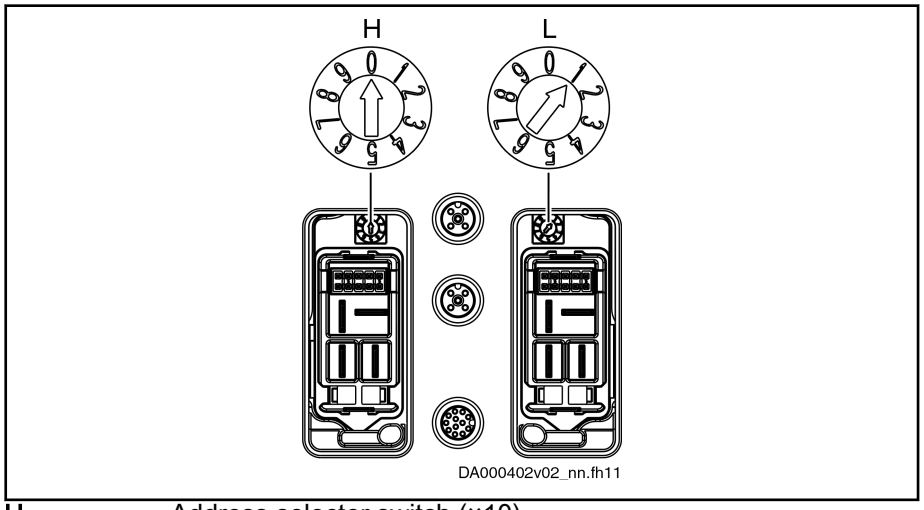
7.2 Notes on electrical project planning

7.2.1 Address Selector Switch

⚠ WARNING **High electrical voltage! Danger to life by electric shock!**

Before viewing the address, switch off power supply and wait until the 30-minute discharge time has elapsed. Pull off the connectors form X103.1 and X103.2 only thereafter.

Set the address for each KSM/KMS with the H and L rotary switches. The rotary switches are hidden under the X103.1 and X103.2 connector hoods.



H Address selector switch (×10)
L Address selector switch (×1)

Fig. 7-22: Address Selector Switch

Setting	Description
"00" H = 0 L = 0	"00" is the factory setting of the address selector switches. This setting is **not** applied. The individual drive address must be set in parameter "S-0-1040, Drive address of master communication".
"01" … "99" H = 0 … 9 L = 0 … 9 Drive address = H×10 + L	Settings of the address selector switches are applied to "S-0-1040, Drive address of master communication" during the booting process. Example for setting drive address "14": H = 1, L = 4 ⇒ drive address = 1×10 + 4 = 14
See also documentation Parameter Description: • "S-0-1040, Drive address of master communication" • "S-0-1046, List of slave addresses in device" • "P-0-4089.0.3, Device Address"	

Tab. 7-9: Setting the Drive Address at H and L

☞ **Order in drive line**

The order of the addresses in a drive line can be selected as desired.

7.2.2 IP configuration

The active Engineering IP address is contained in the parameter S-0-1020. There are two functionally different methods to write the parameter S-0-1020:

- Automatic assignment of the IP address
- Manual assignment of the IP address

Automatic assignment

Automatic setting means: The drive generates its Engineering IP address automatically with the value of the drive address (S-0-1040). The drive address can be set **via a control unit or via the address selector switches**. The IP address then consists of:

- Subnet address (192.168.0.0, after the basic parameters were loaded)
- Drive address

For automatic setting, the following conditions have to be met:

- A class C network (subnet mask: 255.255.255.0) was entered in parameter S-0-1021
- The list element 3 of the parameter S-0-1020 (address within the subnet) should not have been actively written after the basic parameters had been loaded

Example in condition as supplied:

1. Address selector switches at H = 1 and L = 3
2. Boot up the drive (drive applies the value 13 to S-0-1040)
3. Drive has the IP address 192.168.0.13 with subnet mask 255.255.255.0

Manual assignment

Manual assignment of the IP address means: The desired value is always directly written to the parameter S-0-1020. The drive address or the address selector switches are without effect.

The value in S-0-1020 is only valid after the IP settings have been activated (C6100 Command Activate IP settings) or after the drive has been booted (C6400 Reboot command) for the Engineering communication. The manual setting applies as soon as at least one of the two following conditions has been fulfilled:

- The parameter S-0-1021 contains a value other than 255.255.255.0
- The list element 3 of the parameter S-0-1020 was actively written

☞ Once the IP address has been manually written, the IP address can only be changed by writing it manually again.

Only after the basic master communication parameters have been loaded can the IP address be assigned automatically again, e.g. via the address selector switches.

7.2.3 Current limitation

The current limitation makes sure that neither drive controller nor motor are damaged by overload, as long as the motor temperature remains below

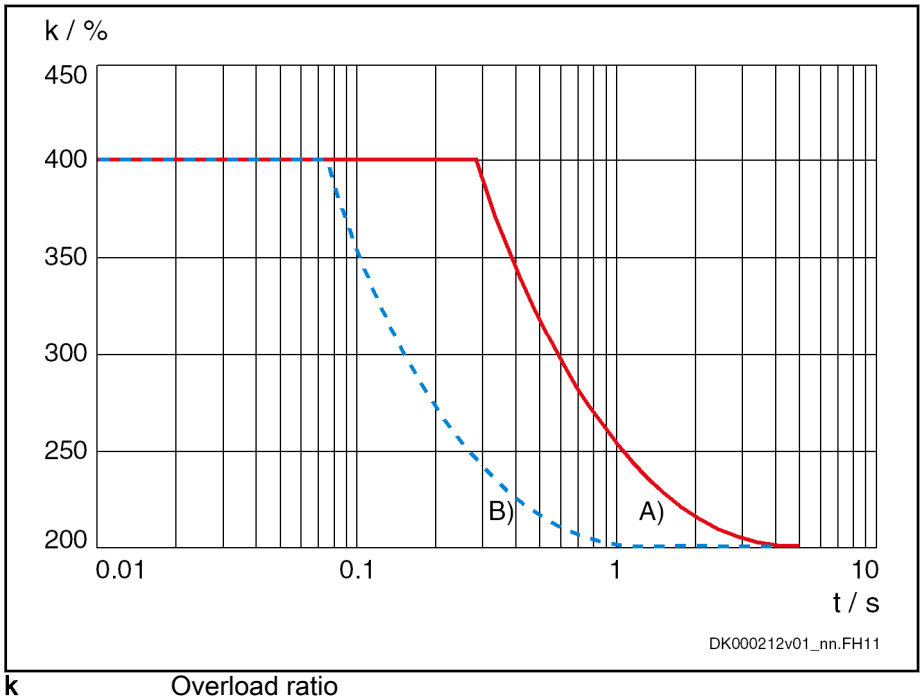
100 °C. When the temperature exceeds 100 °C, overtemperature disconnection takes place.

Above 200% of the continuous torque at standstill an I^2t limitation starts[1] . It limits the temperature of winding and electronics to the safe working range.

In standstill (rotating shaft n < ~ 60 min^{-1}), the current is limited in a more restrictive way, due to the concentration of losses in one phase. For bigger motors, the continuous torque at standstill can be less than 200% of the continuous torque at standstill 60 K.

The limitation starts at 100% of thermal controller load. To have reserve capacity (e.g., for dynamic processes or increased friction), no more than 80% of thermal controller load should be configured for the drive system. The controller load should be checked during the initial commissioning.

See also "P-0-0141, Thermal drive load"



k Overload ratio
A) Rotating shaft n > ~ 60 min^{-1}
B) Standstill n < ~ 60 min^{-1}

Fig. 7-23: Example of current limitation

To determine the resulting torque or current limitations, additionally take the motor current limitations into account. See "KSM02 characteristics" or for KMS02 the data sheet of the motor used.

7.2.4 Motor temperature

Since the electronics is thermally connected to the motor housing, the amplifier temperature is the most important load variable. This temperature is measured and can be read as parameter "S-0-0384, Amplifier temperature". It is slightly higher than the housing temperature and should not exceed 100 °C. Operation under rated conditions causes temperature rise of 60 K.

1) The product of the square of the current and the time results in a constant

If 105 °C are exceeded, the motor temperature warning is generated; after 30 seconds, power is switched off.

The motor has been correctly sized, if the difference between amplifier temperature read from the parameter and ambient temperature remains at less than 60 K in operation.

See also "S-0-0384, Amplifier temperature".

7.2.5 Switching frequency

The nominal values refer to a switching frequency of 4 kHz.

Operation with 8 kHz is possible and has the following effect:

- Continuous torque and peak torque are considerably reduced
- Higher basic losses cause higher motor temperature rise already in no-load operation

See also "P-0-0001, Switching frequency of the power output stage".

7.3 Notes on mechanical project planning

7.3.1 Mounting clearance

The mounting clearance has to comply with both mechanical and thermal requirements. The mechanical requirements are complied with by taking the dimensions of the components and their attachments (e.g., cables) into account. Observe the minimum mounting clearances (dimensions) specified in the dimensional drawings.

To comply with the thermal requirements, it has to be possible to dissipate the power dissipation generated in the mounting clearance (e.g. control cabinet) while the (local) ambient temperature does not exceed the allowed ambient temperature T_{a_work}.

KCU ventilation

Take the air intake and air outlet into account for ventilation.

Observe the data d_{top}, d_{bot} and d_{hor} in the data sheet of KCU.

KSM, KMS mounting clearance

Make sure there is sufficient heat dissipation (e.g., ventilation, surface) in the mounting clearance, particularly in the case of "closed" mounting situations. Make sure that the cooling air can freely circulate around the housing surface to avoid pockets of heat. Keep the housing surface which has a cooling effect free from insulating dirt.

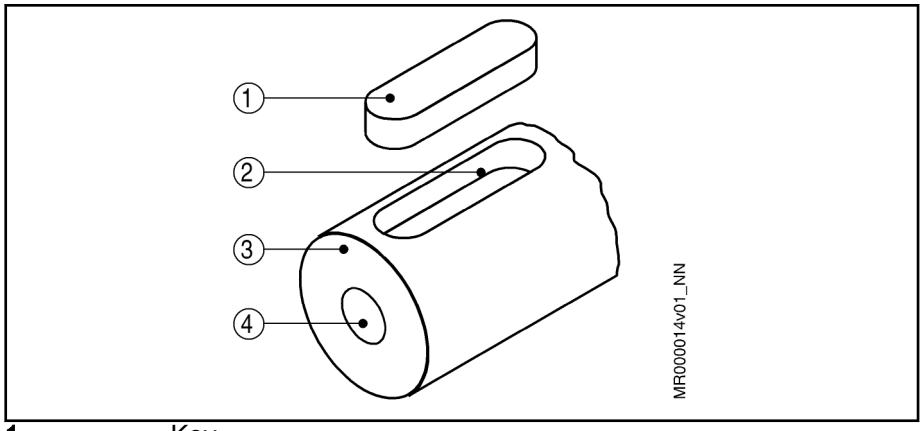
7.3.2 Output shaft

Plain shaft

The recommended standard design provides a friction-locked shaft-hub connection without backlash and excellent running smoothness. Use clamping sets, clamping sleeves or clamping elements to couple the machine elements to be driven.

Output shaft with key

The optional key according to DIN 6885, sheet 1, edition 08-1968, permits keyed transmission of torques with constant direction, with low requirements on the shaft-hub connection.



1 Key
2 Keyway
3 Motor shaft
4 Centering hole

Fig. 7-24: Output shaft with key

The machine elements to be driven additionally have to be secured in the axial direction via the centering hole on the end face.

NOTICE **Damage to the shaft! In case of intense reversing duty, the seat of the key may wear out. Increasing deformations in this area can then cause the shaft to break!**

Preferably use plain output shafts.

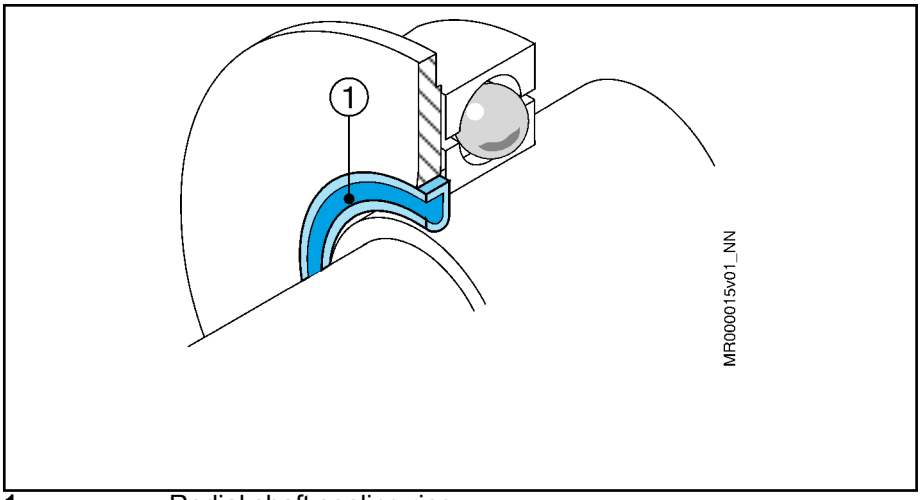
Balancing with the complete key

The motors have been balanced with the **complete** key. This means that the machine element to be driven has to be balanced without a key.

Modifications to the keys may be made only by the users themselves and on their own responsibility. Rexroth does not provide any warranty for modified keys or motor shafts.

Output shaft with shaft sealing ring

The motors have been designed with radial shaft sealing rings according to DIN 3760 - design A.



1 Radial shaft sealing ring

Fig. 7-25: Radial shaft sealing ring

Wear

Radial shaft sealing rings are rubbing seals. This means that they are subject to wear and generate frictional heat.

Wear of the rubbing seal can be reduced only if lubrication is adequate and the sealing point is clean. Here, the lubricant also acts as a coolant, supporting the discharge of frictional heat from the sealing point.

- Prevent the sealing point from becoming dry and dirty. Always ensure adequate cleanliness.

Resistance

The materials used for the radial shaft sealing rings are highly resistant to oils and chemicals. However, the suitability test for the particular operating conditions lies within the machine manufacturer's responsibility.

☞ The complex interactions between the sealing ring, the shaft and the fluid to be sealed, as well as the particular operating conditions (frictional heat, soiling, etc.), do not allow calculating the lifetime of the shaft sealing ring.

Vertical mounting positions IM V3

The degree of protection on the flange side of motors with a shaft sealing ring is IP 65. Therefore, tightness is ensured only in case of splashing fluids. Fluid levels present on side A require a higher degree of protection. If the motor is mounted in vertical position (output shaft pointing up), there should not be any fluid present at the output shaft.

Design information

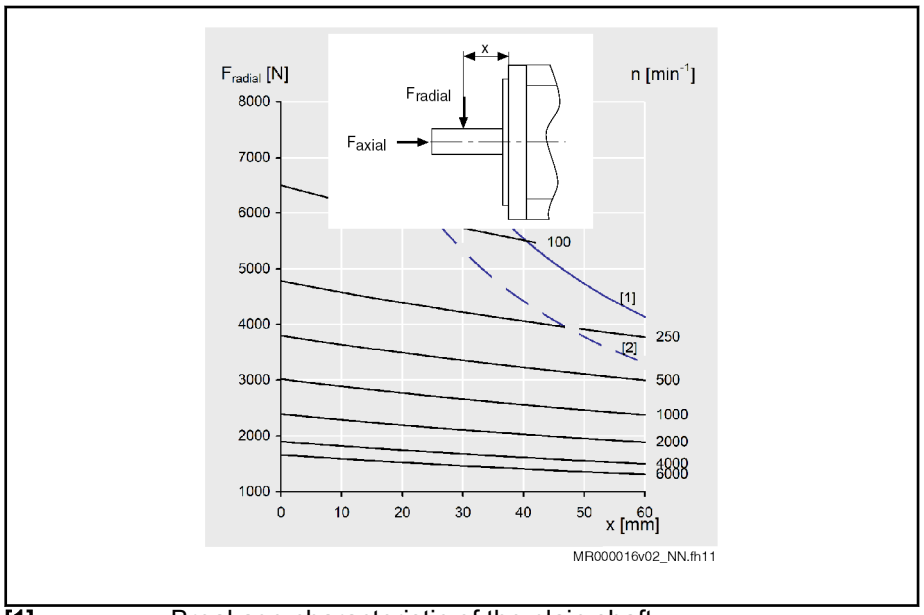
Rexroth recommends that any direct contact of the output shaft and the radial shaft sealing ring with the processing medium (coolant, material corrosion) should be avoided by the machine or installation design.

7.3.3 Bearings and shaft load

General information

During operation, both radial and axial forces act upon the motor shaft and the motor bearings. The design of the machine, the selected motor type and driving elements attached on the shaft side have to be adapted to one another to ensure that the specified load limits are not exceeded.

Radial load, axial load



[1] Breakage characteristic of the plain shaft
[2] Breakage characteristic of the shaft with keyway
n Arithmetic mean speed
x Point of application of force

Fig. 7-26: Exemplary shaft load diagram

Maximum allowed radial force F_{radial_max}

The maximum allowed radial force F_{radial_max} depends on the following factors:

- Shaft break load
- Point of application of force x
- Shaft design (plain [1]; with keyway [2])

Allowed radial force F_{radial}

The allowed radial force F_{radial} depends on the following factors:

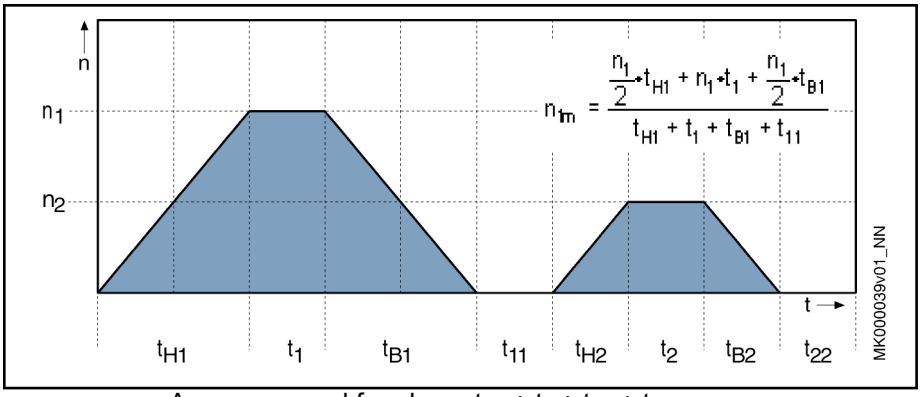
- Arithmetic mean speed (n_{mean})
- Point of application of force x
- Bearing service life

Allowed axial force F_{axial}

The maximum allowed axial force F_{axial} is specified in the technical data.

Average speed

The run-up and braking times can be ignored in the calculation, if the time in which the drive is operated at a constant speed is significantly greater than the acceleration and braking time. In the exact calculation of the average speed according to the following example, the run-up and braking times are taken into account.



n_{1m} Average speed for phase $t_{H1} + t_1 + t_{B1} + t_{11}$
n_{2m} Average speed for phase $t_{H2} + t_2 + t_{B2} + t_{22}$
n_1; n_2 Processing speed
t_{H1}; t_{H2} Run-up time
t_1; t_2 Processing time
t_{B1}; t_{B2} Braking time
t_{11}; t_{22} Standstill time

Fig. 7-27: Average speed

A complete processing cycle can consist of several phases with different speeds. In this case, the average is to be generated from all phases.

Bearing service life

The nominal service life of the bearings is L10h > 30,000 h (according to DIN ISO 281, ed. 1990), if the permissible radial and axial forces are not exceeded.

NOTICE **Risk of damage by inadmissible loads!**

Possible consequences of inadmissible loads: Premature failure of the bearings due to increased wear or mechanical damage.

Avoid exceeding the load limits.

Mechanical bearing service life at increased radial force

Otherwise, the bearing service life is reduced as follows:

$$L_{10h} = \left(\frac{F_{radial}}{F_{radial\_ist}}\right)^3 \cdot 30000$$

L_{10h} Bearing service life (according to ISO 281, ed. 12/1990)
F_{radial} Determined allowed radial force in N (newton)
F_{radial_ist} Actually acting radial force in N (newton)

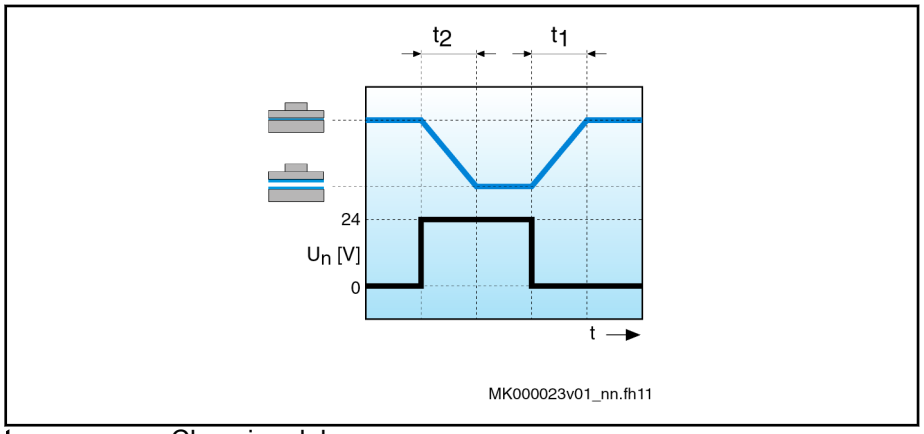
Fig. 7-28: Calculating the bearing service life L10h if the allowed radial force F_{radial} is exceeded

☞ Under no circumstances may the actually acting radial force F_{radial_act} be higher than the maximum allowed radial force F_{radial_max}.

7.3.4 Holding brakes

Brake control and supply

The integrated holding brake is supplied from the control voltage U_{N3}. It can only be switched via the firmware or SERCOS commands. It is an electrically releasing holding brake.



t_1 Clamping delay
t_2 Release delay

Fig. 7-29: Holding brake diagram

It is not allowed to use the holding brake to stop the turning motor during normal operation! The holding brake cannot be used for safety-relevant purposes either.

Holding brakes are available as an option. The supplied holding brake has been adapted to the corresponding motor!

Safety requirements

In **normal operation**, use the brake only in standstill and for performing the drive-integrated brake test. The holding brake is required for holding the axis when the machine is in a de-energized state.

Observe the safety requirements for system design:

⚠ WARNING **Dangerous movements! Danger to persons from falling or dropping axes!**

Observe supplementary standards and guidelines. For European countries:

- DIN EN 954 / 03.97 Safety-related parts of control systems

- Information Sheet for vertical axes

Published by:

Süddeutsche Metall-Berufsgenossenschaft (institution for statutory accident insurance and prevention)

Fachausschuss Eisen und Metall II (technical committee iron and metal II)

Wilhelm-Theodor-Römheld-Str. 15

55130 Mainz

USA: See National Electrical Code (NEC), National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA), as well as local engineering regulations.

Generally, the following applies: Observe the national regulations!

⇒ The standard equipment motor holding brake is not sufficient to guarantee personal safety!

⇒ Personal safety must be achieved using higher-ranking, fail-safe measures.

⇒ Block off danger zones with safety fences or safety guards.

⇒ Additionally secure vertical axes against falling or dropping after switching off the motor power by, for example:

- Mechanically securing the vertical axes
- Adding an external braking/arrester/clamping mechanism or
- Ensuring sufficient counterweight for the vertical axes
- Other appropriate measures

Controlling the holding brake

The control electronics controls the integrated holding brake which excludes user errors.

Function check

Before commissioning and in operation, check the holding brake for its function in periodic intervals (e.g., every 8 hours) with an appropriate check. By applying a defined torque to the motor, check whether the holding brake has completely released. For additional information and data, see Functional Description of firmware (index entry "Motor holding brake → Function check").

Electrically releasing holding brake

The **electrically releasing** holding brake is used to hold the axes at standstill and when the drive enable signal is off. When the supply voltage fails and the drive enable signal has been switched off, the **electrically releasing** holding brake will automatically apply.

NOTICE **Risk of damage!**

Do not use the holding brake as a service brake for moving axes.

Sizing holding brakes

The physical conditions of holding brakes require two states to be considered. In addition to normal operation, failures have to be considered. The effective braking torques are physically different:

Normal operation

In **normal operation**, using the holding brake for clamping (holding) an axis in standstill, the "static holding torque" (M4) – static friction (friction coefficient μ_H) specified in the data sheets takes effect.

Failure (E-Stop)

In the case of **failure (E-Stop)**, where the holding brake is used to decelerate a moving axis, the "dynamic braking torque" – sliding friction (friction coefficient μ_G) applies.

The dynamic braking torque is lower than the indicated static holding torque M4. It is approx. 0.75 … 0.8 x M4. Therefore, observe the following description of dynamic sizing.

Dynamic sizing

The load torque has to be lower than the minimum dynamic torque which the brake can provide. Otherwise, the dynamic brake torque is not sufficient to stop the axis.

If a mass is to be decelerated in a defined time or over a defined distance, the mass inertia of the whole system additionally has to be taken into account.

Other important aspects for sizing

The holding brake is not a safety brake (cf. DIN EN 954 / 03.97 and Information Sheet for vertical axes published by the institution for statutory accident insurance and prevention ["Süddeutsche Metall-Berufsgenossenschaft"]). Due to uncontrollable adverse factors, such as film rust on the brake friction surface, the holding brake torque can be reduced. Additionally, overvoltage and too high temperatures can weaken the permanent magnets and the brake.

Sizing - Recommendation

Considering these factors, the following recommendation can be made for sizing holding brakes at axes:

The holding torque required for the application should not exceed a maximum of 60% of the static holding torque (M4) of the holding brake used.

NOTICE **Holding torque reduction and premature wear occur when braking moving axes!**

Do not use the holding brake to stop a moving axis during normal operation. This is allowed for E-Stop situations only. In this situation, the specified rated torque of the holding brake (M4) is reduced to the dynamic braking torque. Complete deterioration of the holding brake can be expected after approx. 20,000 revolutions of the brake when applied.

Observe the commissioning instructions for holding brakes. See also Functional Description of firmware (index entry "Motor holding brake → Operating behavior").

7.3.5 Mechanically attaching driving elements

General information

For all driving elements attched to the output shaft (e.g., gearboxes, couplings, pinions), the following instructions absolutely have to be observed.

Redundant bearings

Generally, redundant bearings are to be avoided by all means when attaching driving elements. The tolerances inevitably present in such cases will lead to additional forces acting on the bearing of the motor shaft and, should the occasion arise, to a distinctly reduced service life of the bearing.

☞ If redundant attachment cannot be avoided, it is absolutely necessary that you consult Rexroth.

Gearbox attachment

The machine design and the attachment elements used have to be carefully adapted to the motor type so that the load limits of shaft and bearing are not exceeded.

When gearboxes are attached to motors, this changes the thermal connection of the motor to the machine or installation design.

According to the gearbox type, the heat generation at the gearbox is different. In any case, gearbox attachment reduces the heat dissipation of the motor via the flange. This has to be taken into account when doing the project planning for the installation.

To avoid thermal overload of motors when using gearboxes, it is necessary to reduce the specified performance data.

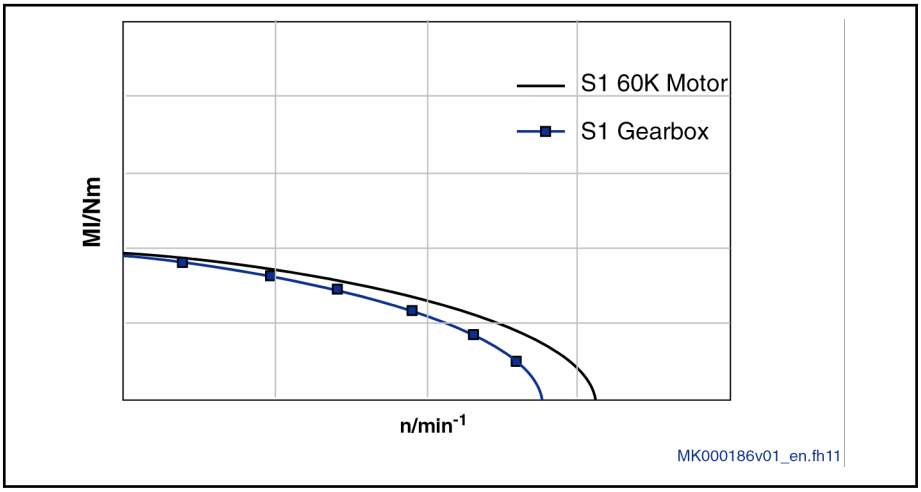


Fig. 7-30: Qualitative change in the S1 characteristic in the case of gearbox attachment

☞ The torques specified in the motor characteristics have to be reduced by approx. **10–20%** when gearboxes are attached.

Observe all other notes and requirements contained in the documentations on the gearboxes used.

Coupling attachment

The machine design and the attached elements used have to be carefully adapted to the motor type so that the load limits of shaft and bearing are not exceeded.

NOTICE **Risk of damage!**

When connecting extremely stiff couplings, the radial force which constantly changes the angular position may cause an impermissibly high load on the shaft and bearing.

Bevel gear pinions or skew bevel driving pinions

Owing to thermal effects, the flange-side end of the output shaft may offset by up to 0.6 mm in relation to the motor housing. If helical driving pinions or bevel gear pinions directly attached to the output shaft are used, this change in position will lead to

- a shift in the position of the axis, if the driving pinions are not axially fixed on the machine side
- a thermally dependent component of the axial force, if the driving pinions are axially fixed on the machine side.

  This causes the risk of exceeding the maximum allowed axial force or of the backlash within the gears increasing to an inadmissible degree.

☞ In such cases, you should therefore preferably use drive elements with their own bearings which are connected to the motor shaft via axially compensating couplings.

8 Identification

8.1 Scope of supply

8.1.1 KCU02

Standard	Optional
• KCU02 • Documentation	• HAS01.1-050 connection and mounting accessory • HAS02.1-015 accessory for shield connection • HAS03 mounting accessory • RKB0021 long Multi-Ethernet cable • RKB0013 short Multi-Ethernet cable

Tab. 8-1: Scope of supply

8.1.2 KSM02/KMS02

Standard	Optional
• KSM02 or • KMS02 • Documentation • System type plate	• **RBS0023** Connector for safety zone node • **RKB0033** Safety technology cable (X141 ↔ external safety unit) • **RKB0043** Cable for communication (M12-D ↔ M12-D) • **RKB0044** Cable for communication (M12-D ↔ RJ-45) • **RKS0010** Interface cable (M12-A ↔ open ends) • **HAS10** Fixing clip for hybrid cables

Tab. 8-2: Scope of supply

8.1.3 KMS03

Standard	Optional
• KMS03 • Documentation • System type plate	• RBS0023 Connector for safety zone node • RKB0033 Safety technology cable (X141 ↔ external safety unit) • RKB0043 Cable for communication (M12-D ↔ M12-D) • RKB0044 Cable for communication (M12-D ↔ RJ-45) • RKS0010 Interface cable (M12-A ↔ open ends) • HAS05.1-018 Dummy plate for KMS03 encoder connection • HAS10 Fixing clip for hybrid cables

Tab. 8-3: Scope of supply

8.1.4 KMV03

Standard	Optional
• KMV03 • Documentation • System type plate	• HAS05.1-020 KMV03 control voltage • HAS10 Fixing clip for hybrid cables

Tab. 8-4: Scope of supply

8.1.5 KNK03

Standard	Optional
• KNK03 • System type plate	• HAS05.1-019 KNK03 mains voltage

Tab. 8-5: Scope of supply

8.1.6 KLC03

Standard	Optional
• KLC03 • System type plate	-

Tab. 8-6: Scope of supply

8.2 Identifying and checking the delivered components

8.2.1 KSM type plate

Arrangement

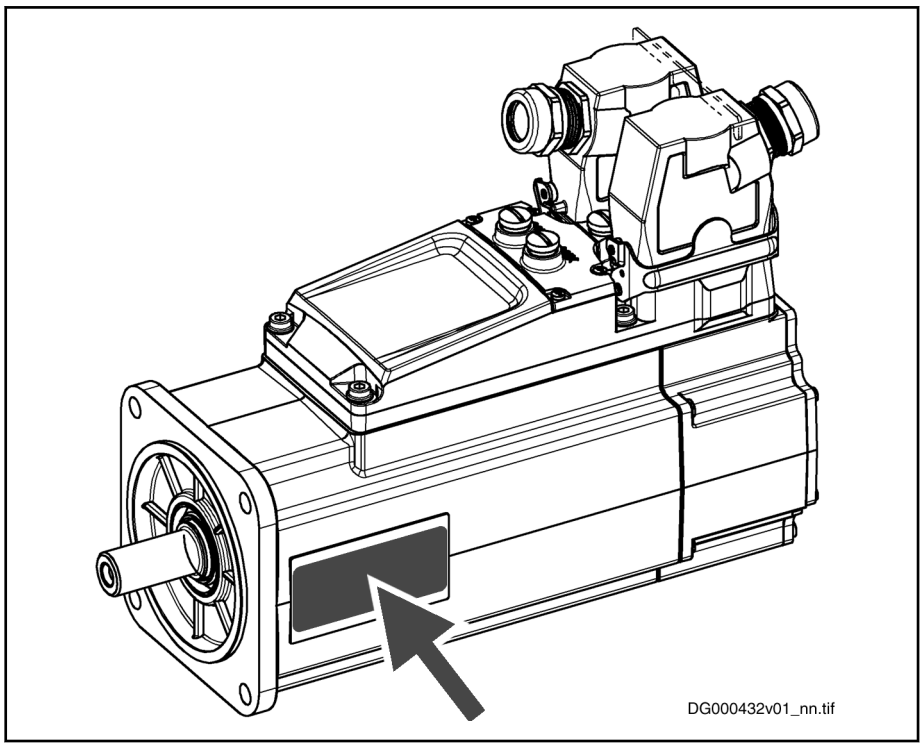
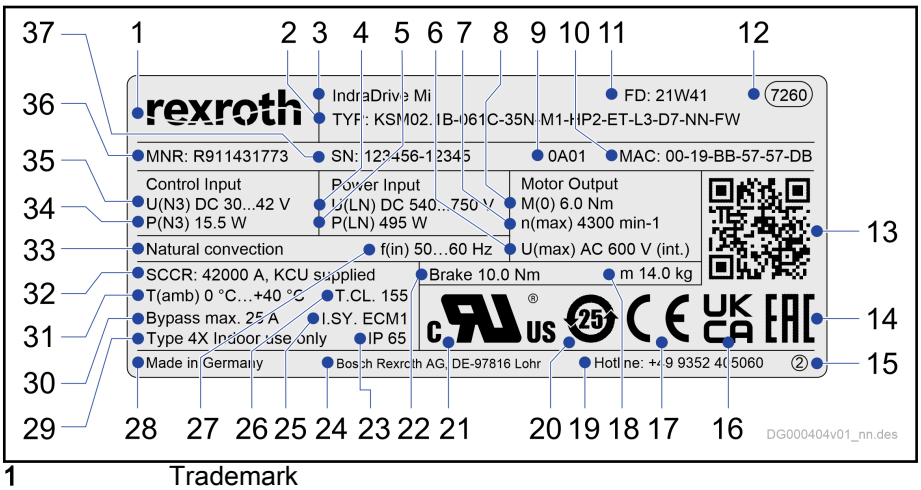


Fig. 8-1: Type plate arrangement

Structure



1	Trademark
2	Type designation
3	Product range
4	Rated input voltage, power (UL)
5	Rated power (t > 10 min)
6	Max. supply voltage
7	Maximum speed
8	Continuous torque at standstill
9	Hardware revision index
10	MAC address (Ethernet ID)
11	Production date
12	Manufacturing plant
13	QR code
14	EAC conformity mark
15	Manufacturer code
16	UKCA conformity mark
17	CE conformity mark
18	Mass
19	Service hotline
20	China RoHS 2
21	UL label
22	Holding brake torque (optional)
23	Degree of protection according to IEC 60529
24	Company address
25	Insulation system
26	Insulation class according to EN 60085
27	Input frequency
28	Country of manufacture
29	Ambient conditions acc. to UL50/50E
30	Maximum bypass current (UL)
31	Ambient temperature during operation
32	Short circuit current rating (UL); SCCR
33	Cooling type
34	Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3} (UL)
35	Rated control voltage input (UL)
36	Material number
37	Serial number

Fig. 8-2: KSM type plate

System type plate

chapter 8.2.7 "System type plate (module of configured variants)" on page 281

8.2.2 KMS02 type plate

Arrangement

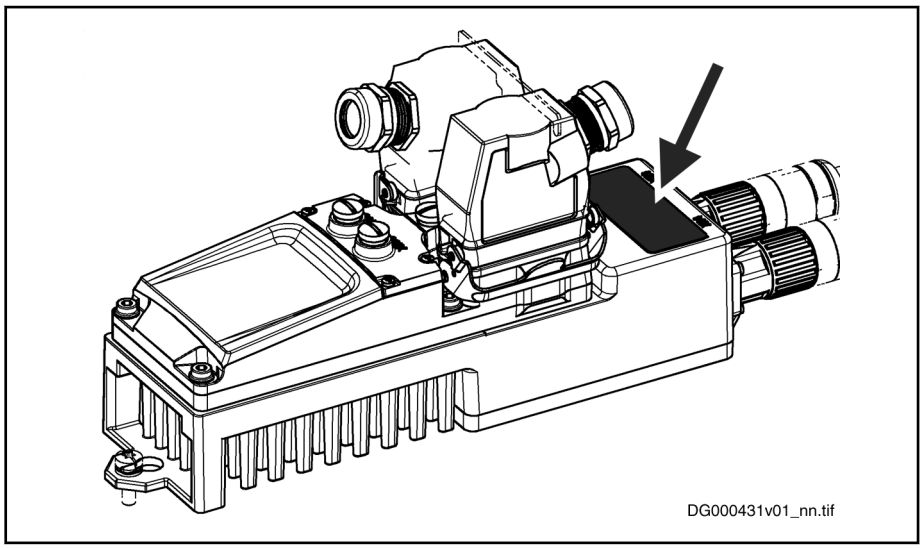
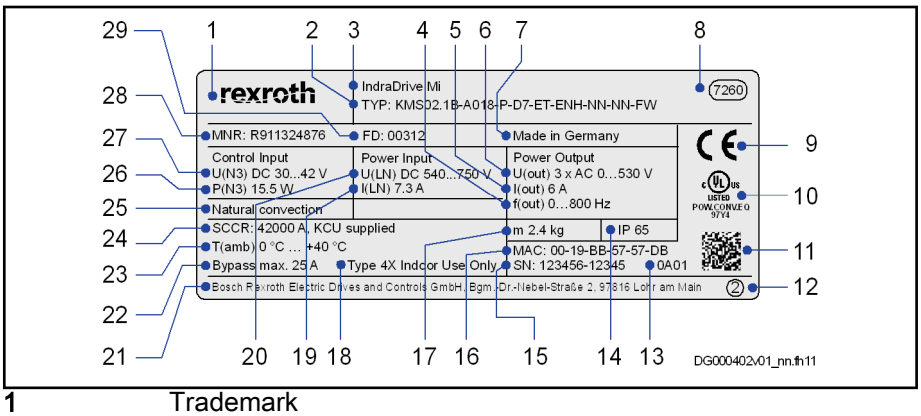


Fig. 8-3: Type plate arrangement

Design



1	Trademark
2	Type designation
3	Product range
4	Output frequency range
5	Output current
6	Output voltage
7	Country of manufacture
8	Manufacturing plant
9	CE conformity label
10	UL label
11	2-D bar code
12	Manufacturer code
13	Hardware revision index
14	Degree of protection in accordance with IEC 60529
15	Serial number
16	MAC address (Ethernet ID)
17	Mass
18	Ambient conditions according to UL50/50E
19	Rated input current (UL)
20	Rated input voltage (UL)
21	Company address
22	Maximum bypass current (UL)
23	Allowed ambient temperature
24	Short circuit current rating (UL)
25	Cooling type
26	Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3} (UL)
27	Rated control voltage input (UL)
28	Parts number
29	Production date

Fig. 8-4: Type Plate KMS02

System type plate

chapter 8.2.7 "System type plate (module of configured variants)" on page 281

8.2.3 KMS03 type plate

Arrangement

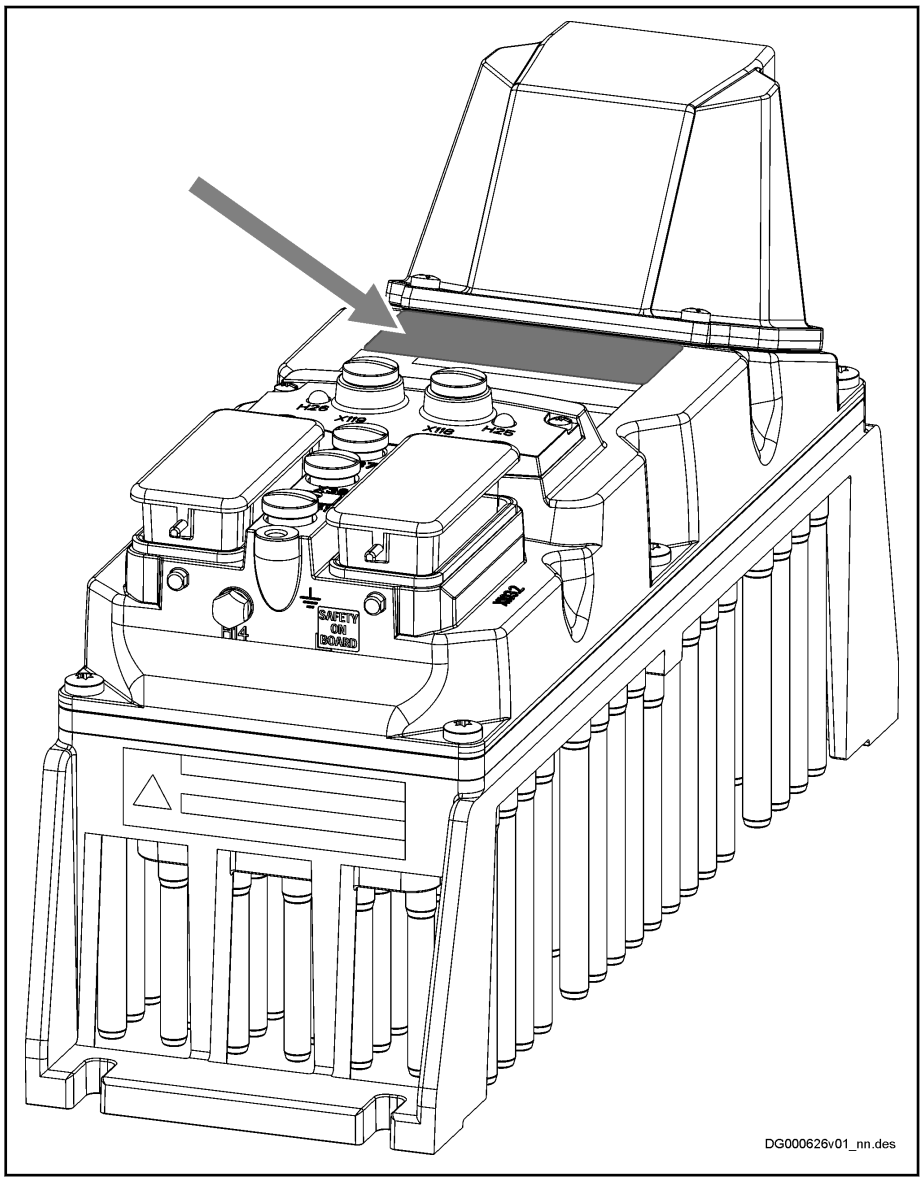
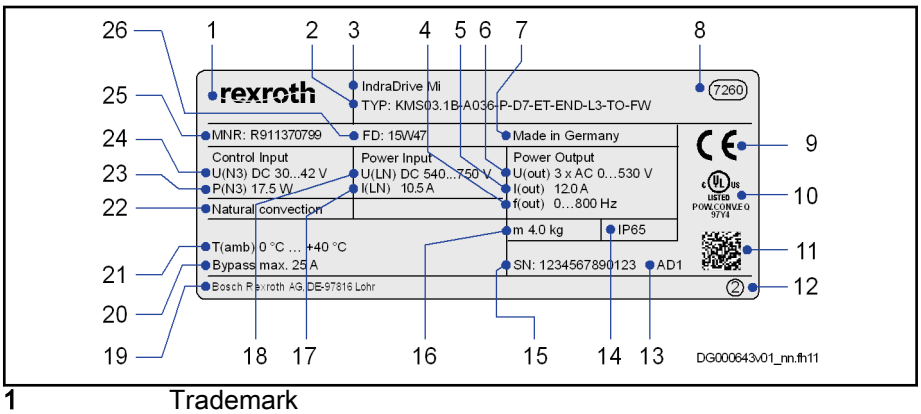


Fig. 8-5: Type plate arrangement

Structure



1	Trademark
2	Type designation
3	Product range
4	Output frequency range
5	Output current
6	Output voltage
7	Country of manufacture
8	Manufacturing plant
9	CE conformity mark
10	UL label
11	2-D bar code
12	Manufacturer code
13	Hardware revision index
14	Degree of protection according to IEC 60529
15	Serial number
16	Mass
17	Rated input current
18	Rated input voltage
19	Company address
20	Maximum through current
21	Allowed ambient temperature
22	Cooling type
23	Rated power consumption control voltage input at U_{N3}
24	Rated control voltage input
25	Material number
26	Production date

Fig. 8-6: KMS03 type plate

System type plate

chapter 8.2.7 "System type plate (module of configured variants)" on page 281

8.2.4 KMV03 type plate

Arrangement

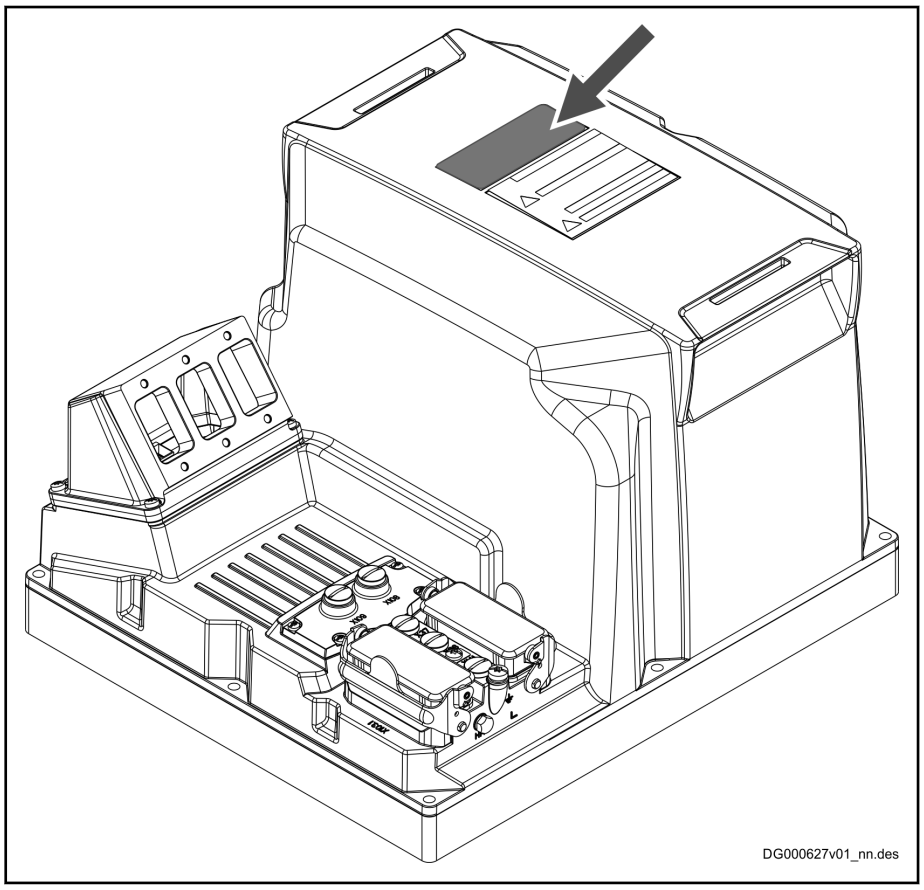
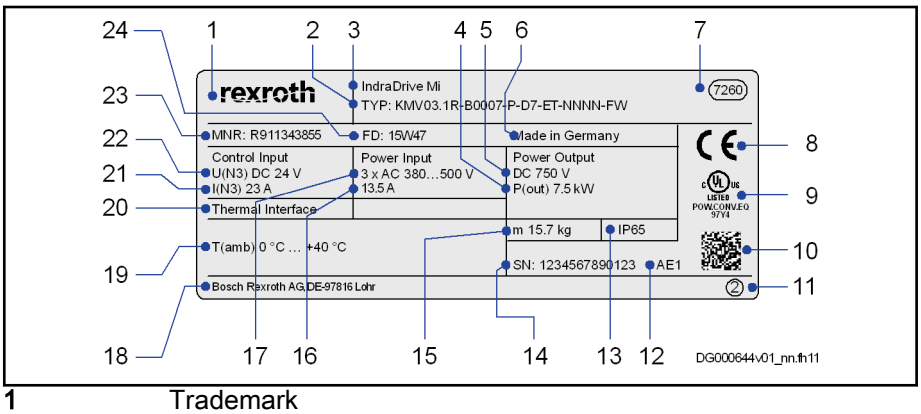


Fig. 8-7: Type plate arrangement

Design



1	Trademark
2	Type designation
3	Product range
4	Nominal power
5	DC bus voltage
6	Country of manufacture
7	Manufacturing plant
8	CE conformity mark
9	UL label
10	2-D bar code
11	Manufacturer code
12	Hardware revision index
13	Degree of protection according to IEC 60529
14	Serial number
15	Mass
16	Rated input current
17	Rated input voltage
18	Company address
19	Allowed ambient temperature
20	Cooling type
21	Rated control current input
22	Rated control voltage input
23	Material number
24	Production date

Fig. 8-8: KMV03 type plate

System type plate

chapter 8.2.7 "System type plate (module of configured variants)" on page 281

8.2.5 KNK03 type plate

Arrangement

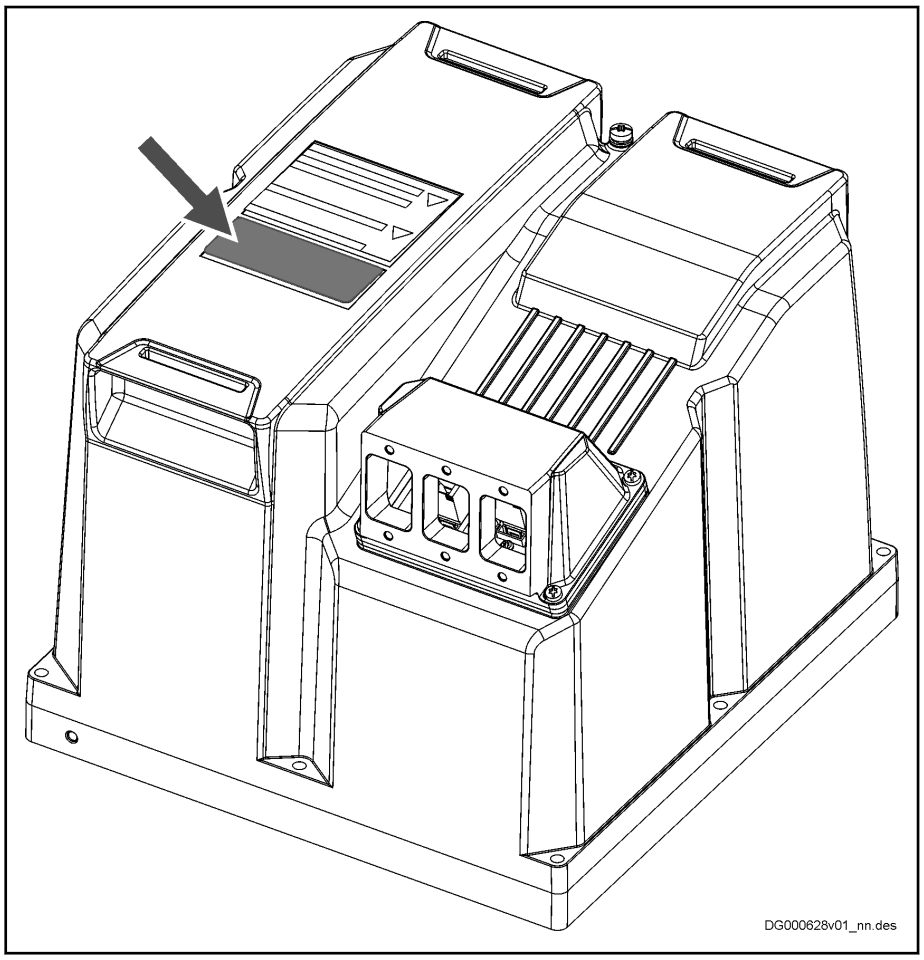
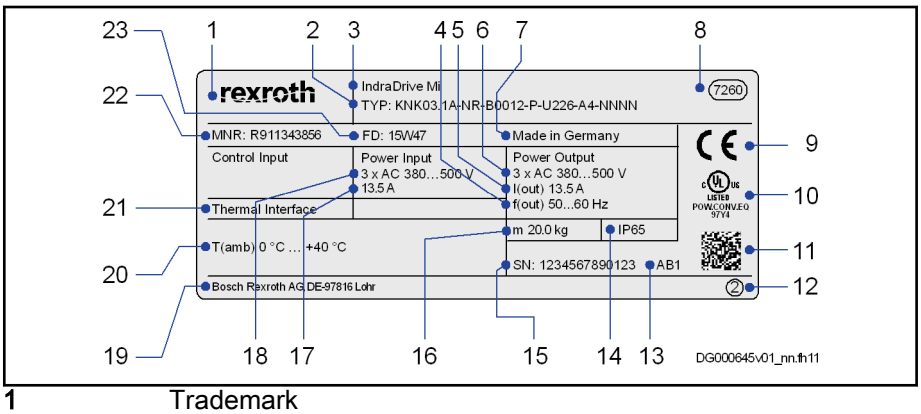


Fig. 8-9: Type plate arrangement

A second type plate is enclosed with the product.

Structure



1	Trademark
2	Type designation
3	Product range
4	Frequency range
5	Output current
6	Output voltage
7	Country of manufacture
8	Manufacturing plant
9	CE conformity mark
10	UL label
11	2-D bar code
12	Manufacturer code
13	Hardware revision index
14	Degree of protection according to IEC 60529
15	Serial number
16	Mass
17	Rated input current
18	Rated input voltage
19	Company address
20	Allowed ambient temperature
21	Cooling type
22	Material number
23	Production date

Fig. 8-10: KNK03 type plate

8.2.6 KLC03 type plate

Arrangement

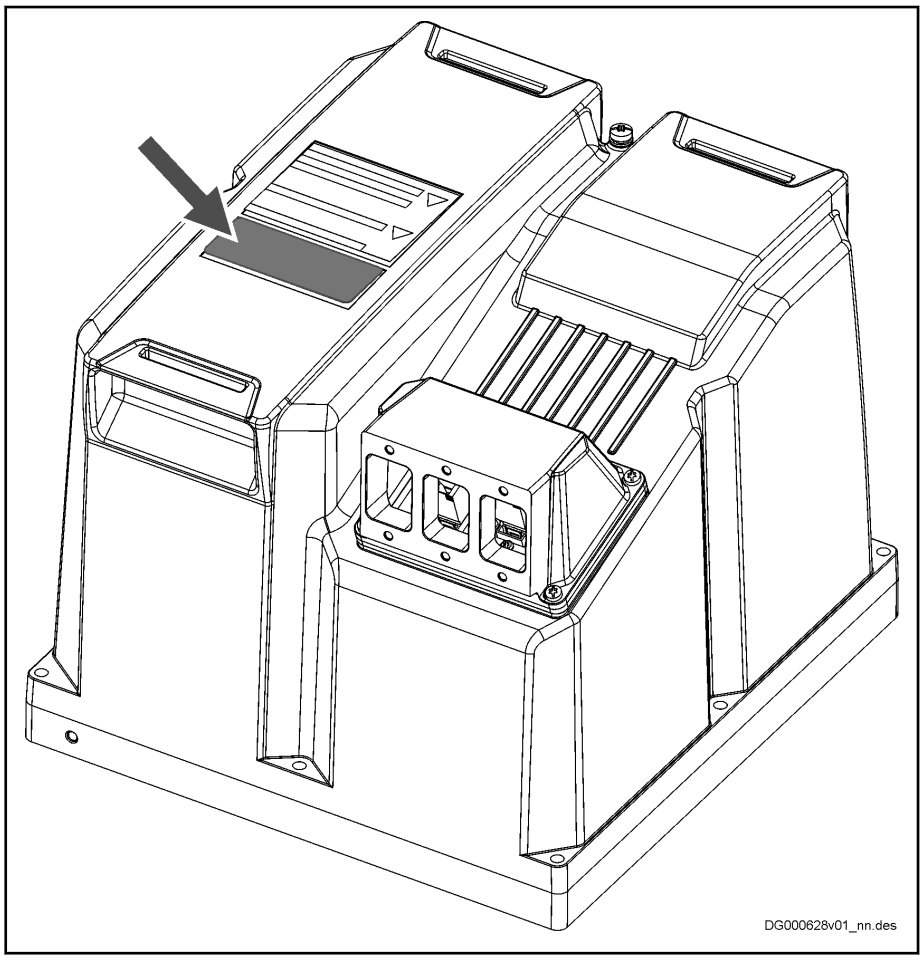
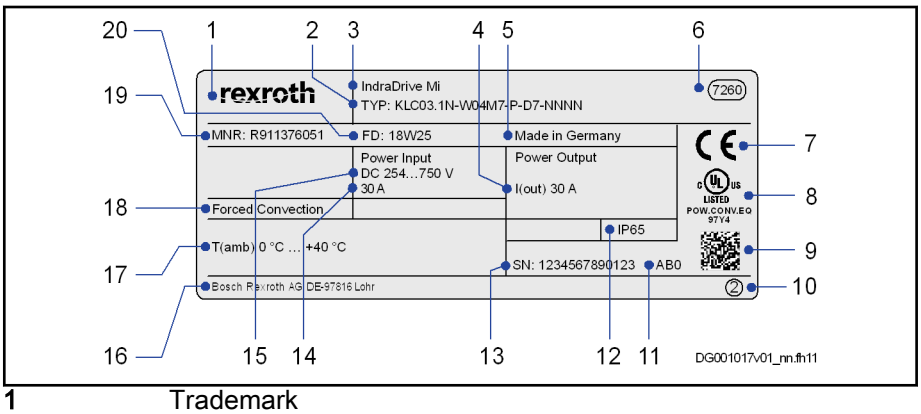


Fig. 8-11: Type plate arrangement

A second type plate is enclosed with the product.

Structure



1	Trademark
2	Type designation
3	Product range
4	Output current
5	Country of manufacture
6	Manufacturing plant
7	CE conformity mark
8	UL label
9	2-D bar code
10	Manufacturer code
11	Hardware revision index
12	Degree of protection according to IEC 60529
13	Serial number
14	Input current
15	Input voltage
16	Company address
17	Allowed ambient temperature
18	Cooling type
19	Material number
20	Production date

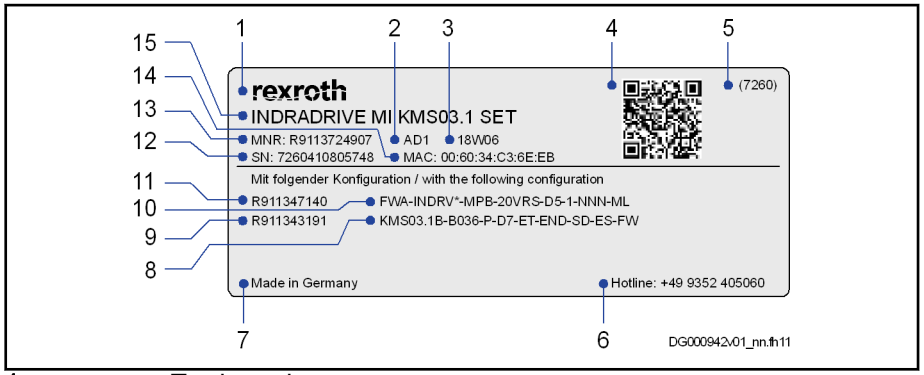
Fig. 8-12: KLC03 type plate

8.2.7 System type plate (module of configured variants)

A module of configured variants consists of multiple individual components of a system.

There are system type plates for components such as KMV03, KMS03, KMS02 or KSM02. A copy of the system type plate is enclosed with the products.

The figure below illustrates the exemplary system type plate of a module of configured variants (SET) with the KMS03 component.

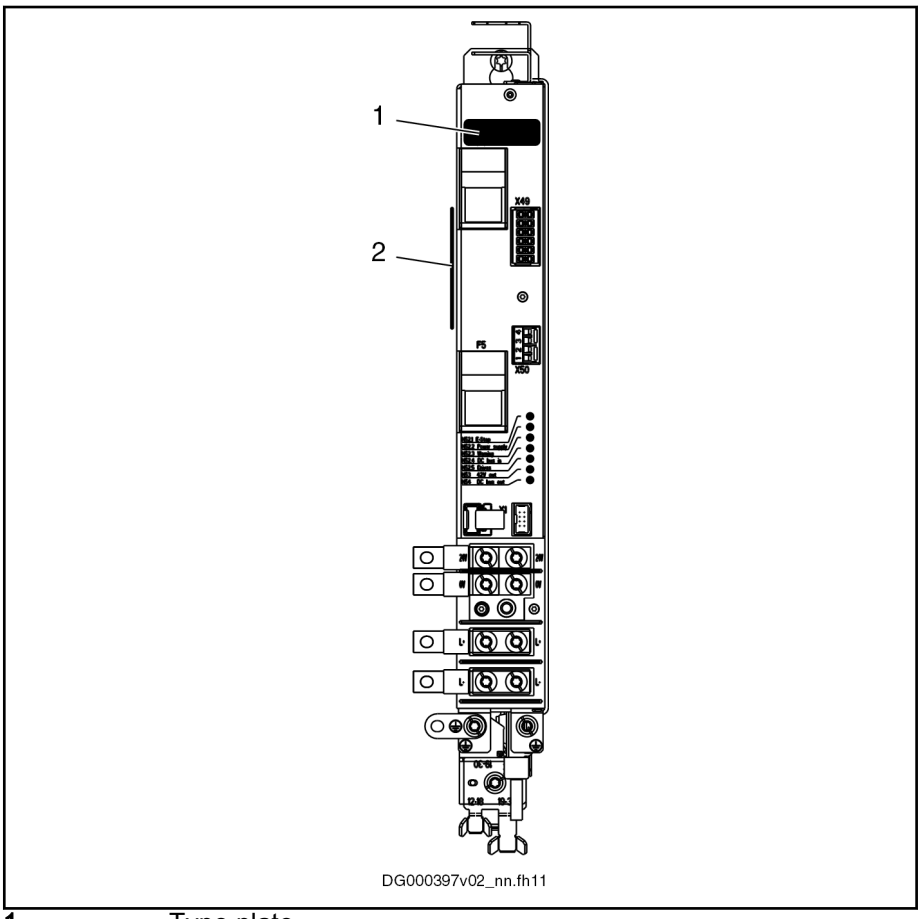


1	Trademark
2	Revision index
3	Production date (YYWww)
4	QR code
5	Manufacturing plant
6	Service hotline
7	Country of manufacture
8	Component A
9	Component A material number
10	Component B
11	Component B material number
12	Serial number, module of configured variants
13	Material number, module of configured variants
14	MAC address (Ethernet ID)
15	Type designation

Fig. 8-13: System type plate

8.2.8 Plates at KCU02

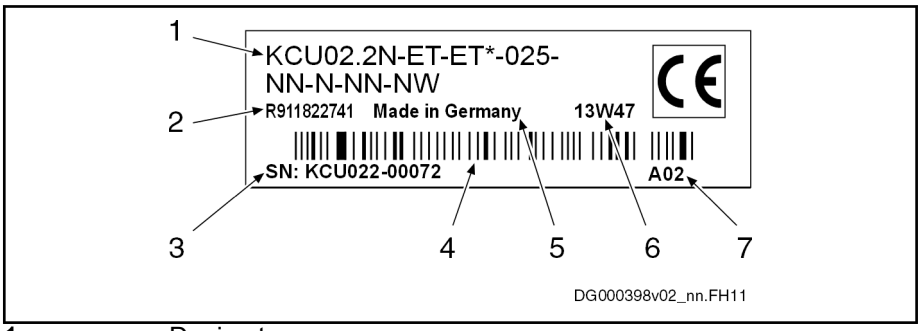
Arrangement



1 Type plate
2 UL performance data plate

Fig. 8-14: Arrangement of the plates

Type plate design



1 Device type
2 Material number
3 Serial number
4 Bar code
5 Country of manufacture
6 Production week; example 13W47: year 2013, week 47
7 Hardware revision index

Fig. 8-15: Type Plate

Design of UL performance data plate

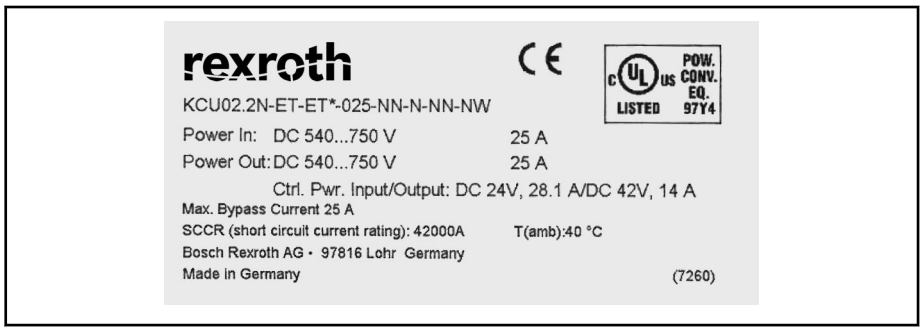


Fig. 8-16: UL performance data plate

9 Mounting and installation

9.1 Introduction

9.1.1 Important notes

Safety

⚠ WARNING **Injuries caused by live parts! Lifting of heavy loads!**

Install the motors only when they have been de-energized and are not connected electrically.

Use suitable lifting gear, protective equipment and protective clothing during transport.

Observe the safety instructions contained in the preceding chapters.

Carry out all working steps with particular care. In this way, you minimize the risk of accidents and damages.

Qualified technical staff

Any work at the installation and the drives or in their vicinity may be carried out only by appropriately trained technical staff.

Make sure that all persons carrying out installation work, maintenance work or operational activities at the installation are adequately familiar with the contents of this documentation, as well as with all warnings and precautionary measures contained therein.

Qualified technical staff must be trained, instructed and qualified to switch electrical circuits and devices on and off in accordance with technical safety regulations, to ground them and to mark them. Qualified technical staff must possess appropriate safety equipment and have been trained in first aid.

Handling the devices

⚠ CAUTION **Injuries or damage and invalidation of the warranty due to improper handling!**

Avoid mechanical stressing, throwing, tipping or dropping of the products.

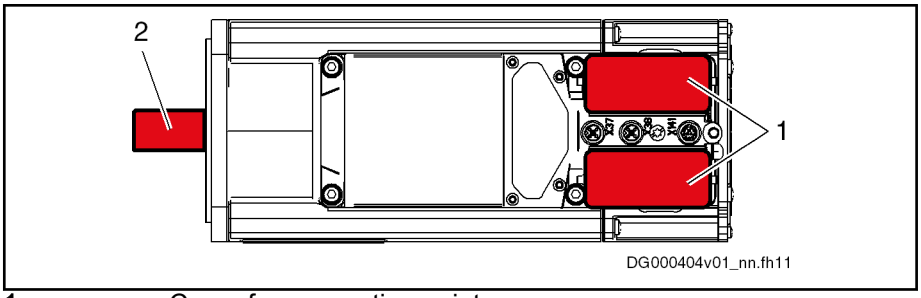
Use only suitable lifting gear.

Use suitable protective equipment and protective clothing during transport. Wear safety shoes.

Protect the products against dampness and corrosion.

At delivery, the output shafts have protective sleeves and the connection points have covers. During transport and storage, the protective sleeves and covers must be attached to the device.

- Remove the protective sleeves just before mounting.
- Also use the protective sleeves if you return the goods.



1 Cover for connection point
2 Protective sleeve for shaft

Fig. 9-1: Protective sleeves

- Avoid damage to the motor flange and drive shaft.
- Avoid impacts on the drive shaft.

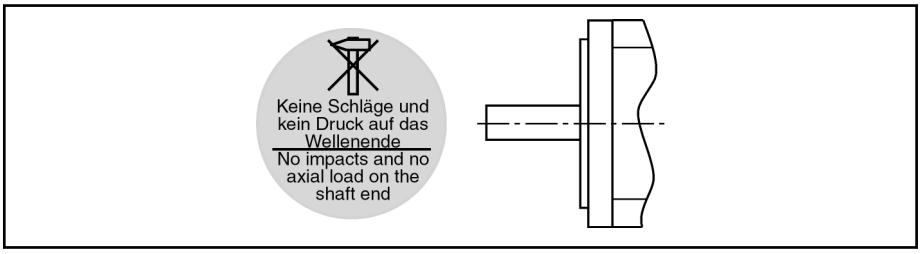


Fig. 9-2: Handling the shaft end

Impacts on the shaft end damage encoder and ball bearing! Driving elements, such as pulleys, coupling disks or toothed wheels, may only be mounted or dismounted by evenly heating up the driving elements or with the appropriate tool for mounting and dismounting.

9.1.2 System overview

Available connection points

The electrical connections of all sizes of KSM/KMS have been standardized:

- Two **power connections** (hybrid connectors for power, control voltage, master communication and status messages) to loop through the bus cable
- Two **I/O connectors** (M12, 5-pin)
- One **safety technology** interface (M12, 12-pin)
- Optional: two connection points for connecting the communication (M12, 4-pin)

Notes All connections have been designed as plug-in connectors. This ensures easy, quick and error-safe mounting and commissioning when using ready-made Rexroth connection cables.

9.1.3 Cold plate

Required cold plate properties:

Description	Unit	Value
Surface temperature	°C	≤ 60
Flatness	mm	≤ 0.1
Surface roughness	-	Rz 6.3

Tab. 9-1: Cold plate

9.2 KSM

9.2.1 Required Steps to Follow

Preparations for Mounting

Make the following preparations for mounting:

1. Procure tools, auxiliary materials, measuring and test equipment.
2. Check all components for visible damage. Defective components mustn't be mounted.
3. Ensure that dimensions and tolerances on the installation side are suitable for motor attachment (for details, see dimensional drawing).
4. Check whether all components, mounting surfaces and threads are clean.
5. Ensure that mounting can be done in a dry and dust-free environment.
6. Ensure that the holder for the motor flange is without burrs.
7. Remove the protective sleeve of the motor shaft and keep it for further use.

If the Optional Holding Brake is Used

Check whether the motor holding brake attains the holding torque specified in the data sheet. If the holding brake does not attain the specified holding torque, check the functioning of the holding brake (see chapter "Holding Brake – Commissioning and Maintenance Instructions " on page 379).

Mounting KSM

Mounting for Easy Servicing

To allow trouble-free servicing, make sure that the following aspects are fulfilled after you have mounted KSM:

- Connection points X37, X38 and X141 are easily accessible
- Connection points X108 and X109 are easily accessible

  To allow easy and quick drive diagnostics, the terminal connector of the communication cable should be extended to a directly accessible point
- Address selector switches are easily accessible
- Diagnostic LED H14 is visible

Notes on Mounting

- Avoid jamming or getting stuck of the centering collar on the motor side.
- Avoid damage to the insertion fitting on the installation side.
- Check the stability and precision of the connection before you proceed.

9.2.2 Mechanical Interfaces

Flange Mounting

Motor-integrated servo drives KSM are manufactured for flange mounting (type of construction B05). Details for the mounting holes can be found in the corresponding dimensional drawing.

For flange mounting, we recommend using the screws and tightening torques listed in the table below.

Motor size	Recommended screw size	Tightening torque [Nm]	Minimum strength
KSM02.1B-041	M6	10,4	8.8
KSM02.1B-061	M8	25	8.8
KSM02.1B-071 KSM02.1B-076	M10	51	8.8
The screw specifications apply when screwed into steel; for other materials, determine the reach of the screws.			

Tab. 9-2: Mounting Screws

☞ The screwed connections for flange assembly must be able to take up both the force due to weight of the motor and the forces acting during operation.

9.2.3 Practical tips

⚠ WARNING **High electrical voltage! Danger to life by electric shock!**

Never remove live hybrid cable connectors (X103.1, X103.2).

Observe the following aspects for installation and mounting:

- The hybrid cable coming from the supply unit has to be plugged in X103.1 of the first KSM/KMS of a drive line.
- KSM/KMS have been equipped with two power connectors X103.1 and X103.2 which allow the hybrid cable to be looped through. Depending on the configuration, KSM/KMS is provided with a terminal connector at X103.2.

9.3 KMS

9.3.1 Required steps to follow

Preparations for mounting

Make the following preparations for mounting:

1. Procure tools, auxiliary materials, measuring and test equipment.
2. Check all components for visible damage. Defective components mustn't be mounted.
3. Ensure that dimensions and tolerances on the installation side are suitable for attachment (for details, see dimensional drawing).
4. Check whether all components, mounting surfaces and threads are clean.
5. Ensure that mounting can be done in a dry and dust-free environment.

Mounting KMS

Notes on mounting

1. To allow trouble-free **servicing**, make sure that the following aspects are fulfilled after KSM has been mounted:
   - Connection points are easily accessible
   - Address selector switches are easily accessible
   - Diagnostic LED is visible
2. **Preferably mount the device to a conductive surface**. If this is impossible, later on connect the second connection point of equipment grounding conductor at the device to the equipment grounding system of the installation.
3. For the dimensions of the mounting holes, see the dimensional drawing of the device.
4. Data of the **mounting screws**:

   Devices of cooling type "B":
   - Thread: M5
   - Tightening torque: 6.1 Nm

   Devices of cooling type "A":
   - Thread: M6
   - Tightening torque: 10.4 Nm

Cold plate

Devices of cooling type "B" are mounted on a cold plate.

Required cold plate properties:

See chapter 9.1.3 "Cold plate" on page 287.

9.4 KCU02

9.4.1 Mounting depths

Adjusting Mounting Depths

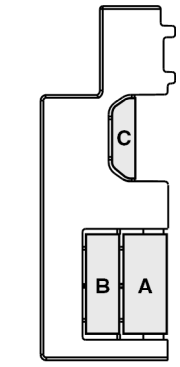
HMV01 and HCS03 devices have greater mounting depths than the drive connection box KCU. For connecting the drive connection box KCU to an HMV01 or HCS03 device, you must therefore use the control cabinet adapter HAS03.1-002 which compensates the different mounting depths.

9.4.2 Touch guard

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

- The appropriate **touch guard** must be mounted for each device following connection work.

  Never operate the device without mounted touch guard.
- Never mount a damaged touch guard.
- Immediately replace a damaged touch guard by an undamaged touch guard.
- Keep the cutouts at the touch guard as small as possible. Only remove the cutouts if necessary.

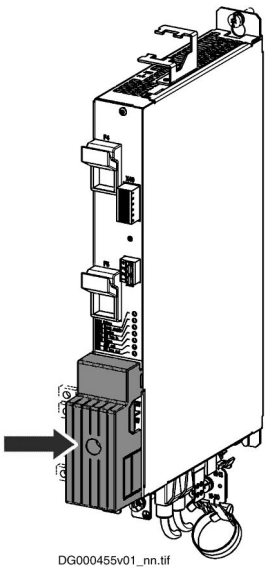


DG000456v01_nn.FH11

Cutouts at the touch guard

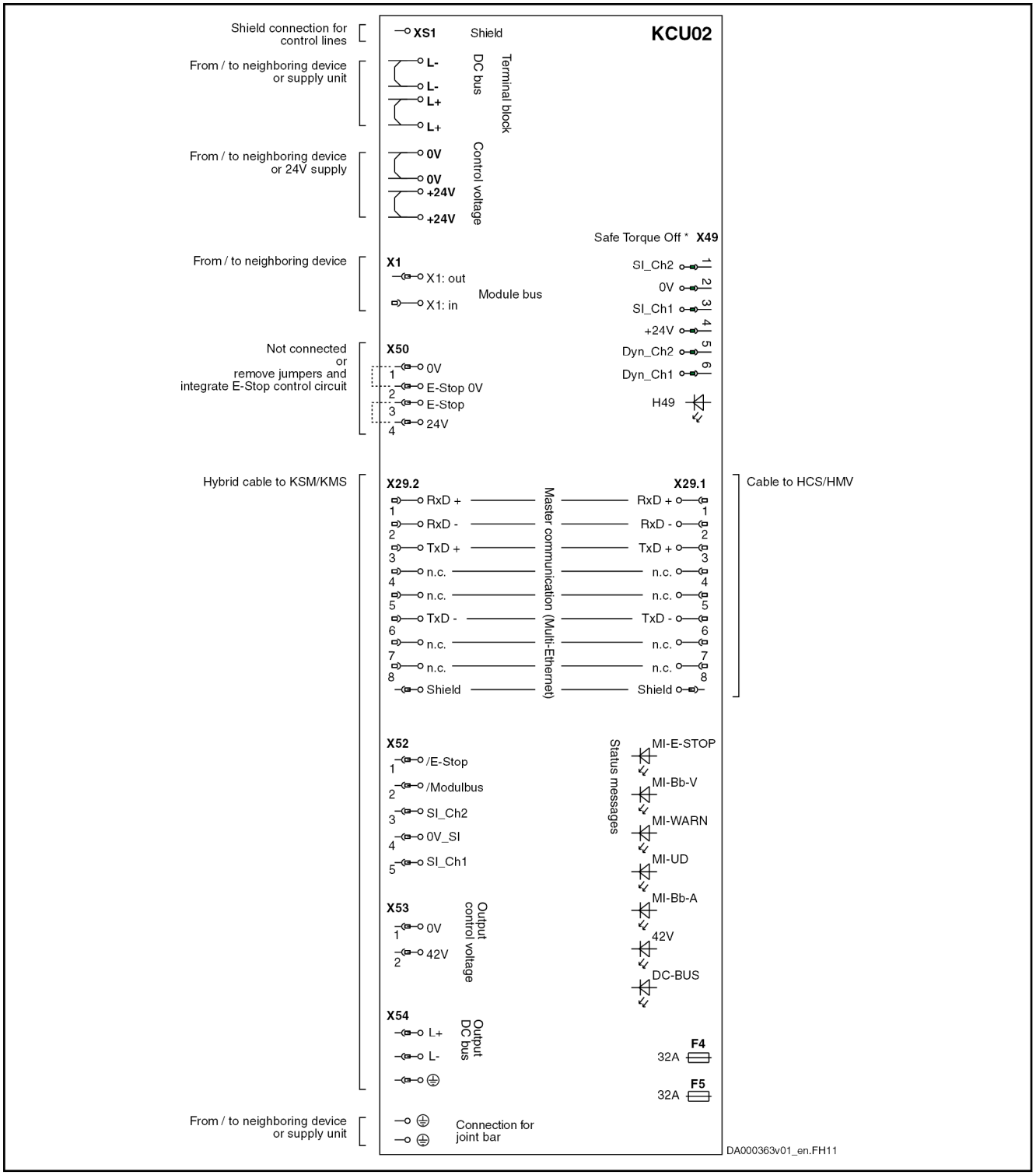
- If the DC bus and the control voltage are connected via **contact bars**, only **cutout A** may be removed from the touch guard.
- If the DC bus and the control voltage are connected via **cables** (e.g., in the case of multiple-line arrangement), **cutouts A, B and C** may be removed from the touch guard.
- At the first and last device in a line of interconnected devices, cutouts may **not** be removed from the outer side of the touch guard.

Tab. 9-3: Cutouts at the touch guard

	The touch guard is fixed to the device with a screw. Tightening torque: **Max. 2.8 Nm**

Tab. 9-4: Touch guard at device

9.4.3 KCU02 connection diagram



* Optional

Fig. 9-3: Connection Diagram KCU02

9.5 KNK03, KMV03, KLC03

9.5.1 Arranging the devices

Mount the KMV supply unit to the left of the KNK mains filter. The connection points at KMV then can be accessed and wired more easily.

9.5.2 Mounting

Notes on mounting

1. To allow trouble-free **servicing**, make sure that the following aspects are fulfilled after KSM has been mounted:
   - Connection points are easily accessible
   - Address selector switches are easily accessible
   - Diagnostic LED is visible
2. **Preferably mount the device to a conductive surface**. If this is impossible, later on connect the second connection point of equipment grounding conductor at the device to the equipment grounding system of the installation.
3. For devices of the "W" and "A" cooling types, only the mounting position G1 is allowed.
4. For the dimensions of the mounting holes, see the dimensional drawing of the device.
5. Data of the **mounting screws**:

   Devices of "B" or "I" cooling type:
   - Thread: M5
   - Tightening torque: 6.1 Nm

   Devices of "A" or "W" cooling type:
   - Thread: M6
   - Tightening torque: 10.4 Nm

Cold plate

Devices of cooling type "B" are mounted on a cold plate.

Required cold plate properties:

See chapter 9.1.3 "Cold plate" on page 287.

9.6 Electrical connection

9.6.1 General information

⚠ WARNING **High electrical voltage! Danger to life by electric shock!**

Working within the range of live parts is extremely dangerous. Therefore:

- Any work required on the electric system may be carried out only by skilled electricians. It is absolutely necessary to use power tools.
- Before starting work, the system must be de-energized and the power switch be secured against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.
- Before starting work, the appropriate measuring equipment must be used to check whether parts of the system are still under residual voltage (e.g. caused by capacitors, etc.). Wait to allow the system to discharge.

⚠ WARNING **Personal injury or property damage by interrupting or connecting live lines!**

Interrupting or connecting live lines may cause unpredictable dangerous situations or lead to property damage. Therefore:

- Connect and disconnect plug-in connectors only when they are dry and de-energized.
- During operation of the installation, all plug-in connectors must be locked.

⚠ WARNING **Risk of short circuit caused by liquid coolant or lubricant!**

Short circuits of live lines may cause unpredictable dangerous situations or lead to property damage. Therefore:

- Provide exposed mating sides of power plug-in connectors with safety caps when installing or replacing drive components, if you cannot exclude that they might be moistened with liquid coolant or lubricant.

9.6.2 Notes

The motor cable is a hybrid cable in which the communication line has been integrated. Only the hybrid cable by Rexroth can ensure the function. It is supplied as ready-made cable. The outgoing direction of the hybrid cable cannot be changed subsequently!

NOTICE **Risk of damage by subsequently changing the outgoing direction of the hybrid cable!**

Do not try to reverse the cable outgoing direction of a ready-made connector! The flexible leads in the connector have individual lengths for each outgoing direction.

NOTICE **Risk of damage by leakage of the connection points!**

If vibrations affect the hybrid cable: Install strain relief near the connection points (X103.1, X103.2) so that the connectors are not affected by high vibration loads. This can avoid possible leakage (entering liquid).

When ordering the ready-made hybrid cables, always indicate the desired outgoing direction: See chapter 5.9.1 "RKH hybrid cable incl. communication, technical data" on page 117.

Ready-made hybrid cables have been coded in such a way that X103.1 and X103.2 cannot be interchanged when connecting the cables.

9.6.3 Electrical interfaces

Overall connection diagram

☞ At the **first** KSM/KMS, always plug the hybrid cable RKH in connection point **X103.1**.

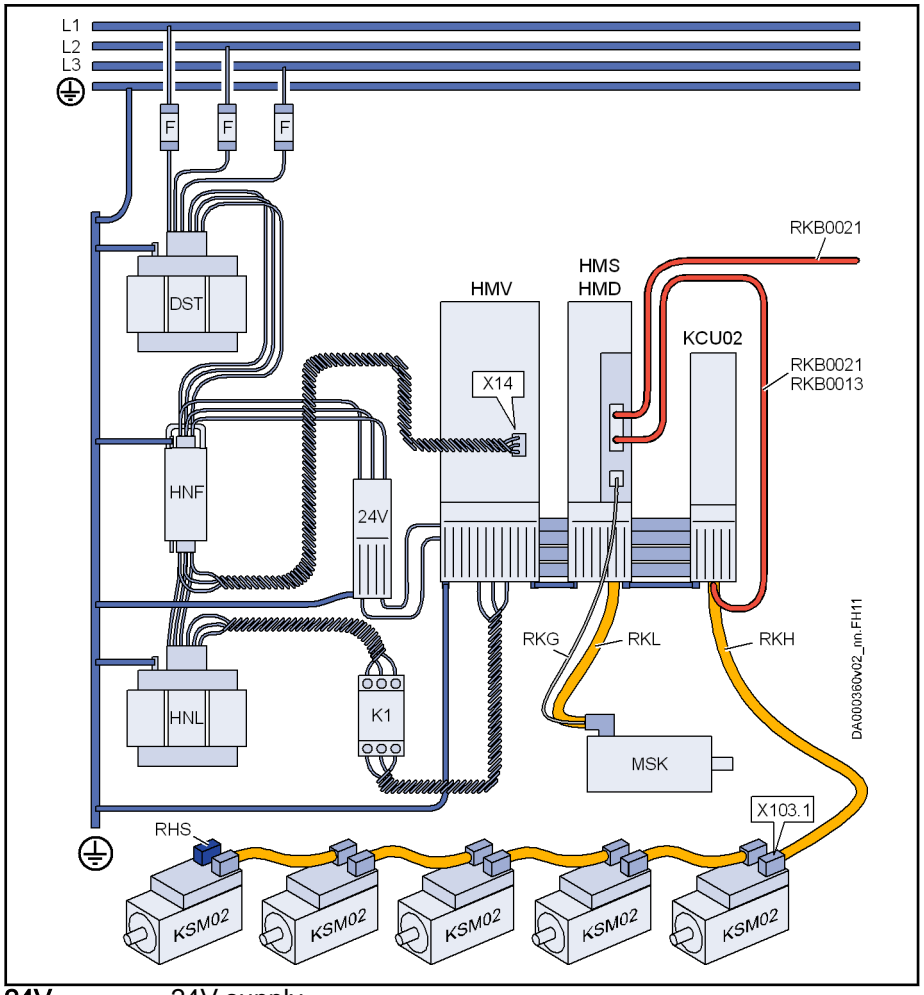
Always terminate the unassigned X103.x connections at KSM/KMS/KMV with an **RHS terminal connector** so that the degree of protection IP65 is maintained.

The figures below show **examples**. Other mains connection options are described in the documentation "Rexroth IndraDrive Drive Systems with HMV01/02, HMS01/02, HMD01, HCS02/03" or "ctrlX DRIVE Drive Systems".

The **additional components** (DST, HNL, HNF …) contained in the figure are not absolutely necessary. As regards the detailed configuration of a drive system, see documentation "Rexroth IndraDrive Drive Systems with HMV01/02, HMS01/02, HMD01, HCS02/03".

HMV01 used as supply unit

IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV01 supply unit:

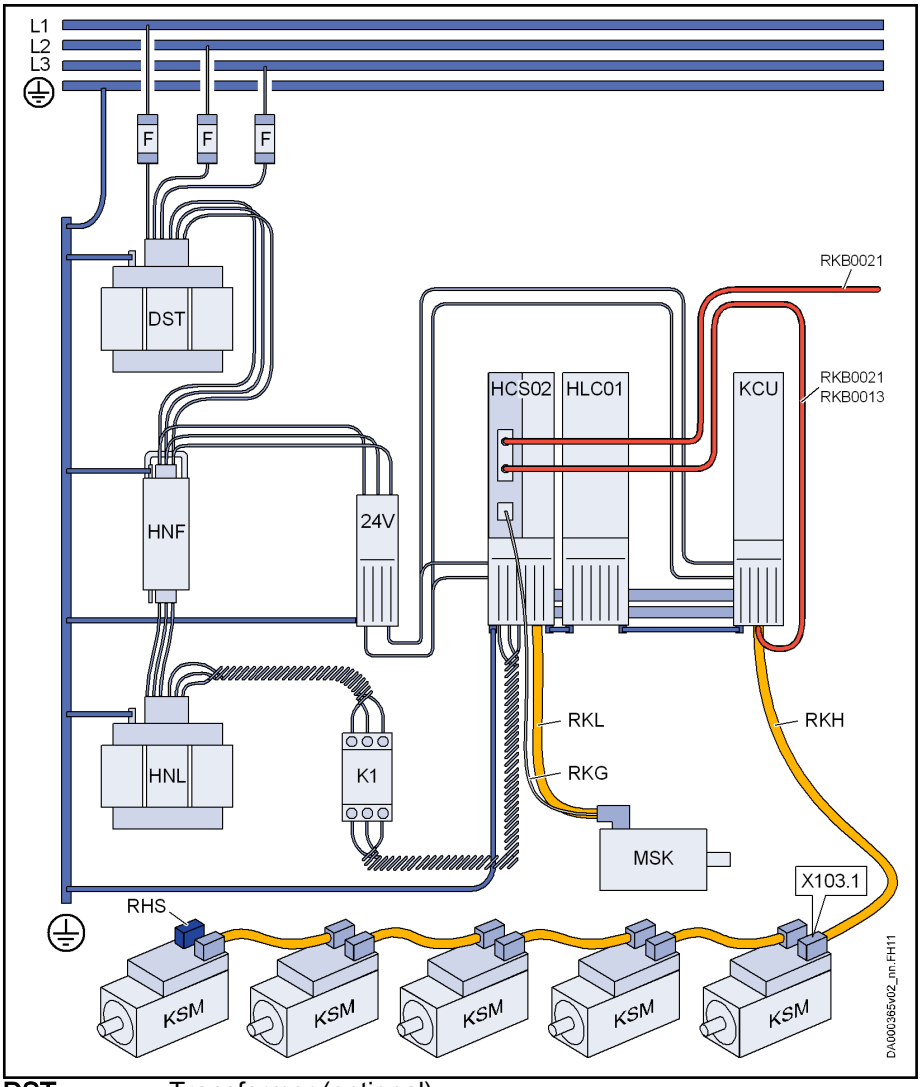


24V	24V supply
DST	Transformer (optional)
F	Fuses
HMD, HMS	Inverter (optional)
HMV01	Supply unit
HNF	Mains filter
HNL	Mains choke
K1	Mains contactor (only for supply units without integrated mains contactor, e.g. HMV01.1R-W0120)
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive
MSK	Servo motor (optional)
RHS	Terminal connector
RKB	Communication cable
RKG	Encoder cable (optional)
RKH	Hybrid cable
RKL	Motor cable (optional)
X14	Mains synchronization (only with regenerative HMVs)
X103.1	Connection of RKH hybrid cable at first KSM

Fig. 9-4: IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV01

HCS02 used as supply unit

IndraDrive Mi drive system with HCS02 supply unit:

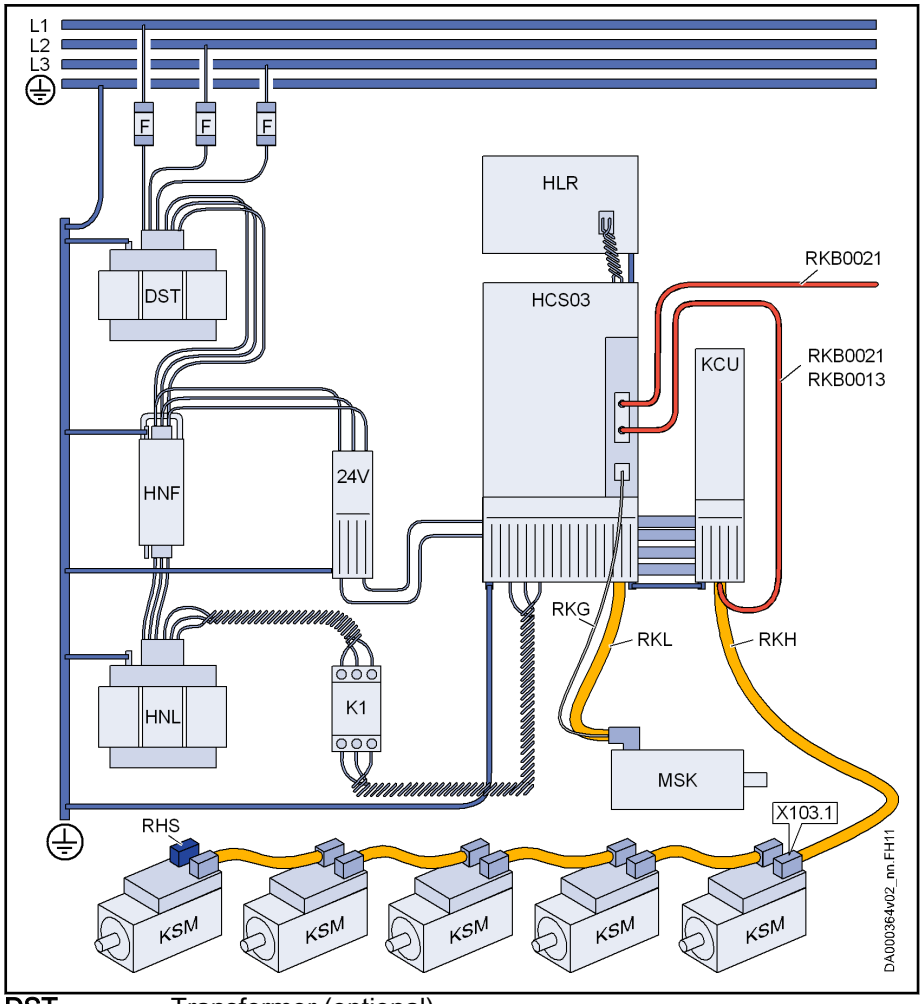


DST	Transformer (optional)
F	Fuses
HCS02	Converter (HCS02.1E-W0054 or HCS02.1E-W0070)
HNF	Mains filter
HNL	Mains choke (optional)
HLC01	DC bus capacitor unit (optional only with low load of motor output at HCS02)
K1	Mains contactor
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive
MSK	Servo motor
24V	24V supply
RHS	Terminal connector
RKB	Communication cable
RKG	Encoder cable
RKH	Hybrid cable
RKL	Motor cable
X103.1	Connection of hybrid cable at first KSM

Fig. 9-5: IndraDrive Mi drive system with HCS02

HCS03 used as supply unit

IndraDrive Mi drive system with HCS03 supply unit:

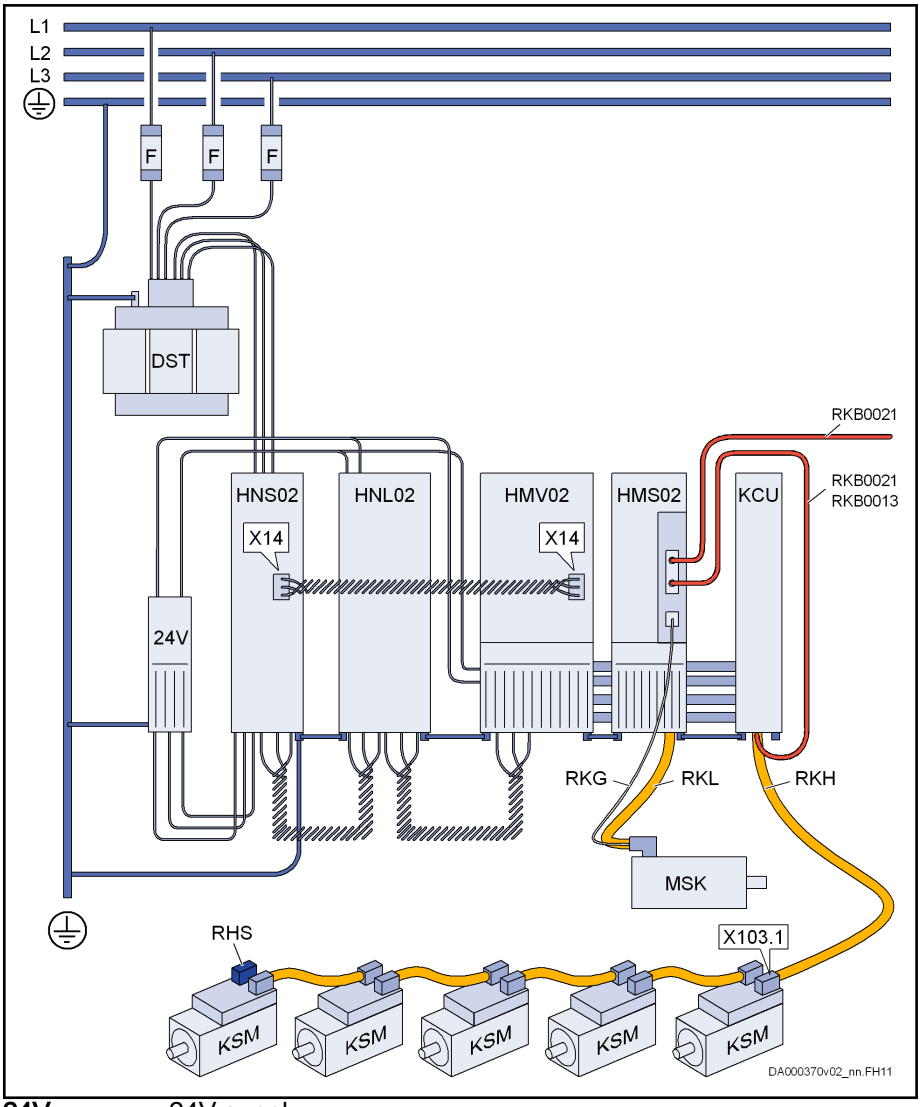


DST	Transformer (optional)
F	Fuses
HCS03	Converter
HLR	Braking resistor (optional)
HNF	Mains filter
HNL	Mains choke (optional)
K1	Mains contactor
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive
MSK	Servo motor
RHS	Terminal connector
RKB	Communication cable
RKH	Hybrid cable
RKG	Encoder cable
RKL	Motor cable
24V	24V supply
X103.1	Connection of hybrid cable at first KSM

Fig. 9-6: IndraDrive Mi drive system with HCS03

HMV02 used as supply unit

IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV02 supply unit:

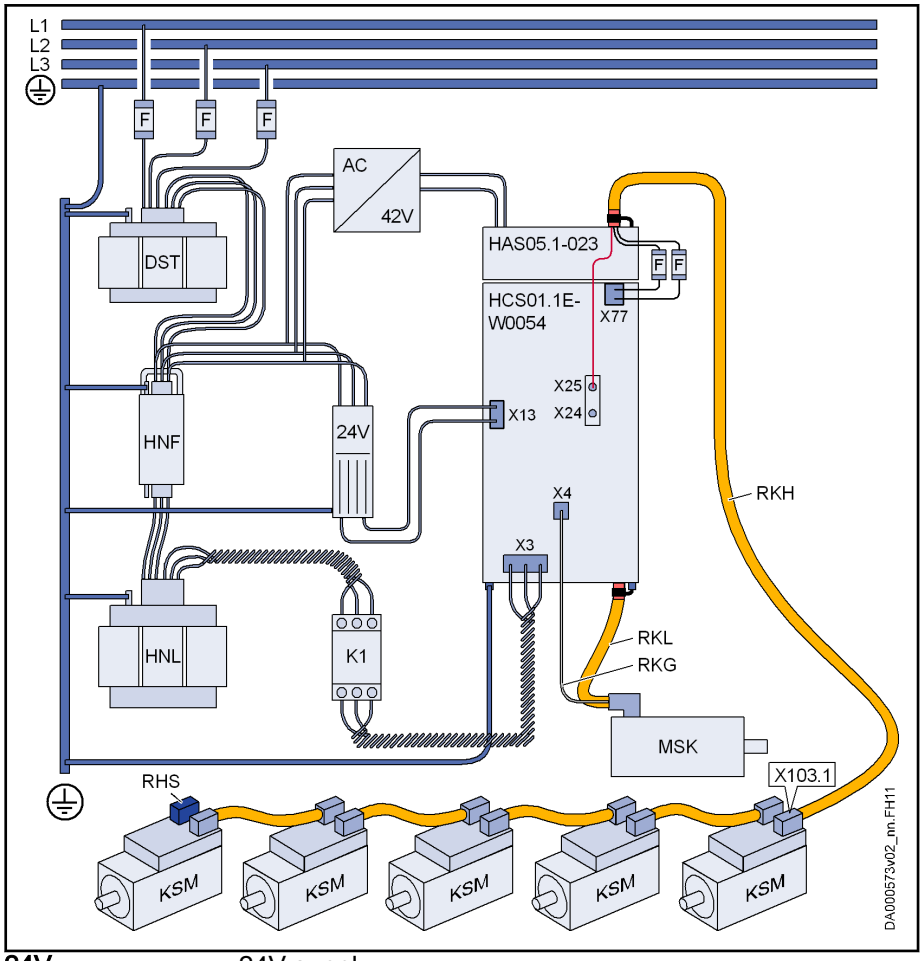


24V	24V supply
DST	Transformer (optional)
F	Fuses
HMS02	Inverter (optional)
HMV02	Supply unit
HNS02	Mains filter with switch-disconnector
HNL02	Mains choke
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive
MSK	Servo motor (optional)
RHS	Terminal connector
RKB	Communication cable
RKG	Encoder cable (optional)
RKH	Hybrid cable
RKL	Motor cable (optional)
X14	Mains synchronization (only with regenerative HMVs)
X103.1	Connection of RKH hybrid cable at first KSM

Fig. 9-7: IndraDrive Mi drive system with HMV02

HCS01.1E-W0054 used as supply unit

IndraDrive Mi drive system with HCS01.1E-W0054 supply unit

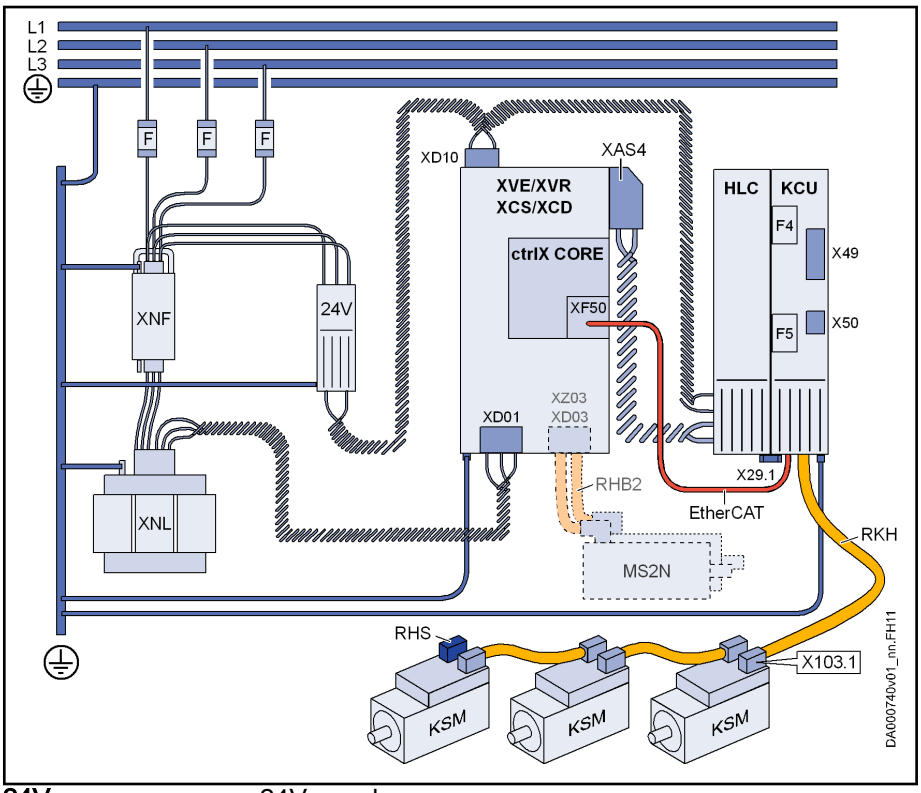


24V	24V supply
AC/42V	42V supply
DST	Transformer (optional)
F	Fuses
HAS05.1-023	Connection accessories (see chapter 10.9 "HAS05.1-023, HCS01 adapter" on page 318)
HCS01.1E-W0054	Drive controller
HNF	Mains filter; depending on the Y-capacitances of KSM/KMS
HNL	Mains choke (optional)
K1	Mains contactor
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive (alternative: KMS near motor servo drive and motor)
MSK	Servo motor
RHS	Terminal connector
RKG	Encoder cable
RKH	Hybrid cable
RKL	Motor cable
X103.1	Connection of hybrid cable at first KSM

Fig. 9-8: IndraDrive Mi system with HCS01.1E-W0054

ctrlX DRIVE used as supply unit

IndraDrive Mi drive system with ctrlX DRIVE (e.g., XVR or XCS) as supply unit



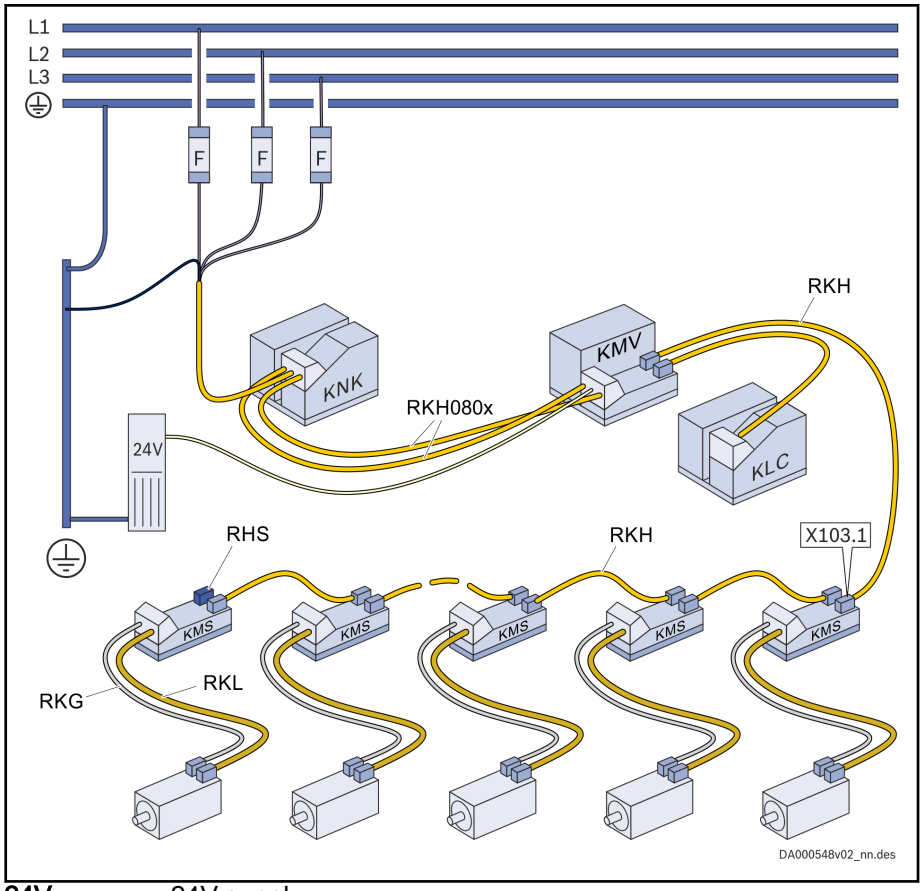
24V	24V supply
ctrlX CORE	Internal control
F	Fuses
HLC	HLC01.1C DC bus capacitor unit
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive (alternative: KMS near motor servo drive and motor)
MS2N	Servo motor
RHB2	Motor cable
RHS	Terminal connector
RKH	Hybrid cable
X103.1	Connection of hybrid cable at first KSM
XAS4	DC bus adapter (ctrlX DRIVE connection accessory for DC bus connection with cables)
XD01	Mains connection
XD03	Motor connection
XD10	Control voltage supply connection
XF50	EtherCAT master output
XNF	Mains filter; depending on the Y-capacitances of KSM/KMS
XNL	Mains choke (optional)
XVE/XVR/XCS/XCD	ctrlX DRIVE supply unit/drive controller
XZ03	Motor connection (hybrid connection: power, motor temperature, motor holding brake)

Fig. 9-9: IndraDrive Mi drive system with ctrlX DRIVE

Further information: chapter 14.5 "ctrlX DRIVE and IndraDrive Mi" on page 411

KMV03 used as supply unit

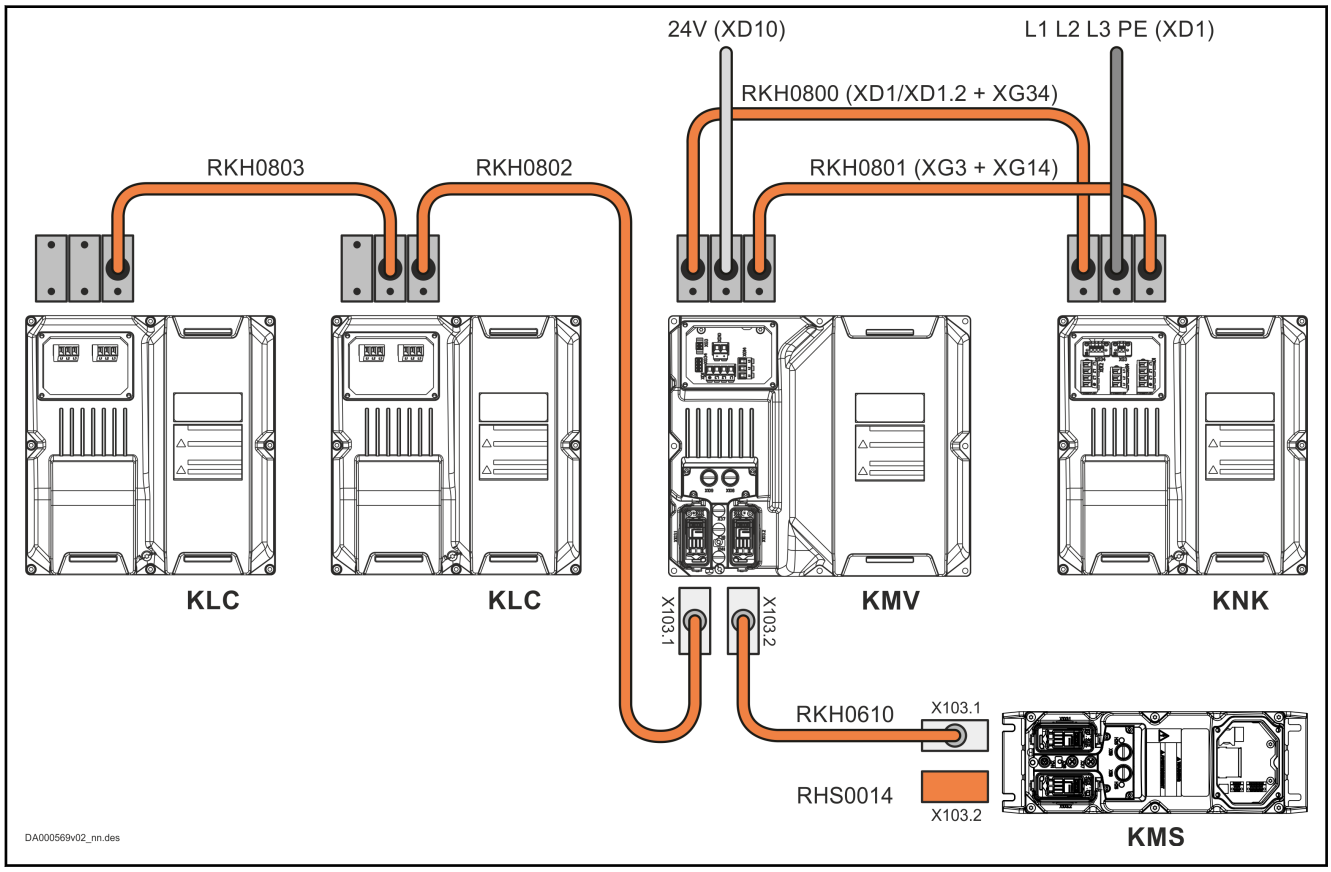
IndraDrive Mi drive system with KMV03 supply unit:



24V	24V supply
F	Fuses
KLC	DC bus capacitor unit
KMS	Near motor servo drive
KMV	Supply unit
KNK	Mains filter with integrated mains choke and integrated mains contactor
RHS	Terminal connector
RKG	Encoder cable (optional)
RKH	Hybrid cable
RKL	Motor power cable
X103.1	Connection of RKH hybrid cable at first KMS

Fig. 9-10: IndraDrive Mi drive system with KNK03, KMV03, KMS03

Cables for IndraDrive Mi drive system with KMV03 as supply unit



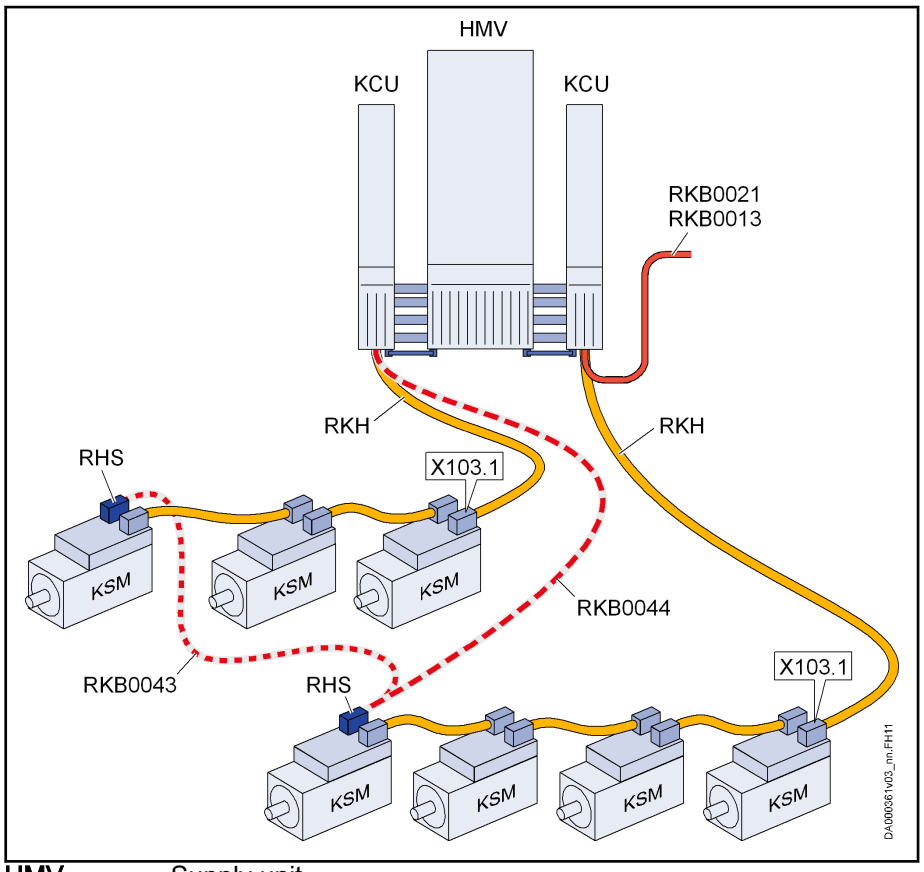
24V (XD10)	KMV control voltage (XD10 connection point); customer assembles the cable (HAS05.1-020 accessories required)
L1 L2 L3 PE (XD1)	KNK mains voltage and equipment grounding conductor (XD1 connection point); customer assembles the cable (HAS05.1-019 accessories required)
RHS0014	Terminal connector
RKH0610	Exemplary ready-made hybrid cable; connects KMV (X103.2) to KMS/KSM (X103.1); the actual hybrid cable (RKH0xxx) depends on the desired cable outgoing directions at the X103.1 and X103.2 connection points
RKH0800	Ready-made hybrid cable; connects KMV (XD1, XG34) to KNK (XD1.2, XG34)
RKH0801	Ready-made hybrid cable; connects KMV (XG3, XG14) to KNK (XG3, XG14)
RKH0802	Ready-made hybrid cable; connects KMV (X103.1) to KLC (XG9)
RKH0803	Ready-made hybrid cable; interconnects 2 KLC

Fig. 9-11: Cables for IndraDrive Mi drive system with KMV03 as supply unit

Parallel drive lines

☞ At the **first** KSM/KMS, always plug the hybrid cable RKH in connection point **X103.1**.

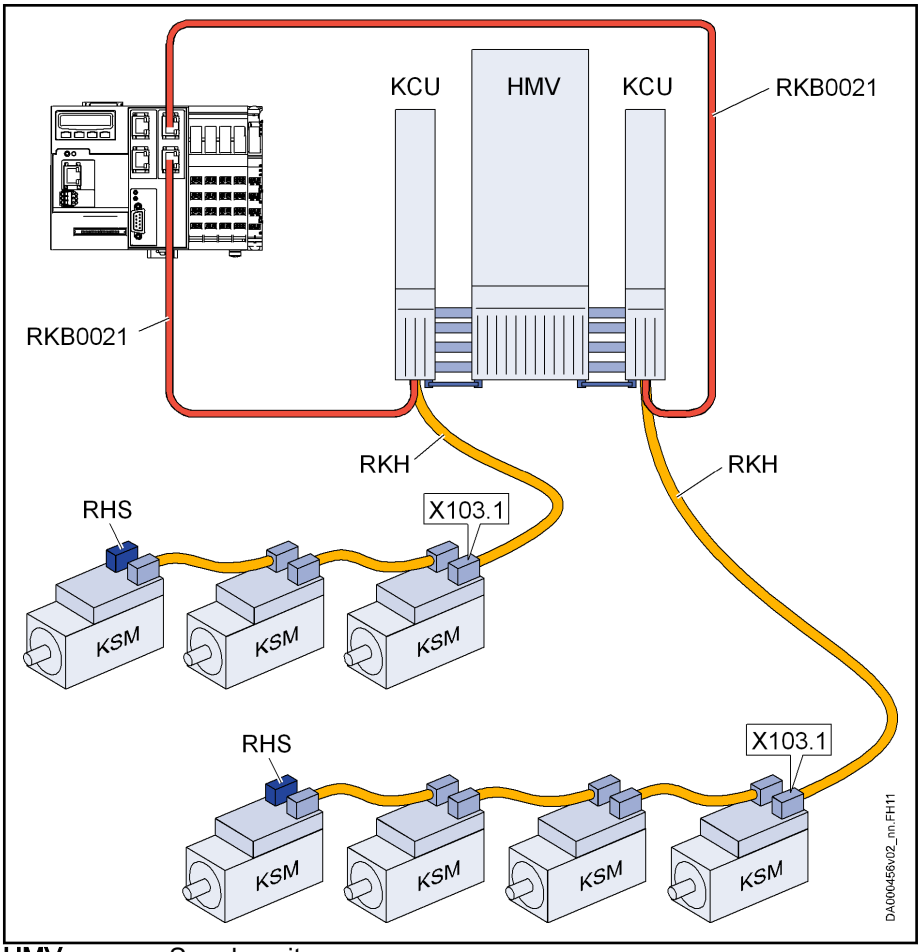
Always terminate the unassigned connection at the **last** KSM/KMS with an **RHS terminal connector**.



HMV	Supply unit
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive
RKB	Communication cable; RKB0044 (RHS ↔ KCU) **or** RKB0043 (RHS ↔ RHS; if the RKB0043 cable is used, it is necessary to additionally interconnect the second connection points of the equipment grounding conductor of the two KSM with a separate cable)
RHS	Terminal connector
RKH	Hybrid cable
X103.1	Hybrid cable connection

Fig. 9-12: Parallel drive lines

In the case of 2 drive lines (2 KCUs) and 2 unassigned communication interfaces at the higher-level control unit, both KCUs can be directly connected to the control unit.



HMV	Supply unit
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive
RKB	Communication cable
RHS	Terminal connector
RKH	Hybrid cable
X103.1	Hybrid cable connection

Fig. 9-13: Parallel drive lines with two KCUs and higher-level control unit

2 KCU vs. 2 KMV

Instead of 1 HMV + 2 KCU, it is possible to use 2 KMV for parallel drive lines.

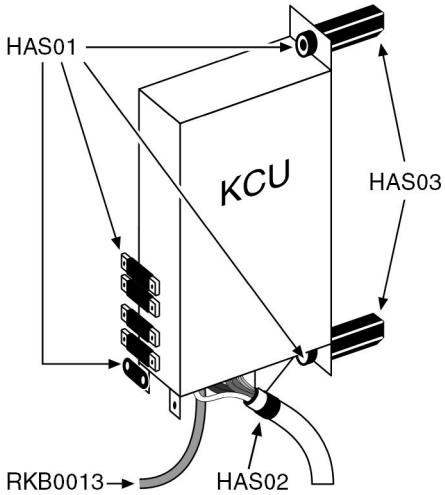
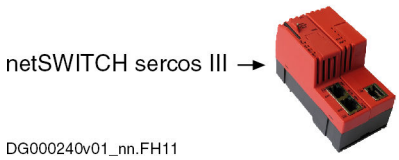
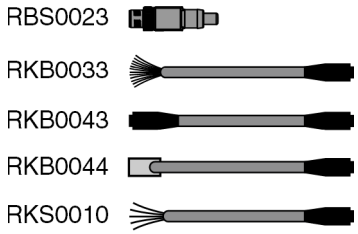
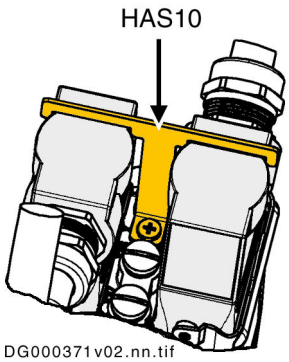
Fan connection

Components of the "W" cooling type (forced cooling) need the **RKB0054** cable (material number: R911378870) for the electrical connection of the fan.

See chapter 10.18 "RKB0054, fan cable" on page 342.

10 Accessories

10.1 Overview

KCU	KSM, KMS	
  DG000240v01_nn.FH11	 DG000433v01_nn.FH11	 DG000371v02.nn.tif
• HAS01 Basic accessory • HAS02 Shield connection of hybrid cable • HAS03 Control cabinet adapter • RKB0013 Short Multi-Ethernet cable for connection to the neighboring device • netSWITCH sercos III The accessory connects a sercos III network into a standard Ethernet network.	• RBS0023 Connector for safety zone node • RKB0033 Cable with open ends (X141 ↔ external safety unit) • RKB0043 Cable for communication (M12-D ↔ M12-D) • RKB0044 Cable for communication (M12-D ↔ RJ-45) • RKS0010 Cable with open ends (M12-A ↔ open)	Fixing clip for hybrid cables • HAS10.1-001-001 For devices **without** optional communication output coupling (X108, X109). • HAS10.1-001-002 For devices **with** optional communication output coupling (X108, X109).
	• HAS05.1-021 Hybrid joint • HAS05.1-023 HCS01 adapter • HAS05.1-024 Passive 42 V supply unit • Metallic flange for circular connectors	

Tab. 10-1: Accessories

KMV03, KNK03, KMS03, KLC03
• HAS05.1-018 Dummy plate for KMS03 encoder connection • HAS05.1-019 KNK03 mains voltage connection plate • HAS05.1-020 KMV03 control voltage connection plate • RKB0054 Fan cable

Tab. 10-2: Accessories (KMV03, KNK03, KMS03, KLC03)

10.2 HAS01, basic accessory

For the KCU drive connection box, you need the basic accessory HAS01.1-050-072-MN.

The basic accessory HAS01 contains:

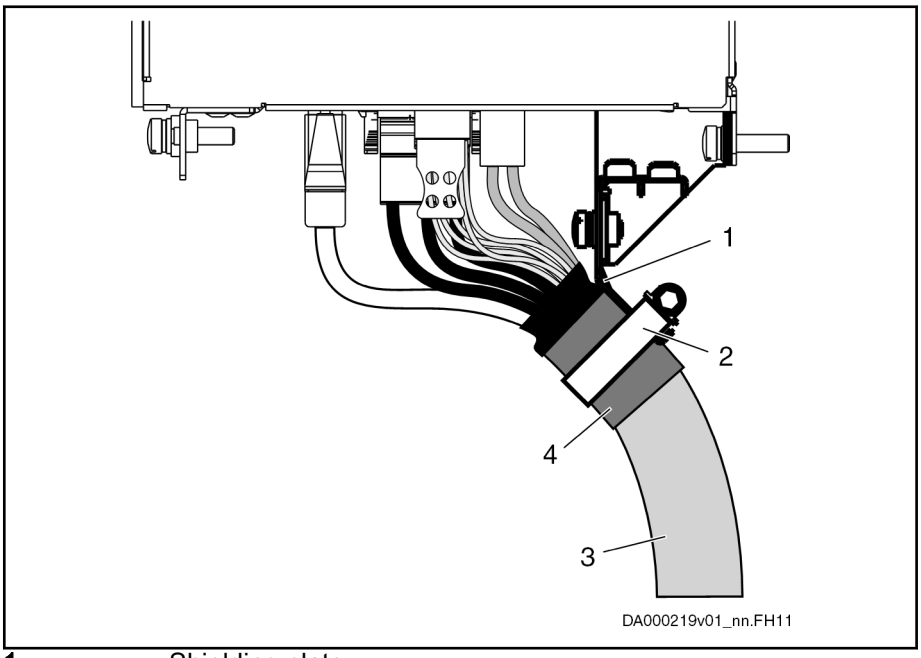
- Parts for fixing the device
- Contact bars for connecting
  - the DC bus
  - the control voltage supply
- Joint bar for connecting equipment grounding conductors of KCU and neighboring device

📖 For a detailed description, see documentation "Rexroth IndraDrive Additional Components and Accessories".

10.3 HAS02, shield connection

☞ For proper and correct installation of KSM and KCU, use the RKH hybrid cable and the **HAS02.1-015-NNN-NN** accessory.

The **HAS02.1-015-NNN-NN** accessory connects the shield of the hybrid cable to the housing of the KCU drive connection box.



1 Shielding plate
2 Clip
3 Hybrid cable
4 Shield of hybrid cable

Fig. 10-1: Shield connection

- Mount the shielding plate (1) to the drive connection box KCU according to the desired outgoing direction of the hybrid cable (horizontal or 45°).
- According to the diameter of the hybrid cable (3), the shielding plate (1) provides two supports (12–18 mm or 19–30 mm). Fix the hybrid cable (3) to the corresponding support with a clip (2). Make sure that the shield (4) of the hybrid cable has good contact with the shielding plate (1).

10.4 HAS03, control cabinet adapter

HMV01 and HCS03 devices have greater mounting depths than the KCU drive connection box. To connect the KCU drive connection box to an HMV01 or HCS03 device, you therefore have to use the **HAS03.1-002** control cabinet adapter which compensates the different mounting depths.

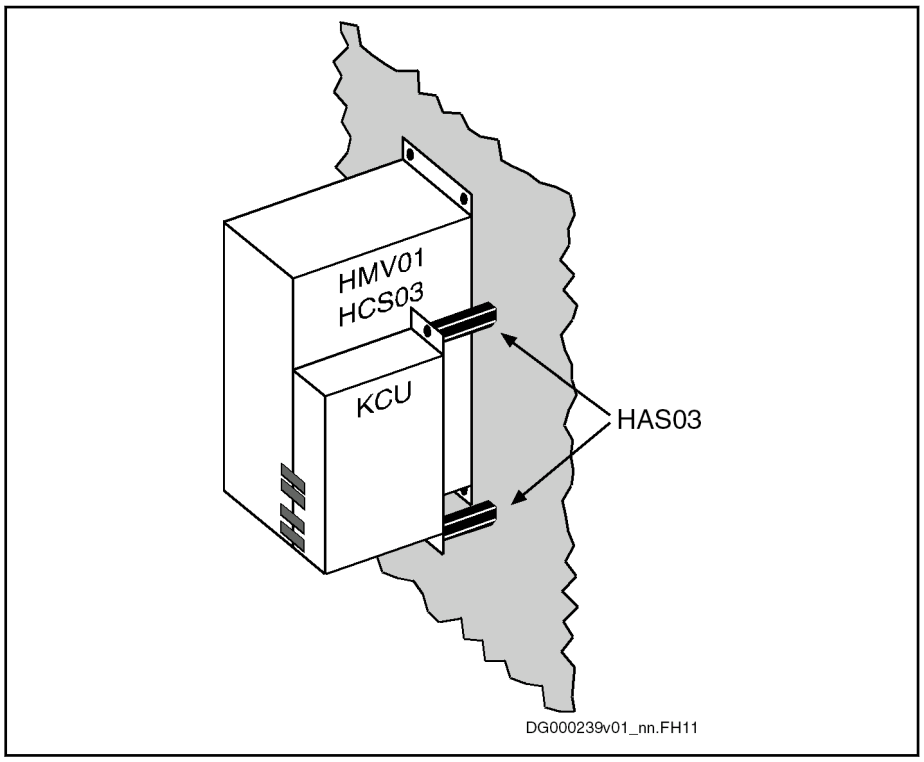


Fig. 10-2: HAS03

📖 For a detailed description, see documentation "Rexroth IndraDrive Additional Components and Accessories".

10.5 HAS05.1-018, dummy plate for KMS03 encoder connection

Material number: R911371165

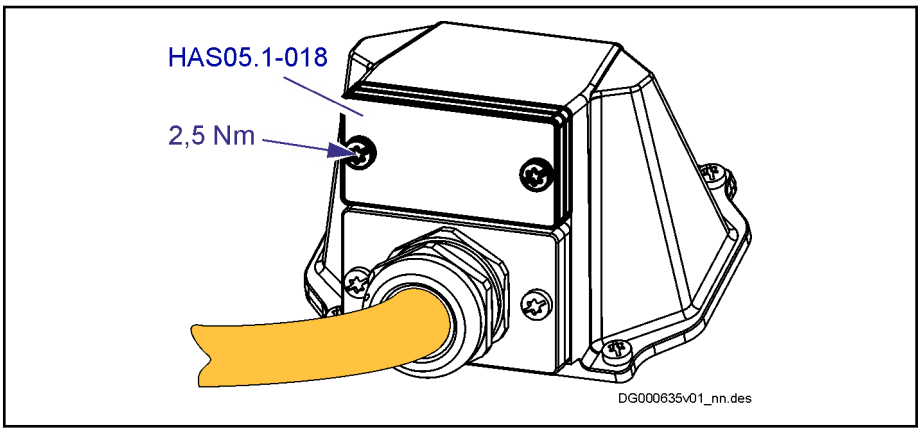


Fig. 10-3: HAS05.1-018, dummy plate for KMS03 encoder connection

The accessory contains the following parts:

- Plate incl. screws

10.6 HAS05.1-019, KNK03 mains voltage

Material number: R911372176

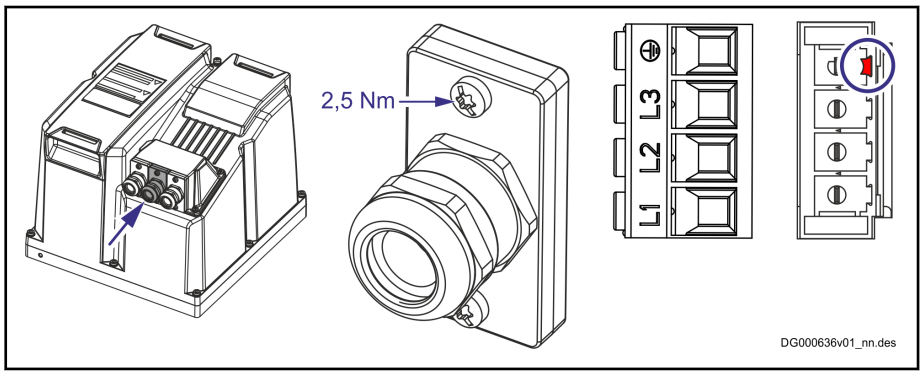


Fig. 10-4: HAS05.1-019, KNK03 mains voltage

The accessory contains the following parts:

- Cable gland (plastic, M20, range: 6 … 12 mm)
- Plate incl. screws
- Connector (screw terminal)
- Coding pin

10.7 HAS05.1-020, KMV03 control voltage

Material number: R911372724

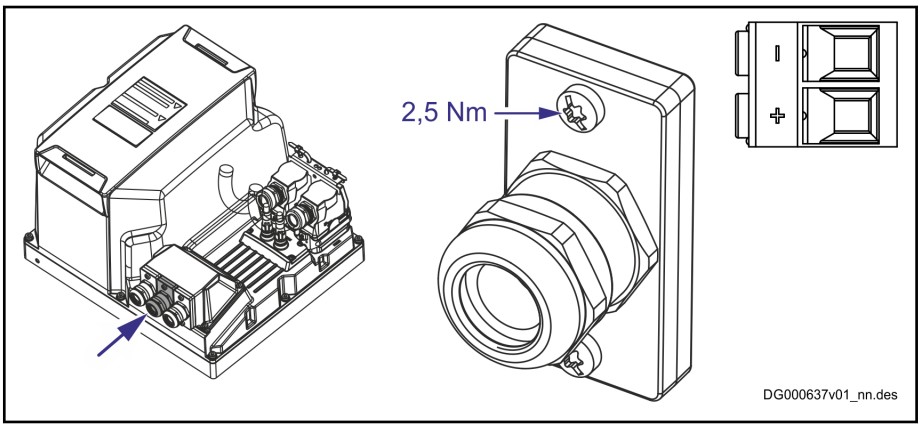


Fig. 10-5: HAS05.1-020, KMV03 control voltage

The accessory contains the following parts:

- Cable gland (plastic, M20, range: 6 … 12 mm)
- Plate incl. screws
- Connector (screw terminal)

10.8 HAS05.1-021, hybrid joint

With the hybrid joint it is impossible to comply with the specified minimum distances of the devices (see dimensional drawing).

Operate the drive system in such a way that the temperatures of the devices do not inadmissibly rise.

10.8.1 HAS05.1-021-NNN-NN

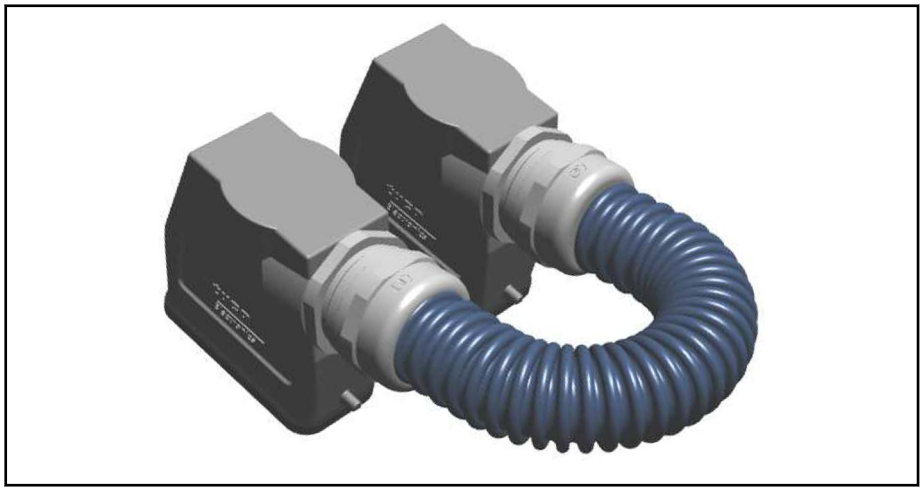


Fig. 10-6: HAS05.1-021-NNN-NN, hybrid joint

The accessory is a very short hybrid cable and connects two devices mounted side by side.

- Hybrid cable with communication
- Outgoing direction of the hybrid cable: A (toward the housing)

  [HAS05.1-026-NNN-NN: Outgoing direction of the hybrid cable: B (away from the housing)]
- Distance, connector center – connector center: **62 … 87 mm**
- Degree of protection IP65
- Material number: R911374654

10.8.2 HAS05.1-021-NCN-NN

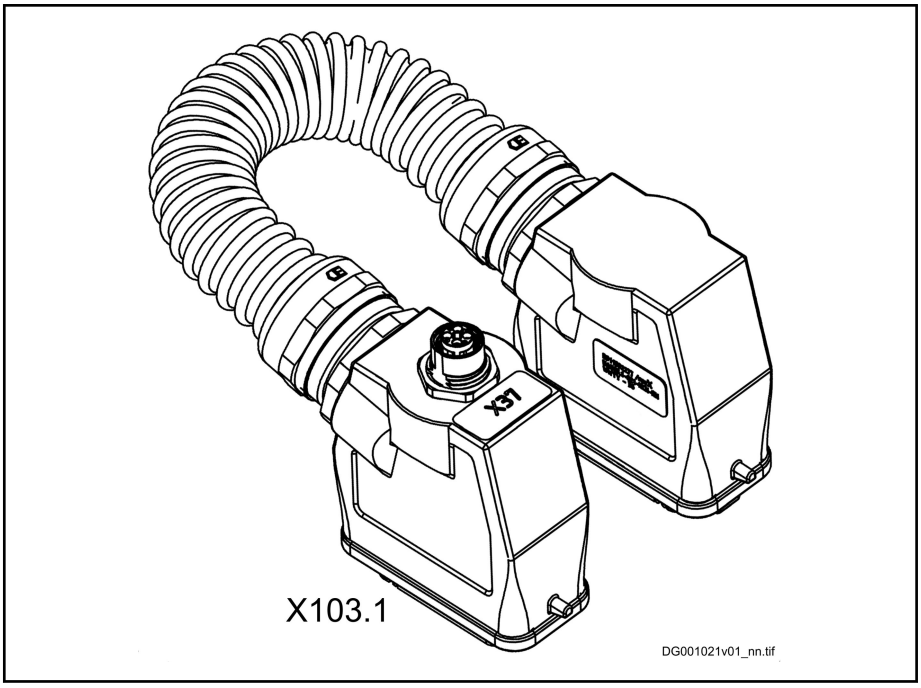


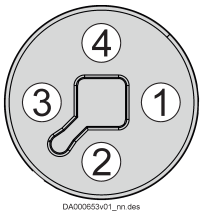
Fig. 10-7: HAS05.1-021-NCN-NN, hybrid joint with 42 V connection (X37)

The accessory is a very short hybrid cable and connects two devices mounted side by side.

- Hybrid cable with communication
- Outgoing direction of the hybrid cable: A (toward the housing)
- Distance, connector center – connector center: **62 … 87 mm**
- Degree of protection IP65
- M12 female connector (X37) to connect an additional 42 V power supply
  - Control voltages galvanically isolated between the zones before and after the accessory
  - Allowed current: 15 A
  - Degree of protection: IP65
  - External power supply required (UL508-certified; 42 V_{DC}, ±10%; e.g. PULS "CPS20.361" (100-240 V, 480 W) or "QT20.361" (380-480 V, 480 W))
- Material number: R911392277

The accessory allows the drive line to be expanded by more components, if one of the following conditions applies:

- Power of the DC/DC converter (24V/42V) in KCU or KMV has already been used to capacity (e.g., due to many motors with integrated holding brakes)
- Voltage drop on the control voltage lines in the hybrid cable has reached its allowed limit (e.g., due to long cables)

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	1	0V	42 V supply, max. 15 A
	2	0V	
	3	42V	
	4	42V	
M12 (4-pin, T-coded) female	**Unit**	**min.**	**max.**
Connection cable, stranded wire	mm^2	1.5	1.5
Cable cross section	AWG	16	16
Connection cable			e.g., PHOENIX CONTACT power cable - SAC-4P-M12MRT/ 10,0-PUR SH - 1424127

Tab. 10-3: Function, pin assignment, properties

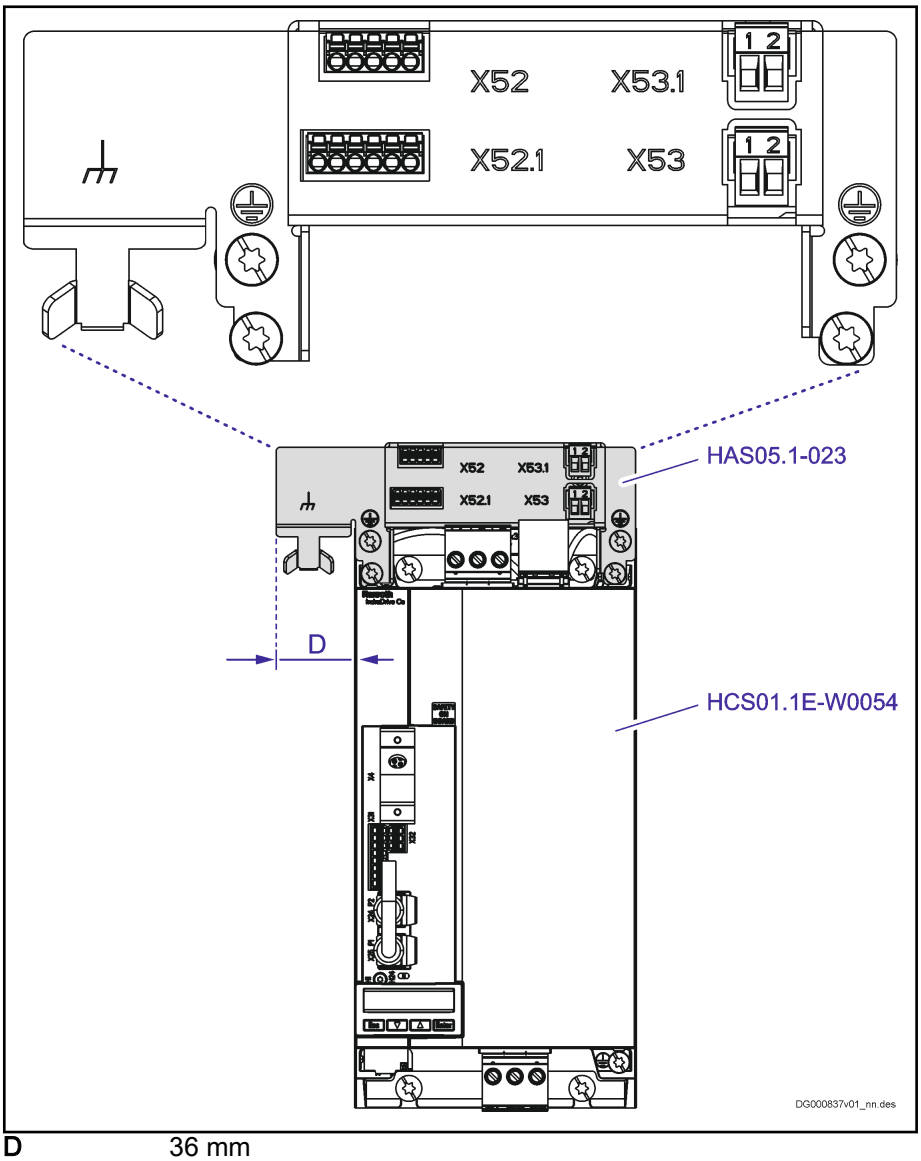
10.9 HAS05.1-023, HCS01 adapter

Use With the accessory (material number: R911385558) an **HCS01.1E-W0054 drive controller can be used as a supply unit** for IndraDrive Mi components.

See also chapter "HCS01.1E-W0054 used as supply unit" on page 301.

To establish the connection, there are ready-made **hybrid cables**:

RKH0341, RKH0441, RKH0541, RKH0909



D 36 mm

Fig. 10-8: HAS05.1-023, HCS01 adapter

The minimum allowed **top** mounting clearance specified in the HCS01 dimensional drawings remains unchanged.

For information on the HCS01 drive controller, please see the Project Planning Manual "Rexroth IndraDrive Cs Drive Systems with HCS01" (R911322210).

Mounting

The accessory is screwed to the equipment grounding conductor connections of HCS01 (M5, tightening torque: 5 Nm)

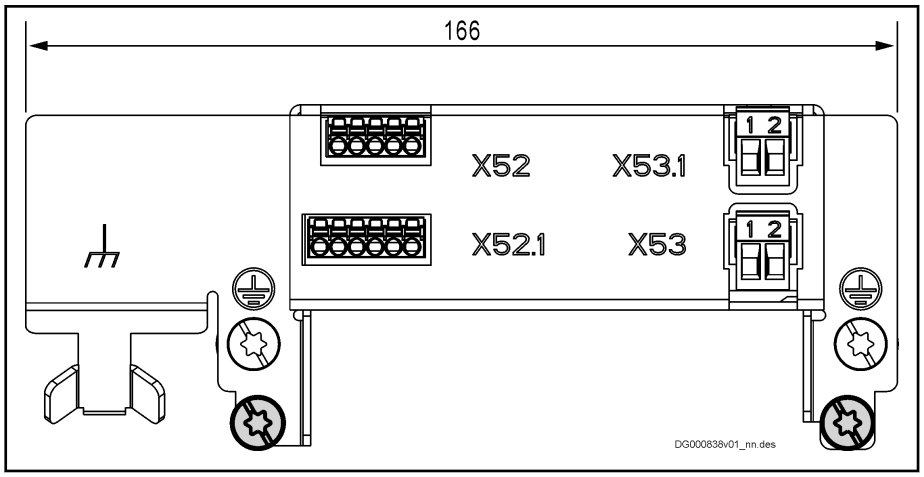
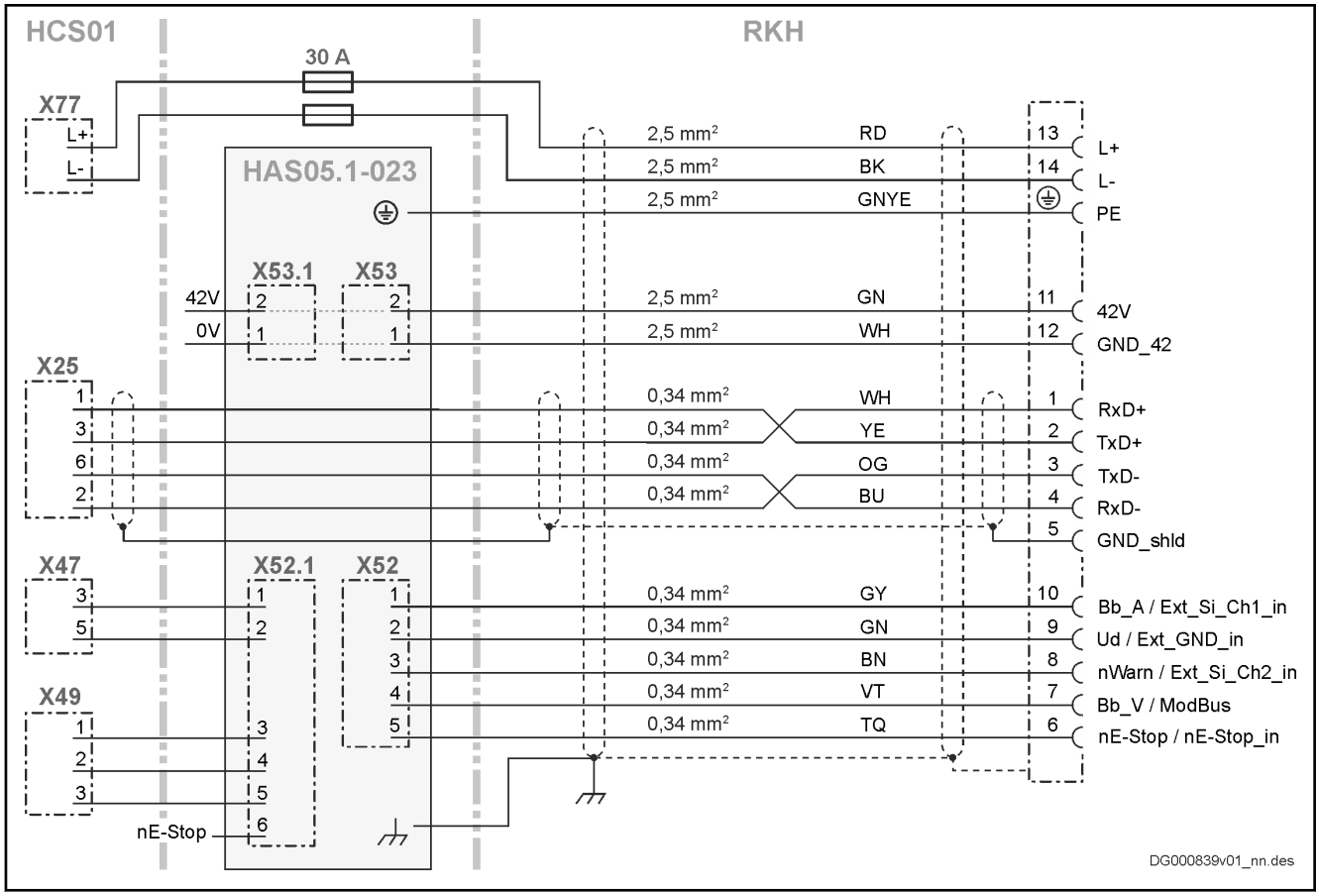


Fig. 10-9: HAS05.1-023, dimensions, mounting screws

Installation

Connection	Significance
⏚	Equipment grounding conductors can be directly connected to the accessory (screw: M5; tightening torque: 5 Nm).
⏚	Hybrid cable shield (RKH0341, RKH0441, RKH0541, RKH0909)
X52	Status messages; hybrid cable connection
X52.1	Status messages; HCS01 connection (X47, X49)
X53	Control voltage; hybrid cable connection
X53.1	Control voltage; 42 V power supply unit connection Suitable power supply units: • **PULS CPS20.361** (input voltage: AC 100 … 240 V) • **PULS QT20.361** (input voltage: AC 380 … 480 V)

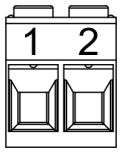
Tab. 10-4: Connection points



30 A DC bus fuses on top-hat rail
HCS01 HCS01.1E-W0054
RKH Hybrid cable (RKH0341, RKH0441, RKH0541, RKH0909)

Fig. 10-10: Connection diagram

X53, X53.1; connection point

View	Connection	Function
	1	Control voltage negative pole
	2	Control voltage positive pole

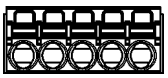
Tab. 10-5: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Screw terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable	mm^2	2.5
Stranded wire	AWG	12
Stripped length	mm	8
Tightening torque	Nm	0.6

Tab. 10-6: Mechanical data

X52; connection point

View	Connection	Function
	1	SI_Ch1
	2	0V
	3	SI_Ch2
	4	ModBus+
	5	nE-Stop

Tab. 10-7: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable Stranded wire	mm^2	1.5
	AWG	16
Stripped length	mm	10

Tab. 10-8: Mechanical data

X52.1; connection point

View	Connection	Function
	1	ModBus+
	2	ModBusGND
	3	SI_Ch2
	4	0V
	5	SI_Ch1
	6	nE-Stop

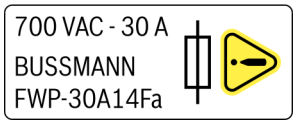
Tab. 10-9: Pin assignment

Mechanical data

Spring terminal (connector)	Unit	max.
Connection cable Stranded wire	mm^2	1.5
	AWG	16
Stripped length	mm	10

Tab. 10-10: Mechanical data

Adhesive label

View	Function
	Place adhesive label in the vicinity of the circuit breakers.

Tab. 10-11: Adhesive label

HAS05.1-023 product insert (page 1)

Made in Germany

R911385558-AA

rexroth
A Bosch Company

HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN

R911385558

1	KLEBESCHILD UL FUSE 700VAC/30A	R911413406
1	BGR HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN	R911385593
2	SICHERUNGSTRENNER 50A/690V 14X51MM CHI&	R911378778
1	STECKKLEMME KL05,08F-FK-MSTBT-_0&	R911320179
4	KOMBI-SCHRAUBE ZISO10644-M5X16-8.8 &	R911294127
1	SCHELLE SCHL-SO12*022-B12-ZN&	R911274471
1	STECK-KL3,50 F FK FMC P 1,5/ 6ST D 1-	R911323694
1	STECK-KL7,62 F FK TSPCP 6,0/ 3ST DL+ L	R911323329
2	SICHERUNG FWP 30,000A/800V	R911319963
Stck	Benennung	MN

Mitgeltende Unterlagen zur Installation:

Projektierungsbeschreibung IndraDrive Mi
Projektierungsbeschreibung IndraDrive Cs

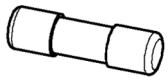
Applicable documents for installation:

Designing description IndraDrive Mi
Designing description IndraDrive Cs

BEIPACKZETTEL HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN

Stck	Benennung		MN
2	SICHERUNG	FWP 30,000A/800V	R911319963

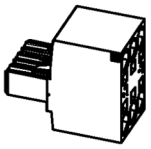
DB206123



1:2

1	STECK-KL7,62 F FK TSPCP 6,0/ 3ST	DL+ L	R911323329

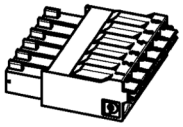
DB219485



1:2

1	STECK-KL3,50 F FK FMC P 1,5/ 6ST	D 1-	R911323694

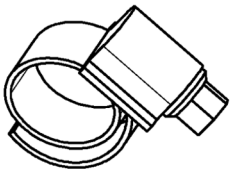
DB225603



1:1

1	SCHELLE	SCHL-SO12*022-B12-ZN&	R911274471

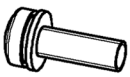
DB238391



1:1

4	KOMBI-SCHRAUBE	ZISO10644-M5X16-8.8 &	R911294127

R911294127



1:1

1	STECKKLEMME	KL05,08F-FK-MSTBT-_0&	R911320179

R911320179

1:1

AB	600000112335	20211027	juliweig	
AA	--	20170904	juliweig	
Ind.	Change/Aend.	YYYYMMDD	Drawn/Gez.	hist. Dokumentnr.

Title	PACKING NOTE	HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN	
Benennung	BEIPACKZETTEL	HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN	
Doc.type BPZ	RA65266712	DP/TD 001	Ind. AB
MNR R911385557	RepL.by		

RA65266712 / RA65266712 / AB.1 / RA65092469 / ASSEM / AB.1

Fig. 10-11: HAS05.1-023 product insert (page 1)

HAS05.1-023 product insert (page 2)

Made in Germany

R911385558-AA

rexroth
A Bosch Company

HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN

R911385558

Stck	Benennung	MN
1	KLEBESCHILD UL FUSE 700VAC/30A	R911413406
1	BGR HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN	R911385593
2	SICHERUNGSTRENNER 50A/690V 14X51MM CH1&	R911378778
1	STECKKLEMME KL05,08F-FK-MSTBT-_0&	R911320179
4	KOMBI-SCHRAUBE ZISO10644-M5X16-8.8 &	R911294127
1	SCHELLE SCHL-S012*022-B12-ZN&	R911274471
1	STECK-KL3,50 F FK FMC P 1,5/ 6ST D 1-	R911323694
1	STECK-KL7,62 F FK TSPCP 6,0/ 3ST DL+ L	R911323329
2	SICHERUNG FWP 30,000A/800V	R911319963
Stck	Benennung	MN

BEIPACKZETTEL HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN

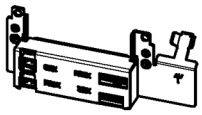
Stck	Benennung	MN
2	SICHERUNGSTRENNER 50A/690V 14X51MM CH1&	R911378778

R911378778

1:5

1	BGR HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN	R911385593

RA65158218



1:5

1	KLEBESCHILD UL FUSE 700VAC/30A	R911413406

RA95141032

1:2

AB	600000112335	20211027	juliweig	
AA	--	20170904	juliweig	
Ind.	Change/Aend.	YYYYMMDD	Drawn/Gez.	hist. Dokumentnr.

Title PACKING NOTE HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN
Benennung BEIPACKZETTEL HAS05.1-023-NNN-NN

Doc.type		DP/TD	Ind.
BPZ	RA65266712	001	AB

MNR R911385557 Repl.by

RA65266712 / RA65266712 / AB.1 / RA65092469 / ASSEM / AB.1

Fig. 10-12: HAS05.1-023 product insert (page 2)

10.10 HAS05.1-024, passive 42 V supply unit

10.10.1 View

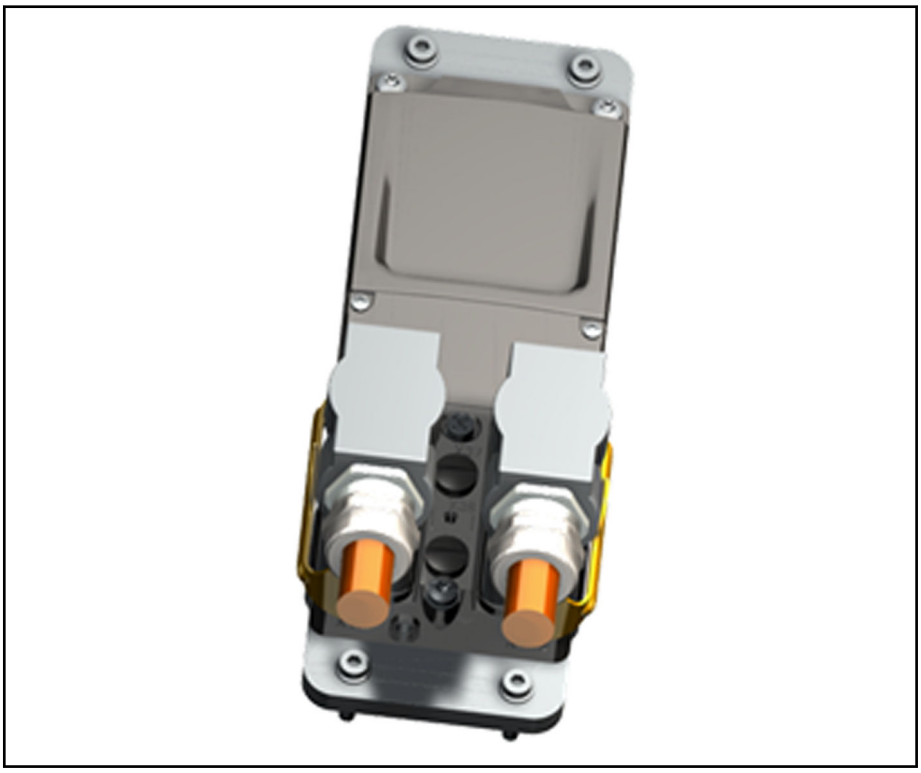


Fig. 10-13: HAS05.1-024, passive 42 V supply unit

10.10.2 Purpose

☞ Instead of this accessory, use the HAS05.1-21-NCN-NN accessory for components arranged side by side.

The accessory allows the drive line to be expanded by more components, if one of the following conditions applies:

- Power of the DC/DC converter (24V/42V) in KCU or KMV has already been used to capacity (e.g., due to many motors with integrated holding brakes)
- Voltage drop on the control voltage lines in the hybrid cable has reached its allowed limit (e.g., due to long cables)

The basic sizing criteria, like DC power or leakage capacitances, for the allowed length of the drive line and the number of axes also apply when the accessories are used.

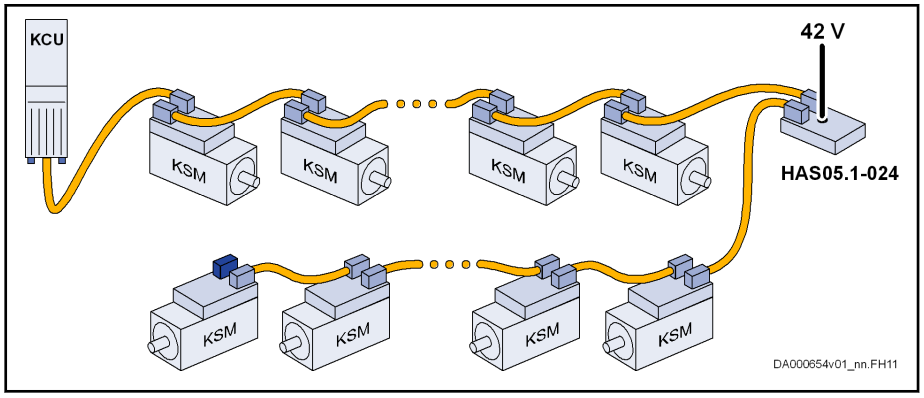
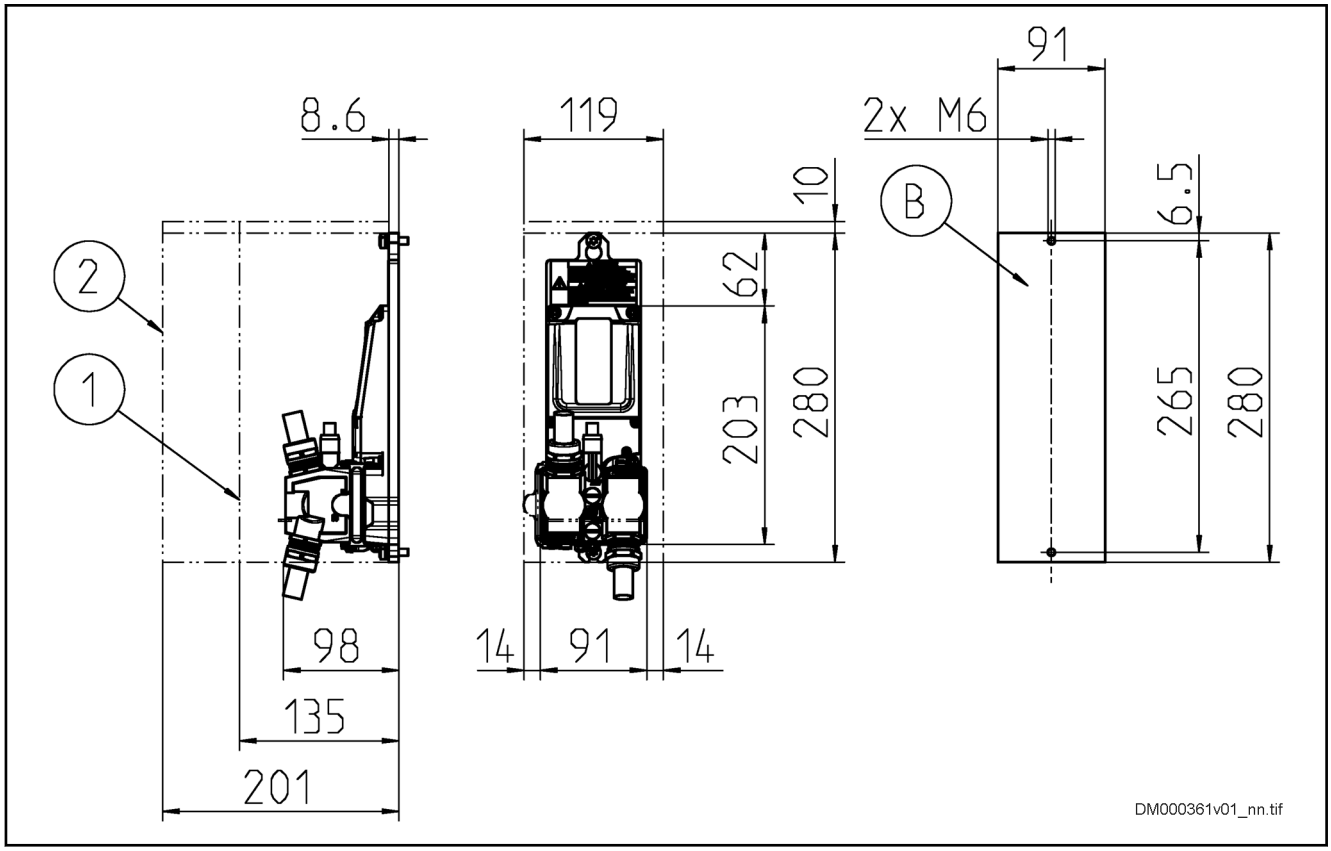


Fig. 10-14: HAS05.1-024

10.10.3 Properties

- Transmission of equipment grounding conductor, DC bus, communication, module bus, signals of safety technology
- Control voltages galvanically isolated between the zones before and after the accessory
- Allowed current: 15 A
- Degree of protection: IP65
- External power supply required (UL508-certified; 42 V_{DC}, ±10%; e.g. PULS "CPS20.361" (100-240 V, 480 W) or " QT20.361" (380-480 V, 480 W)

10.10.4 Dimensions

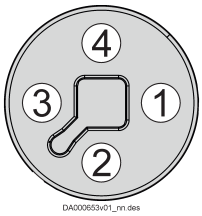


1 Mounting clearance (standard)
2 More mounting clearance with HAS10 accessory (fixing clip for hybrid cable connectors). More mounting clearance is required to install the HAS10 accessory with a screwdriver.
B Drilling pattern

Fig. 10-15: HAS05.1-024, dimensions

10.10.5 Connection

X37

View	Connection	Signal name	Function
	1	0V	42 V supply, max. 15 A
	2	0V	
	3	42V	
	4	42V	
M12 (4-pin, T-coded) female	**Unit**	**min.**	**max.**
Connection cable, stranded wire	mm^2	1.5	1.5
Cable cross section	AWG	16	16
Connection cable			e.g., PHOENIX CONTACT power cable - SAC-4P-M12MRT/ 10,0-PUR SH - 1424127

Tab. 10-12: Function, pin assignment, properties

X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point

chapter 6.3.3 "X103.1, X103.2, hybrid cable connection point" on page 169

10.11 HAS05.1-026, hybrid joint

With the hybrid joint it is impossible to comply with the specified minimum distances of the devices (see dimensional drawing).

Operate the drive system in such a way that the temperatures of the devices do not inadmissibly rise.

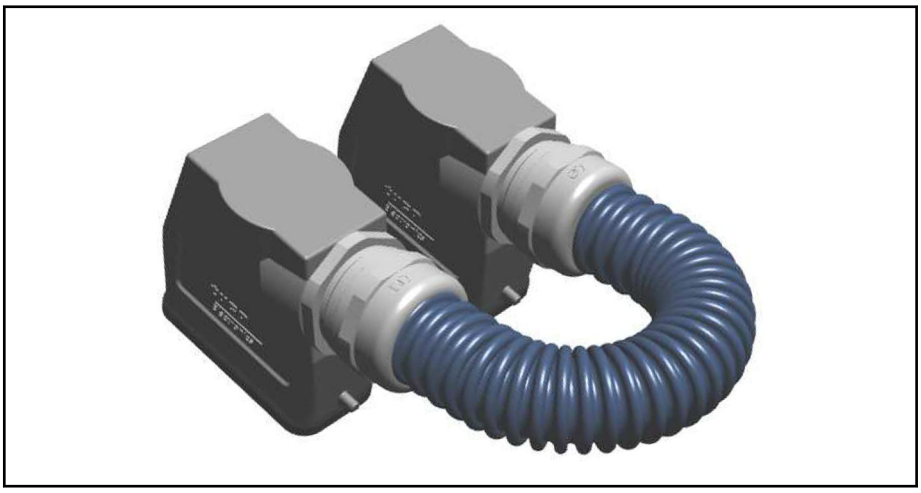


Fig. 10-16: HAS05.1-026-NNN-NN, hybrid joint

The accessory is a very short hybrid cable and connects two devices mounted side by side.

- Hybrid cable with communication
- Outgoing direction of the hybrid cable: B (away from the housing)

  [HAS05.1-021-NNN-NN: Outgoing direction of the hybrid cable: A (toward the housing)]
- Distance, connector center – connector center: **62 … 87 mm**
- Degree of protection IP65
- Material number: R911402120

10.12 HAS10, mechanical mounting parts

10.12.1 Type code

Short type designation	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40
Example:	H	A	S	1	0	.	1	-	0	0	1	-	0	0	2	-	N	N																								
	①			②			③			④					⑤					⑥																						
①	**Product:** HAS = IndraDrive accessories																																								
②	**Series:** 10 = Mechanical mounting parts																																								
③	**Design:** 1 = 1																																								
④	**Device assignment [1]:** 001 = KSM01.2, KSM02.1 KMS01.2 and KMS02.1 002 = HMU05.1																																								
⑤	**Other properties [2]:** 001 = Fixing clip of connectors for increased vibration resistance 002 = Fixing clip of connectors and master communication for increased vibration resistance 003 = Blank cover for mounting bays: 1 × parallel module / 1 × motor mains module / 1 × control section 004 = Motor monitor grounding 005 = Mounting plate for device width 200 mm 006 = Mounting plate for device width 220 mm 007 = Fixing clip for increased vibration resistance (maritime applications) 008 = Cross-brace 335 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 009 = Cross-brace 555 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 010 = Cross-brace 775 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 011 = Cross-brace 995 mm (for HAS10.1-002-007-NN) 012 = Push-through technology frame, size 1 013 = Push-through technology frame, size 2 014 = Push-through technology frame, size 3 015 = Push-through technology frame, size 4 016 = Push-through technology frame, size 5 017 = Push-through technology frame, size 6																																								
⑥	**Other design:** NN = None																																								

1) Device assignment "001" is only available with Other properties "001" and "002".

2) Device assignment "002" is only available with Other properties "003" to "011".

Tab. 10-13: HAS10, type code

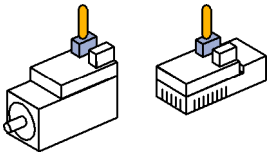
10.12.2 Use

Use

HAS10	Use
HAS10.1-001-**001**-NN	Fixing clip for hybrid cables at devices **without** option TO, ES …
HAS10.1-001-**002**-NN	Fixing clip for hybrid cables at devices **with** option TO, ES …
HAS10.1-001-**003 … 006**-NN	Mechanical mounting parts for HMU05 universal inverters. Further information: See HMU05 Project Planning Manual.

Tab. 10-14: HAS10

Restricted Usage of the Accessory:



The accessory **cannot** be used at **hybrid cables with a vertical outgoing direction** of the cable from the connector.

HAS10.1-001-001-NN

The accessory **HAS10.1-001-001-NN** consists of a fixing clip with a screw.

The fixing clip is screwed to a KSM or KMS and increases the vibration resistance of the connected hybrid cable connectors.

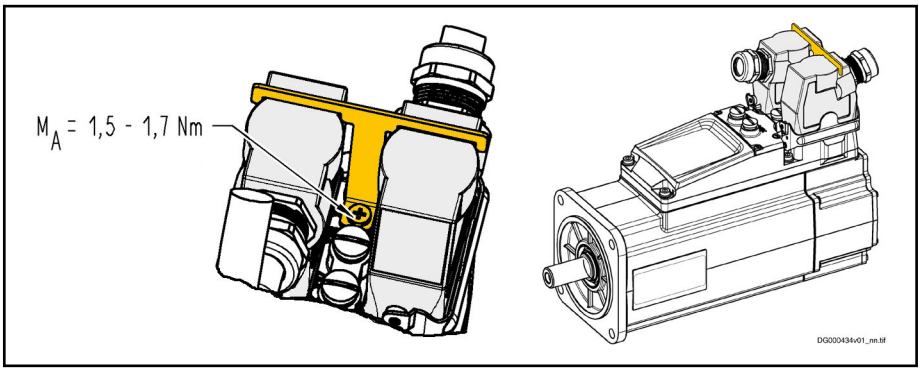


Fig. 10-17: HAS10.1-001-001-NN

HAS10.1-001-002-NN

The **HAS10.1-001-002-NN** accessory consists of the following parts:

- Fixing clip with screw (tightening torque: 1.5 … 1.7 Nm)
- RKB0043 cable
- Cable tie

The fixing clip increases the vibration resistance of the connected hybrid cable connectors. The RKB0043 cable is fixed to the fixing clip with 2 cable ties.

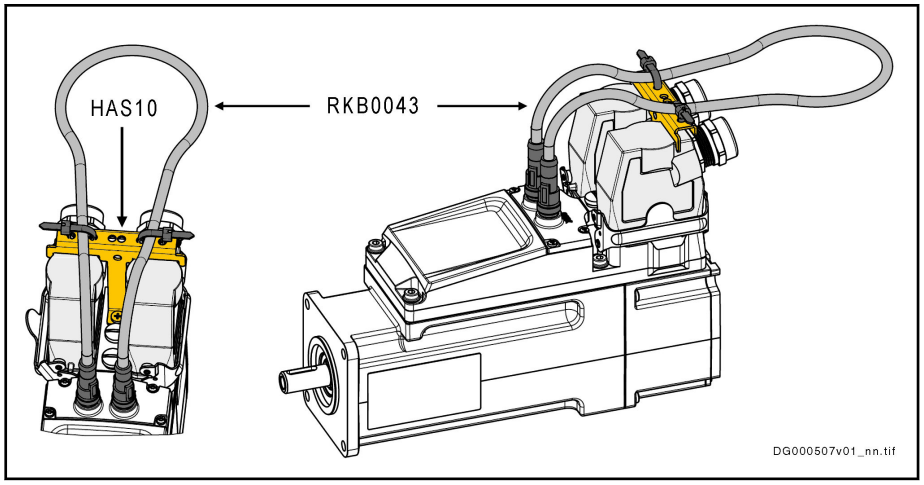


Fig. 10-18: HAS10.1-001-002-NN

10.12.3 Scope of supply

Scope of supply Components of the accessory: see product insert

HAS10.1-001-001-NN product insert

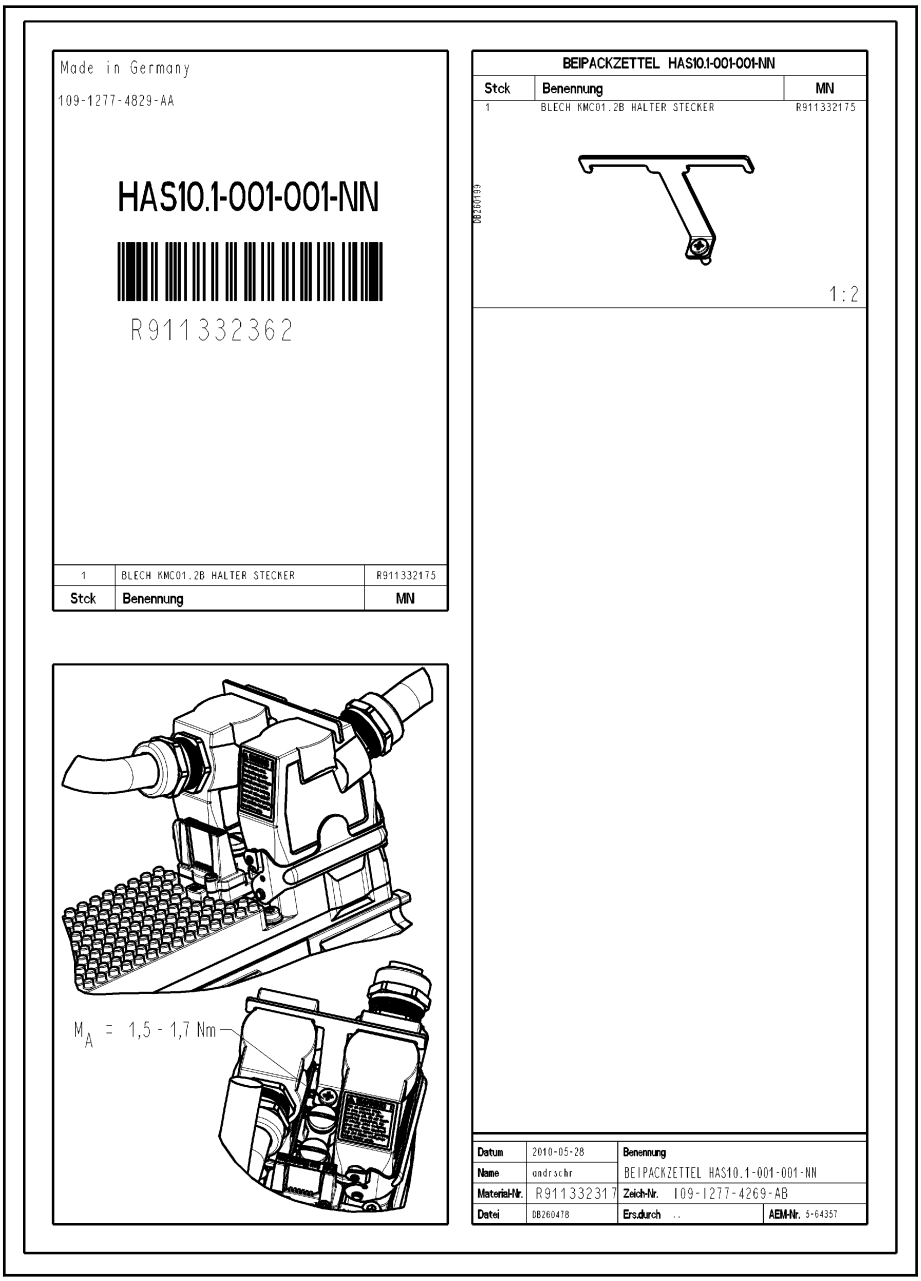


Fig. 10-19: HAS10.1-001-001-NN product insert

HAS10.1-001-002-NN product insert

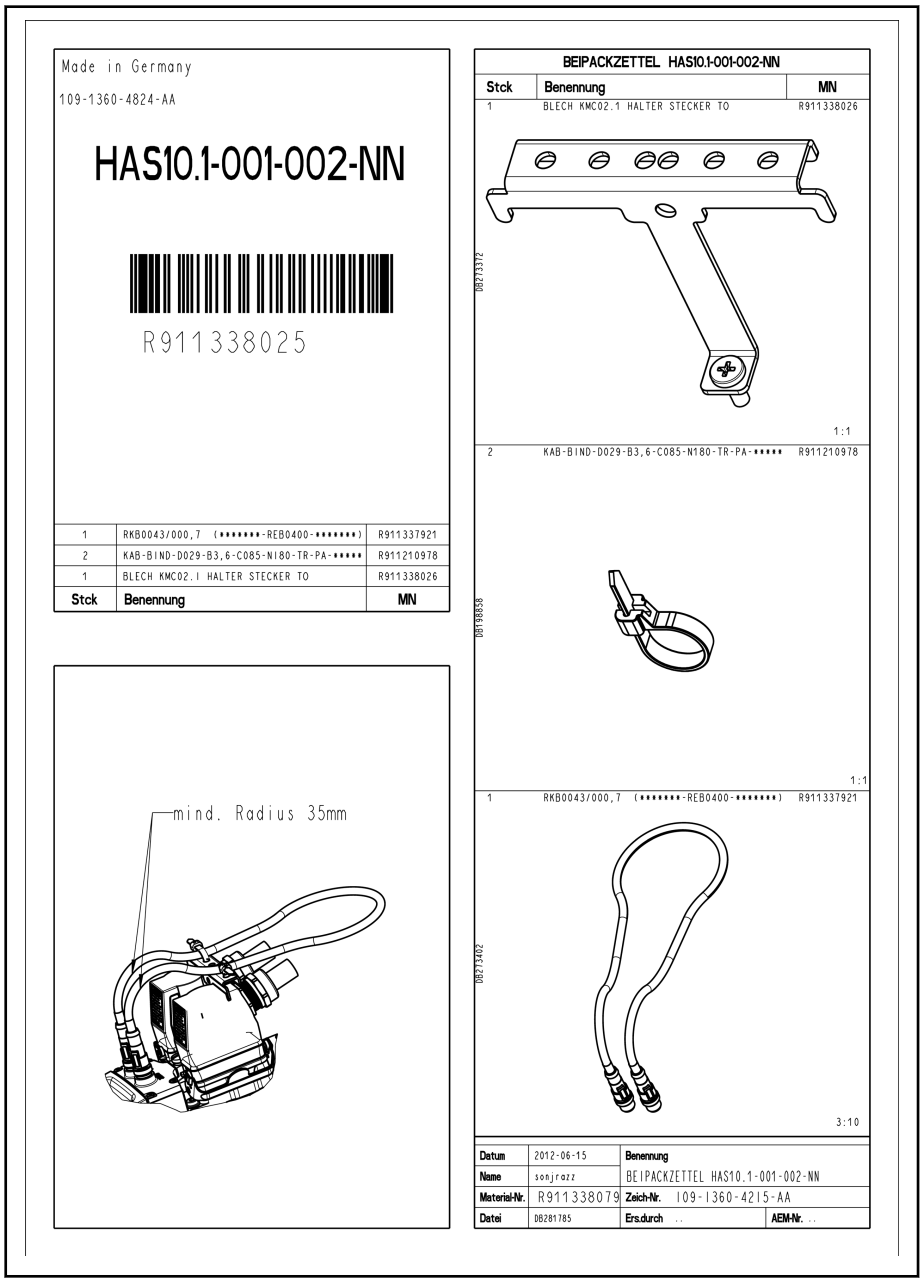


Fig. 10-20: HAS10.1-001-002-NN product insert

10.13 RKB0021, Multi-Ethernet cable

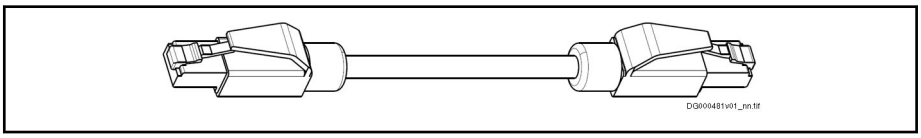


Fig. 10-21: RKB0021

Use The cable connects the drive system to the higher-level control unit.

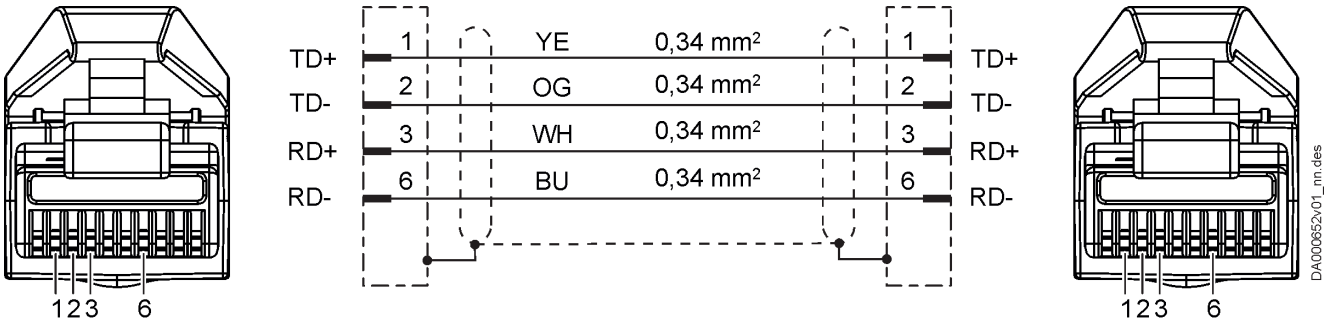
Length that can be ordered, order code, material number

Length	Order code	Material number
To be freely selected (max. 100 m)	RKB0021/xxx,x (xxx,x = length in meters) Example: 13.5 m ⇒ RKB0021/013,5	R911389159
5 m	RKB0021/005,0	R911389205

Tab. 10-15: RKB0021

RKB0021

Plug-in connector bus	Bulk cable	Plug-in connector bus
RJ-45, 4-pin	REB0400	RJ-45, 4-pin



Tab. 10-16: RKB0021 interconnection diagram

Data sheet - bulk cable

Description	Symbol	Unit	REB0400
Brief description of cable			(2 × 2 × 0.34 mm²)C
Ambient temperature for operation		°C	-40 … +70
Ambient temperature for transport		°C	-50 … +70
Ambient temperature for storage		°C	-20 … +60
Material of cable jacket			PUR
Cable jacket color			RAL3020
Wire insulation material			according to EN 13602 -CU-ETP-A…
Conductor resistance at 20 °C	R_{20}	Ω/km	< 120
			Latest amendment: 2021-01-18

Description	Symbol	Unit	REB0400
Diameter	D	mm	6.5 ±0.2
Specific cable weight	m	kg/m	0.061
Application in flexible cable tracks			✓
Bending cycles			3×10^6
Bending radius with flexible routing		mm	15 × D
Bending radius with permanent routing		mm	5 × D
Bending and torsional stress		°/m	max. ±30
Max. horizontal travel distance	s	m	10
Maximum travel velocity	v	m/s	4
Maximum acceleration	a_{max}	m/s²	4
UL			444
CSA			C22.2 No. 214-02
AWM Style			external use
RoHS (EU)			compliant
Halogens			halogen-free
Oil resistance			EN 60811-2-1
Flammability			EN 60332-1
			Latest amendment: 2021-01-18

Tab. 10-17: REB - technical data

10.14 RKB0013, Multi-Ethernet cable

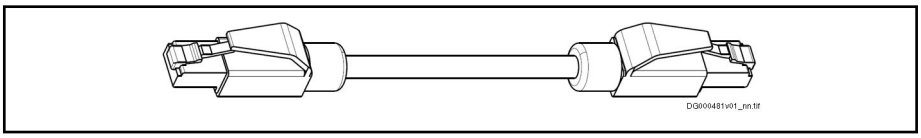


Fig. 10-22: RKB0013

Use Short cable for connecting a drive connection box KCU to a neighboring device in the control cabinet.

Minimum bending radius: 30.75 mm

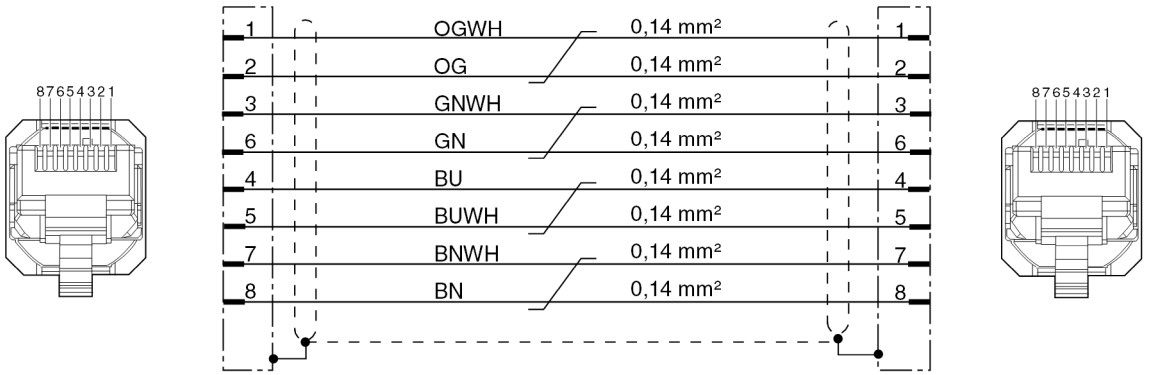
Length that can be ordered, order code

Length	Order code	Material number
0.55 m	RKB0013/00,55	R911317801

Tab. 10-18: RKB0013

RKB0013

Plug-in connector bus	Bulk cable	Plug-in connector bus
RJ-45, 8-pin	sercos III cable, 100-Base-T, CAT5E, shielded	RJ-45, 8-pin



Use instruction: only fixed lengths

Tab. 10-19: RKB0013 interconnection diagram

10.15 RKB0033, cable for safety technology

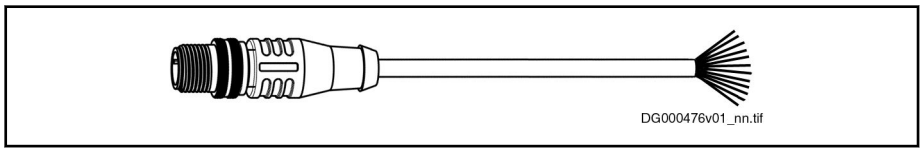


Fig. 10-23: RKB0033

Assignment

For devices with safety option L3. The cable can be used to form a new safety zone within a drive line in a distributed manner.

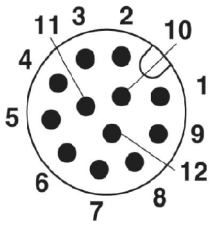
Length that can be ordered, order code

Length	Order code	Material number
1.5 m	RKB0033 / 001,5	R911334865
10 m	RKB0033 / 010,0	R911335718

Tab. 10-20: RKB0033

RKB0033		
Plug-in connector	**Bulk cable**	**Plug-in connector**
M12, 12-pin	Bus cable	Open ends

Interconnection diagram



1	SI_Ch1	BN
3	Zone_Br	WH
6	SI_0V_In	YE
4	+24V	GN
5	SI_Ch1_In	PK
8	Dyn_Ch1	GY
7	SI_Ch2_In	BK
10	SI_0V	VT
9	24V_Br	RD
2	SI_Ch2	BU
11	GND	GYPK
12	Dyn_Ch2	RDBU

Use instruction: only fixed lengths

Tab. 10-21: RKB0033 parts

10.16 RKB0043, communication cable

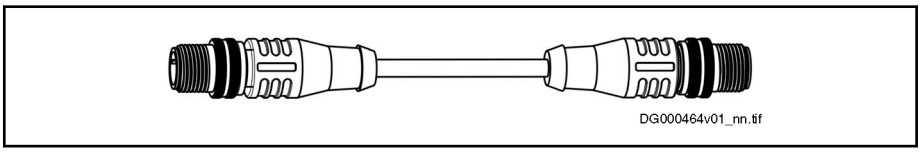


Fig. 10-24: RKB0043

Assignment

1. For devices with unused communication output coupling (X108, X109). The cable connects the connection points X108 and X109.
2. For devices with terminal connector RHS0014. The cable connects two devices via the terminal connectors RHS0014.

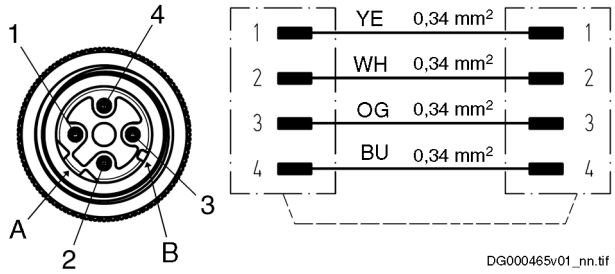
Length that can be ordered, order code, material number

Length	Order code	Material number
To be freely selected	RKB0043/xxx,x (xxx,x = length in meters)	R911172134

Tab. 10-22: RKB0043

RKB0043		
Plug-in connector	**Bulk cable**	**Plug-in connector**
M12, 4-pin, male, D-coded	Bus cable (REB0400)	M12, 4-pin, male, D-coded

Interconnection diagram



A: Coding groove; B: Coding nose

Tab. 10-23: Parts RKB0043

Data sheet - bulk cable

Description	Symbol	Unit	REB0400
Brief description of cable			(2 × 2 × 0.34 mm²)C
Ambient temperature for operation		°C	-40 … +70
Ambient temperature for transport		°C	-50 … +70
Ambient temperature for storage		°C	-20 … +60
Material of cable jacket			PUR
Cable jacket color			RAL3020
			Latest amendment: 2021-01-18

Description	Symbol	Unit	REB0400
Wire insulation material			according to EN 13602 -CU-ETP-A…
Conductor resistance at 20 °C	R_{20}	Ω/km	< 120
Diameter	D	mm	6.5 ±0.2
Specific cable weight	m	kg/m	0.061
Application in flexible cable tracks			✓
Bending cycles			3×10^6
Bending radius with flexible routing		mm	15 × D
Bending radius with permanent routing		mm	5 × D
Bending and torsional stress		°/m	max. ±30
Max. horizontal travel distance	s	m	10
Maximum travel velocity	v	m/s	4
Maximum acceleration	a_{max}	m/s²	4
UL			444
CSA			C22.2 No. 214-02
AWM Style			external use
RoHS (EU)			compliant
Halogens			halogen-free
Oil resistance			EN 60811-2-1
Flammability			EN 60332-1
			Latest amendment: 2021-01-18

Tab. 10-24: REB - technical data

10.17 RKB0044, communication cable

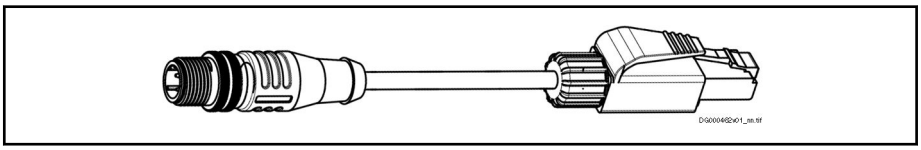


Fig. 10-25: RKB0044

Assignment

1. For devices with communication output coupling: The cable connects the other communication nodes via the connection points X108 and X109.
2. The cable connects the terminal connector RHS0014 to the following components:
   - Another KCU
   - Other communication nodes
   - A higher-level control unit

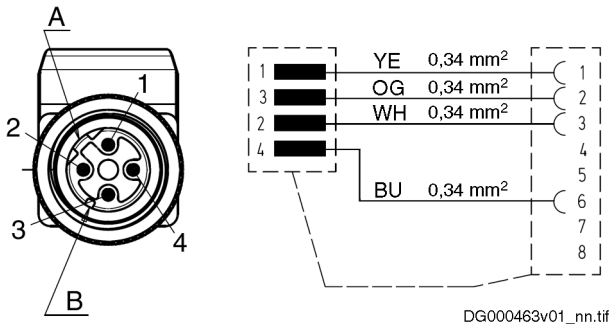
Length that can be ordered, order code, material number

Length	Order code	Material number
To be freely selected	RKB0044/xxx,x (xxx,x = length in meters)	R911172135

Tab. 10-25: RKB0044

RKB0044		
Plug-in connector	**Bulk cable**	**Plug-in connector**
M12, 4-pin, male, D-coded	Bus cable (REB0400)	RJ-45

Interconnection diagram



A: Coding groove; B: Coding nose

Tab. 10-26: Parts RKB0044

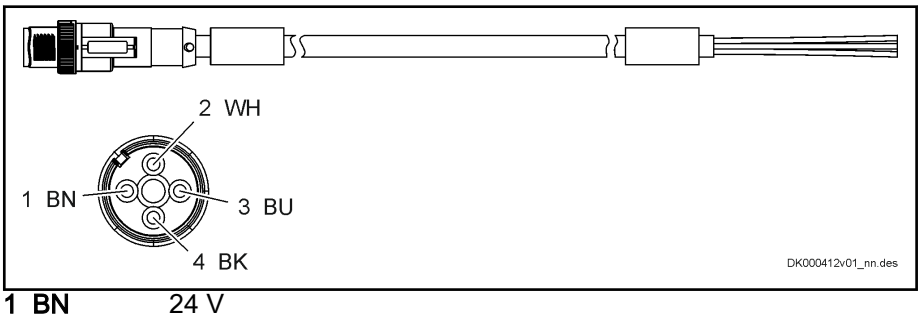
Data sheet - bulk cable

Description	Symbol	Unit	REB0400
Brief description of cable			(2 × 2 × 0.34 mm²)C
Ambient temperature for operation		°C	-40 … +70
			Latest amendment: 2021-01-18

Description	Symbol	Unit	REB0400
Ambient temperature for transport		°C	-50 … +70
Ambient temperature for storage		°C	-20 … +60
Material of cable jacket			PUR
Cable jacket color			RAL3020
Wire insulation material			according to EN 13602 -CU-ETP-A…
Conductor resistance at 20 °C	R_{20}	Ω/km	< 120
Diameter	D	mm	6.5 ±0.2
Specific cable weight	m	kg/m	0.061
Application in flexible cable tracks			✓
Bending cycles			3×10^6
Bending radius with flexible routing		mm	15 × D
Bending radius with permanent routing		mm	5 × D
Bending and torsional stress		°/m	max. ±30
Max. horizontal travel distance	s	m	10
Maximum travel velocity	v	m/s	4
Maximum acceleration	a_{max}	m/s²	4
UL			444
CSA			C22.2 No. 214-02
AWM Style			external use
RoHS (EU)			compliant
Halogens			halogen-free
Oil resistance			EN 60811-2-1
Flammability			EN 60332-1
			Latest amendment: 2021-01-18

Tab. 10-27: REB - technical data

10.18 RKB0054, fan cable



1 BN 24 V
2 WH 0 V
3 BU n. c.
4 BK n. c.

Fig. 10-26: RKB0054

Assignment

For devices of the "W" cooling type (forced cooling).

Length that can be ordered, order code, material number

Length	Order code	Material number
10 m	RKB0054/010,0	R911378870

Tab. 10-28: RKB0054

10.19 RKS0010, Interface Cable

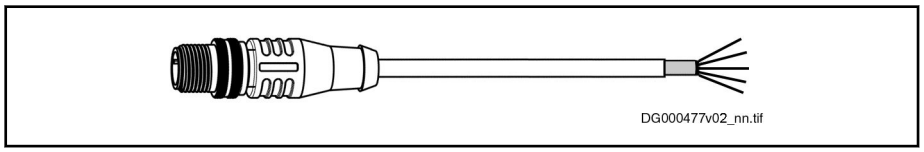


Fig. 10-27: RKS0010

Assignment Cable to connect digital I/Os to X37 or X38.

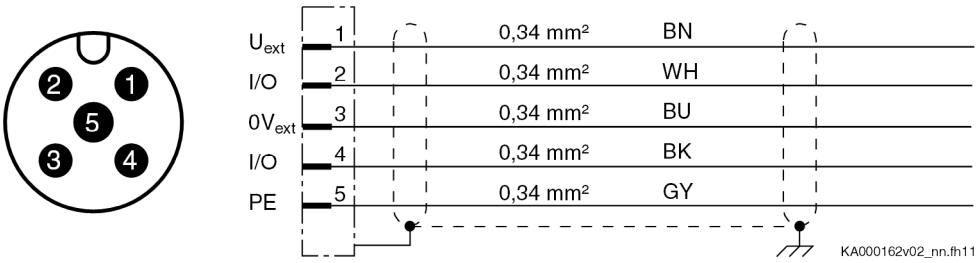
Length That Can Be Ordered, Order Code, Material Number

Length	Order code	Material number
3 m	RKS0010 / 03,0	R911322843

Tab. 10-29: RKB0013

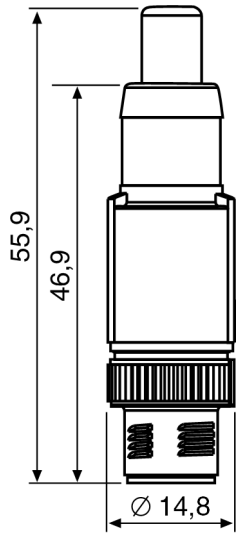
RKS0010		
Plug-in connector	**Bulk cable**	**Plug-in connector**
M12, A-coded, shielded	n.s.	Open ends

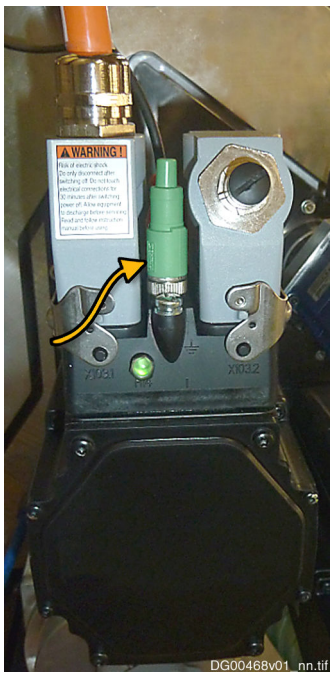
Interconnection diagram



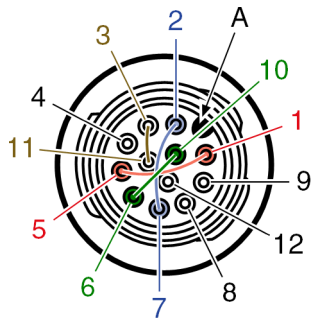
Tab. 10-30: Parts RKS0010

10.20 RBS0023, connector for safety zone node





Tab. 10-31: Connector RBS0023

RBS0023 Connector M12, 12-pin, A-coded; mat. no.: R911335348	Connection	Connected to connection	Function
 A: Coding	1	5	When a KSM/KMS with optional safety technology is to be a safety zone node within a safety zone, the connection point X141 must be equipped with the connector RBS0023. The connector RBS0023 jumpers the following connections: • 5 ↔ 1 • 7 ↔ 2 • 6 ↔ 10 • 11 ↔ 3 KSM/KMS without optional safety technology can be operated within a safety zone without the connector RBS0023, because the signals are directly transmitted to the next safety zone node via X103.1 and X103.2.
	2	7	
	3	11	
	4	n. c.	
	5	1	
	6	10	
	7	2	
	8	n. c.	
	9	n. c.	
	10	6	
	11	3	
	12	n. c.	

Tab. 10-32: Function, pin assignment, properties

10.21 RLS0725, KMS03 motor power cable connector

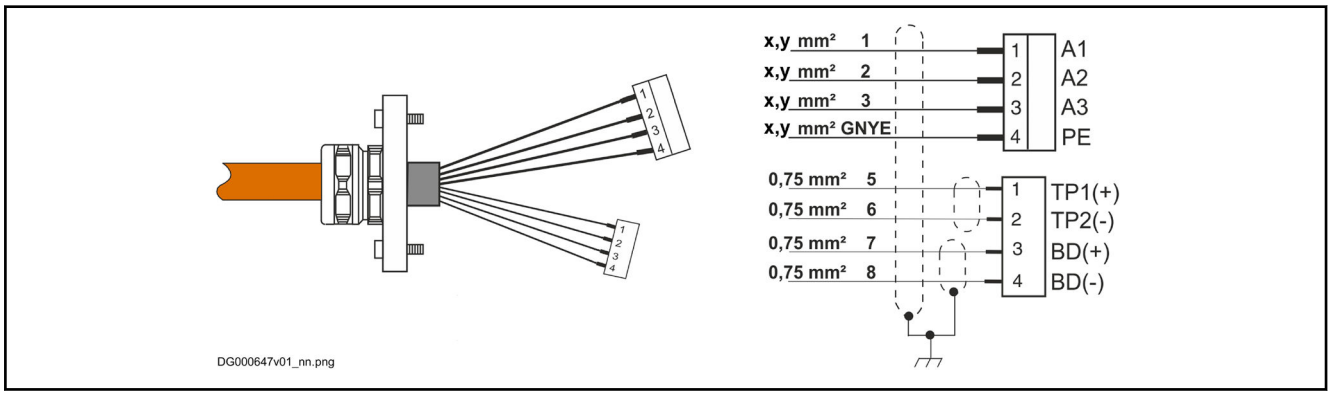


Fig. 10-28: RLS0725

Third-party motor ↔ KMS03

- Cable diameter: 9 … 16 mm
- RLS0725/K01
  x,y mm^2 = 1.0 mm^2
- RLS0725/K02
  x,y mm^2 = 1.5 mm^2

MS2N (60K) ↔ KMS03

Motor power cable:

- M17, 1.0 mm^2: RL2-009CB-NN-xxx,x
- M23, 1.0 mm^2: RL2-029CB-NN-xxx,x
- M40, 1.5 mm^2: RL2-049DB-NN-xxx,x
- M40, 2.5 mm^2: RL2-049EB-NN-xxx,x

MS2N (100K) ↔ KMS03

Motor power cable:

- M17, 1.0 mm^2: RL2-009CB-NN-xxx,x
- M23, 1.0 mm^2: RL2-029CB-NN-xxx,x
- M23, 1.5 mm^2: RL2-029DB-NN-xxx,x
- M40, 1.5 mm^2: RL2-049DB-NN-xxx,x
- M40, 2.5 mm^2: RL2-049EB-NN-xxx,x
- M58, 2.5 mm^2: RL2-069EB-NN-xxx,x

10.22 RGS0725, KMS03 encoder cable connector

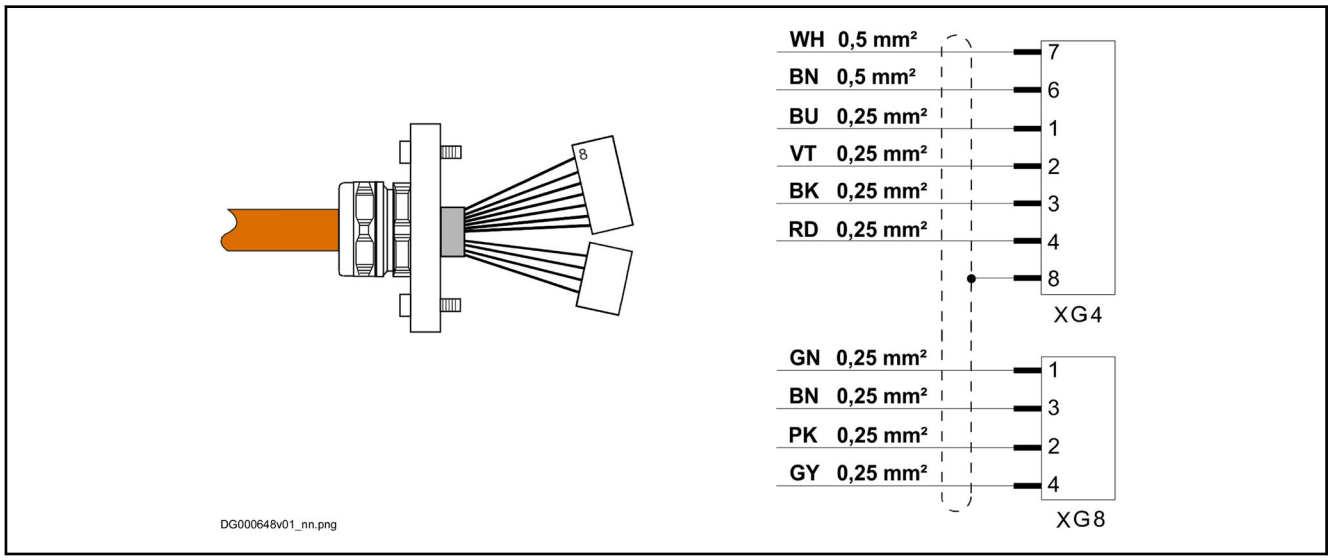


Fig. 10-29: RGS0725/K02

Third-party motor ↔ KMS03

- Cable diameter: 5 … 10 mm

KMS03

Encoder cable:

- RG2-003AAB-NN-xxx,x (digital encoder)
- RG2-003ABB-NN-xxx,x (analog encoder)

10.23 RHS0725, KMS03 hybrid motor cable connector

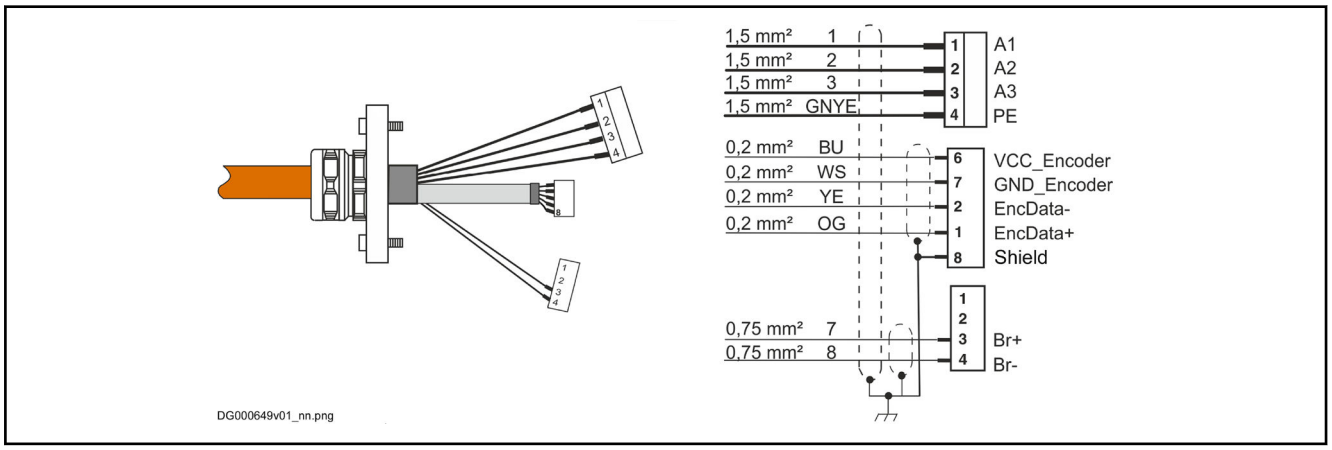


Fig. 10-30: RHS0725/K02

Third-party motor ↔ KMS03

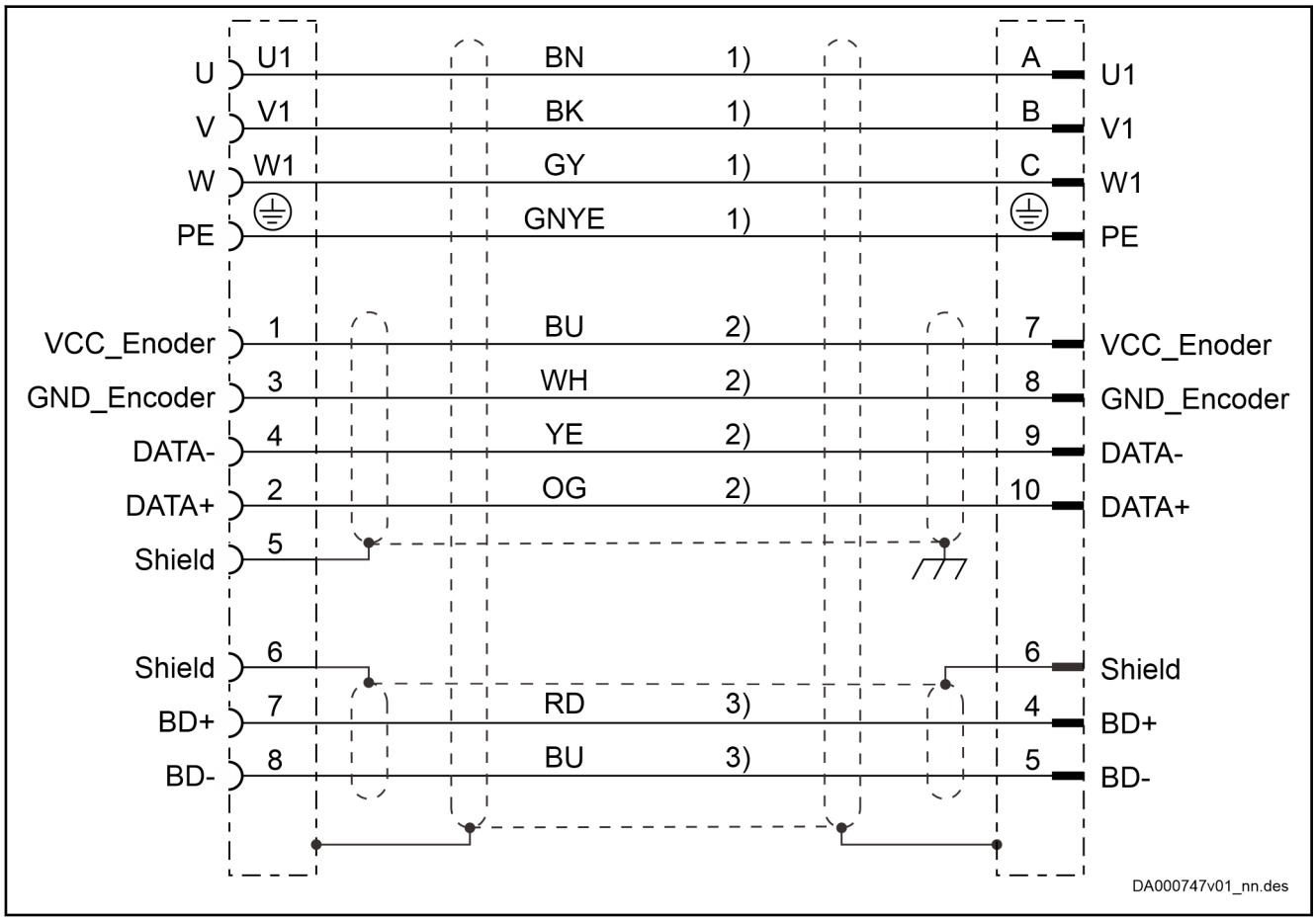
- Cable diameter: 9 … 16 mm

MS2N ↔ KMS03

Hybrid motor cable:

- RH2-029DBB-NN-xxx,x

10.24 RH2-020BB, KMS02 - MS2N hybrid motor cable



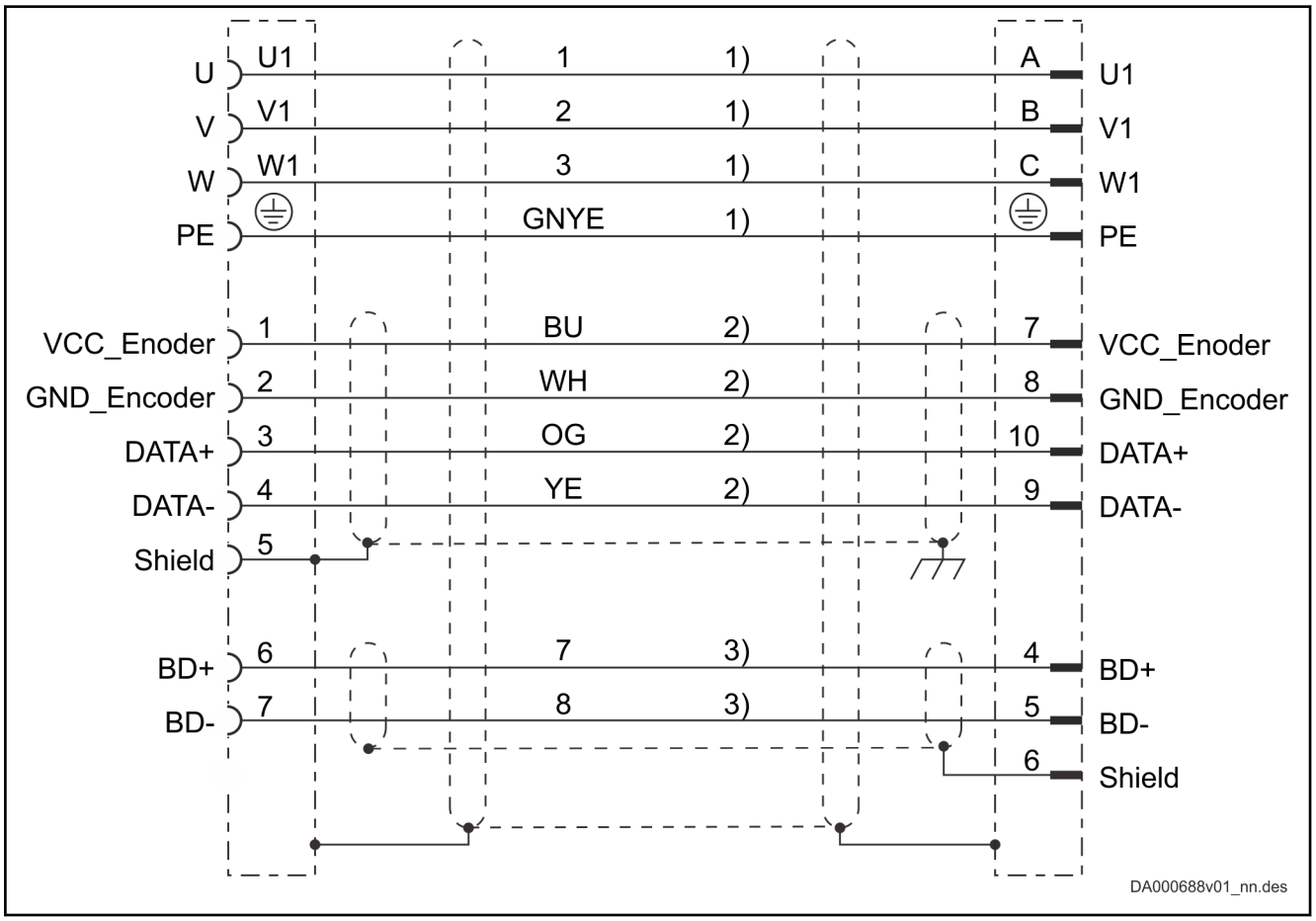
1) Line cross section ≥ 0.75 mm²; observe allowed cable length
2) Line cross section ≥ 0.2 mm²
3) Line cross section ≥ 0.5 mm²

Fig. 10-31: RH2-020BB

MS2N (M17) ↔ KMS02 *Hybrid motor cable:*

- RH2-020BBB-NN-xxx,x

10.25 RH2-030DB, KMS02 - MS2N hybrid motor cable



1) Line cross section ≥ 1.5 mm²; observe allowed cable length
2) Line cross section ≥ 0.2 mm²
3) Line cross section ≥ 0.75 mm²

Fig. 10-32: RH2-030DB

MS2N (M23) ↔ KMS02

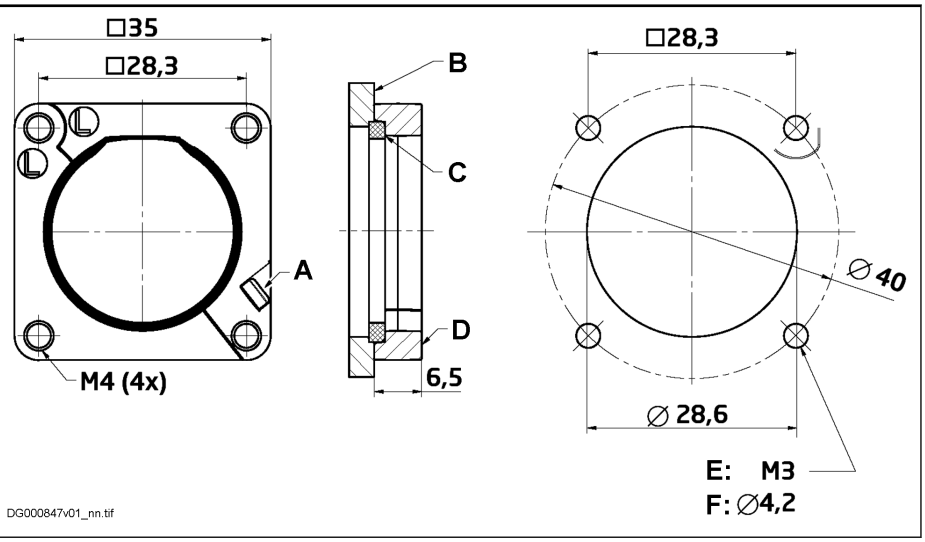
Hybrid motor cable:

- RH2-030DBB-NN-xxx,x

10.26 Metallic flange for circular connectors

For RKH09xx hybrid cables, a **metallic flange** can be fitted to the circular connector.

This allows hybrid cable housing ducts to be implemented with a pluggable connection at the housing (control cabinet, machine).



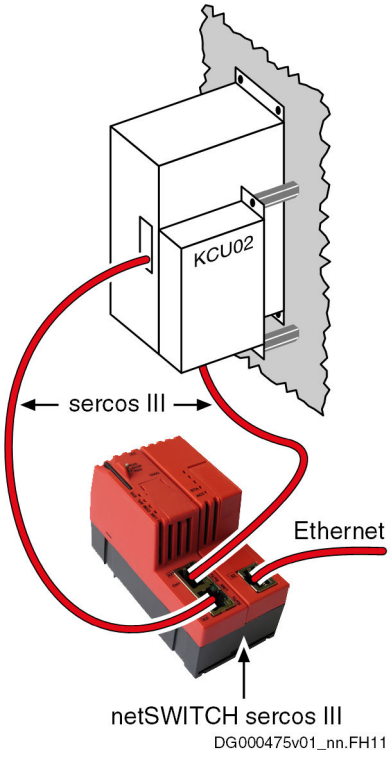
A	Clamping screw
B	Housing, control cabinet wall
C	Gasket
D	Flange
E	Mounted to front wall
F	Mounted to back wall

Tab. 10-33: Metallic flange for circular connectors

Supply source Intercontec Produkt GmbH

Metallic flange (hinged) with sealing ring: E0.222.02

10.27 netSWITCH sercos III



The accessory "netSWITCH sercos III" (mat. no.: R911328254) connects a sercos III network into a standard Ethernet network.

The netSwitch can be used to loop TCP/IP components (e.g. visualization devices) into the sercos III ring.

See documentation of the accessory for detailed information.

Engineering: The accessory "netSWITCH sercos III" can be looped into the sercos III ring for drive system engineering. Drive system engineering is also possible via a connected control unit (MLC) or via a drive with an open sercos ring (can be connected at terminal connector RHS0014).

Tab. 10-34: netSWITCH sercos III

11 Commissioning, operation, diagnostics and maintenance

11.1 Notes on commissioning

11.1.1 General information

⚠ WARNING **High electrical voltage! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock or serious injury!**

Read and observe the detailed safety instructions contained in this documentation in chapter "Safety instructions for electric drives and controls".

11.1.2 Preparation

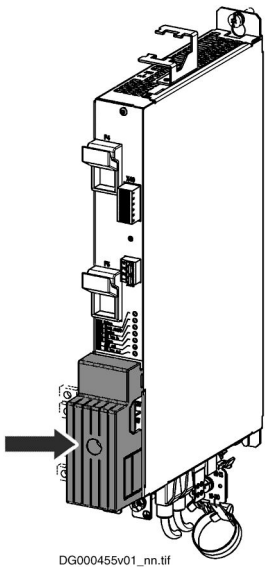
1. Keep the documentation of all used products ready.
2. Check the products for damage.
3. Check all mechanical and electrical connections.
4. Activate the safety devices and monitoring systems of the installation.

11.1.3 Procedure

Commission the drive system according to the instructions contained in the corresponding product documentation. See the Functional Description of the firmware for the corresponding information.

The commissioning of drive controllers and control unit may require additional steps. The functionality and performance check of the installations is not part of motor commissioning. Instead, it is carried out within the scope of the commissioning of the machine as a whole. Observe the machine manufacturer's specifications and instructions.

11.2 Notes on operation

	**WARNING!** Lethal electric shock from live parts with more than 50 V! Never operate the KCU02 drive connection box without the touch guard mounted. See also chapter 9.4.2 "Touch guard" on page 291.

Tab. 11-1:

Make sure that the ambient conditions described are complied with during operation.

11.3 Diagnostic functions

11.3.1 KMV diagnostic display

LED H14

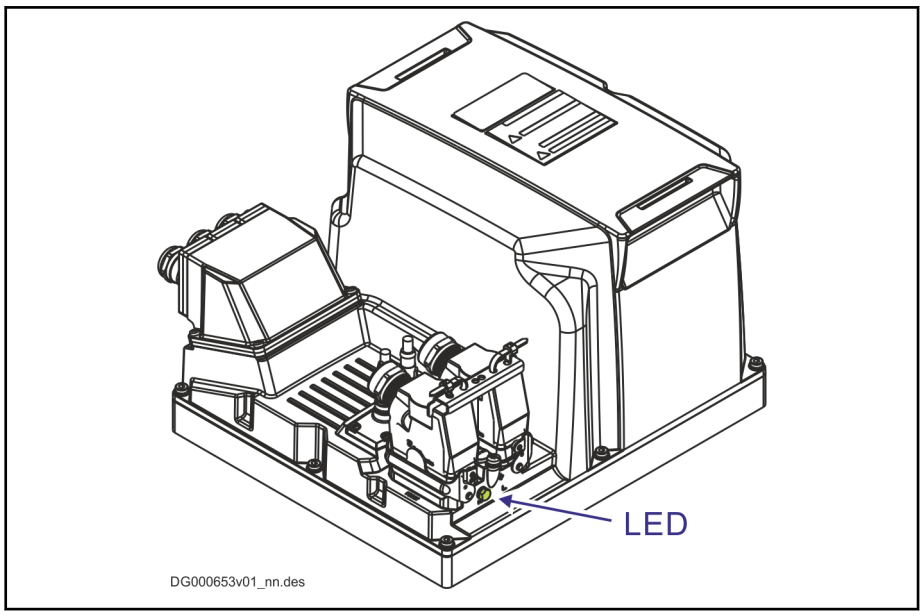


Fig. 11-1: LED H14

At the device, there is a bicolor LED which displays the status.

LED Color / flashing pattern [1)]	Significance *Measures*
○ Off --	Supply unit not switched on *Check 24V supply and switch it on, if not yet done*
	Cable interrupted *Check cable and connector*
	Hardware defective *Replace hardware*
☼ Flashing green GN -- ↩	Firmware update active
GN -- -- -- -- -- -- ↩	• Transition command active • PM (parameter mode)
GN -- GN -- -- -- -- -- -- ↩	• **bb** (control section ready for oper., mains voltage not available) • **ZKS** (DC bus short circuit)
GN -- GN -- GN -- -- -- -- -- -- ↩	• **Ab** (drive ready for operation, power on) • **Bb** (control section and power section ready for operation, mains voltage available) • **charg** (DC bus charging active)

LED Color / flashing pattern [1]	Significance *Measures*
 Green GN	• **AH** (Drive Halt) • **AF** (Drive in control) • **Lb** (supply unit in rectifier mode) • **LB** (supply unit in voltage control) • **I LB** (supply unit in current control)
 Flashing red-green GN -- RD -- -- -- -- -- --	Bus state (e.g., not active, pre-operational, …)
GN RD	Loader active
GN GN -- -- GN GN -- -- RD RD -- -- RD RD -- --	Identification
 Flashing red RD --	Firmware update error *Repeat firmware update*
RD -- -- -- -- -- --	• All warnings • Command errors *Read detailed state via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message"*
RD -- RD -- -- -- -- -- --	All errors (except F4xxx) *Read detailed state via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message" and carry out service function*
RD -- RD -- RD -- -- -- -- -- --	Communication error (F4xxx) *If necessary, read detailed state via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message"*
 Red RD	Booting phase *Wait until booting phase is over (approx. 2 minutes)*
	System error (F9xxx) • *Switch off and on; replace hardware, if necessary* • *Check whether programming module has been plugged*

1) Flashing pattern: One square corresponds to a duration of 250 ms; the arrow marks the end of a cycle; abbreviations on the squares: GN = LED permanently lit green, RD = LED permanently lit red, -- = LED is off

Tab. 11-2: LED displays

11.3.2 KCU02 diagnostic display

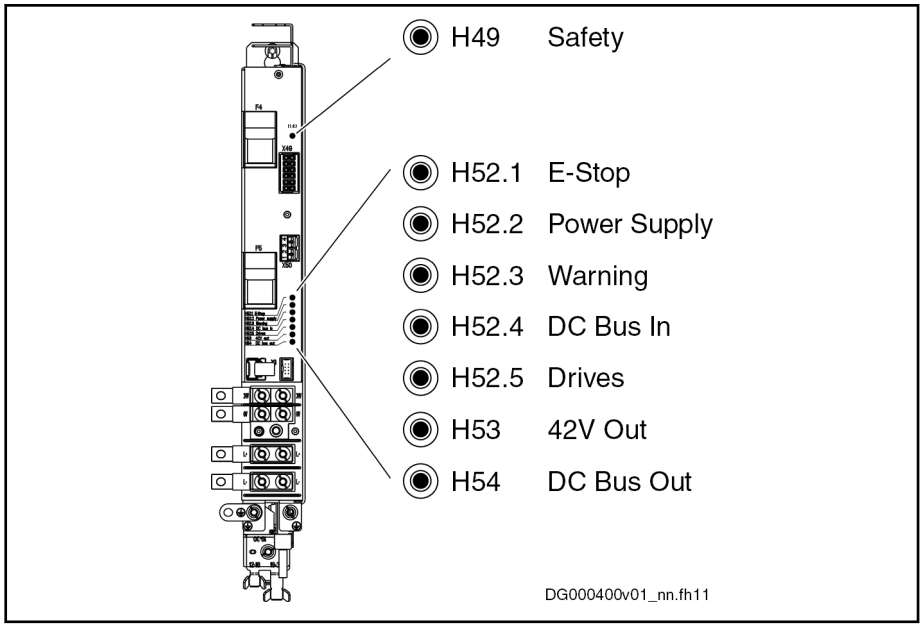


Fig. 11-2: LEDs at KCU02

LED	Color / status		Significance	Measures
H49 Safety		Green	Safety technology signals without error	None
		Red	Safety technology signals with error (Error is saved until the device is switched off.)	Check safety technology wiring for short circuit.
H52.1 E-Stop		Off	E-Stop not activated	None
		Red	E-Stop active (/E_Stop)	Deactivate E-Stop, if necessary (see connection point X50)
H52.2 Power Supply		Green	Supply unit without error, regular status	None
		Red	Supply unit signals error (/Bb_V)	Check power supply, see also "F2086 Error supply module"
H52.3 Warning		Green	Supply unit without warning (/Warn), regular status	None
		Red	Supply unit signals warning	Check supply unit, see also "E2086 Prewarning supply module overload"
H52.4 DC Bus In		Off	DC bus voltage (L+; L-) too low	Switch power on at supply unit
			Module bus not connected (if H54 green)	Connect module bus (connection point X1)
		Green	DC bus voltage (L+; L-) without error (Ud), regular status	None

LED	Color / status		Significance	Measures
H52.5 Drives		Green	No error at module bus, regular status	None
		Red	Module bus error (/Bb_A)	• Check module bus wiring • Check control voltage supply of the devices; see also "F2087 Module group communication error"
		Red/ green Flashing	Drive system carries out error reaction (Bb_A)	Bring device at module bus to readiness for operation; see also diagnostic message "E2810 Drive system not ready for operation"
H53 42V Out		Green	Control voltage at output X53 okay	None
		Red	Control voltage at output X53 faulty or control voltage outside of tolerance Error is saved until switch-off	Overload at output: • Check control voltage supply • Check voltage at X53 • Reduce load • Remove short circuit
H54 DC Bus Out		Off	DC bus (L+, L-) not ready for power output	None
		Green	DC bus (L+, L-) ready for power output	None
		Red	DC bus voltage (L+; L-) at output X54 not okay	Check fuses F4, F5 and replace them, if necessary

Tab. 11-3: KCU02 LED displays

11.3.3 KSM/KMS diagnostic display

LED H14

LED at device

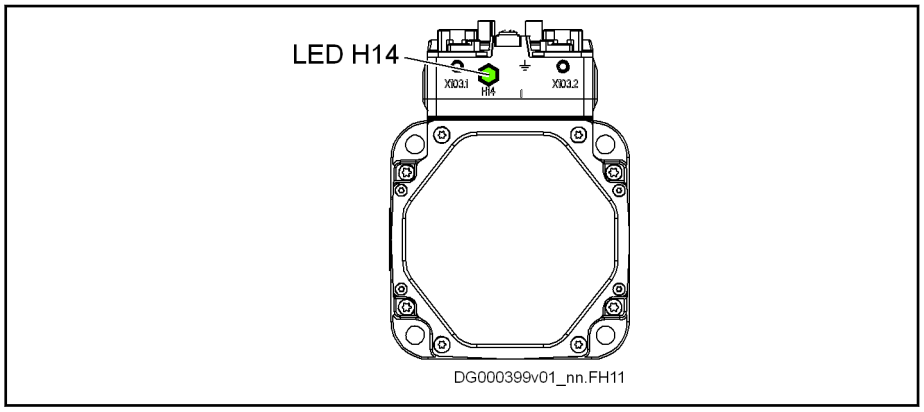


Fig. 11-3: LED H14 (KSM example)

At the device, there is a tricolor LED which displays the drive status.

Diagnostic display with MPx-17/18

H14 Color / flashing pattern [1)]		Significance (drive status)	Measures
○	Off -- -- -- --	Supply unit not switched on	Check and, if necessary, switch on the 24-V supply
		Cable interrupted	Check cable and connector X18
		Hardware defective	Replace hardware
☼	Flashing green GN GN -- --	Drive is error-free (phases 2, 3 and 4); in phase 4, drive is ready for drive enable ("Bb")	If necessary, read exact status via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message"
☀	Green GN GN GN GN	Power on and DC bus voltage available ("Ab")	Drive is error-free in operation and runs according to inputs
		Drive in control ["AF", "AH" or drive command active (Cxxxs)]	
☼	Flashing green-yellow GN GN YE YE	Switching command active (C01xx/C02xx) Switching command error (C01xx/C02xx)	If necessary, read exact status via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message"
		Firmware update running Loader active	Do not interrupt the 24-V supply and do not unplug connectors while the firmware is being updated
	YE -- -- GN	Drive command error (Cxxxx)	

H14 Color / flashing pattern [1]		Significance (drive status)	Measures
	Flashing yellow YE -- -- --	Drive warning (E2xxx … E3xxx)	Read exact status via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message" and execute service function
	YE YE -- --	Communication warning (E4xxx)	
	YE YE YE --	Travel range warning (E6xxx … E7xxx)	
	YE -- YE --	Drive controller identification	
	Yellow YE YE YE YE	Fatal warning (E8xxx)	Do not interrupt the 24-V supply and do not unplug connectors while the firmware is being updated
	Flashing red-yellow RD RD YE YE	Drive is error-free (phase 0), but not yet ready for drive enable ("Bb")	If necessary, read exact status via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message"
	RD YE YE YE	Drive is error-free (phase 1), but not yet ready for drive enable ("Bb")	
	RD -- -- YE	Communication error (F4xxx)	
	Flashing red-green RD -- GN --	Baud rate scan (P-1)	If necessary, read exact status via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message"
	Flashing red RD RD -- --	Error (F2xxx, F3xxx, F6xxx, F7xxx, F8xxx)	Read exact status via "S-0-0095, Diagnostic message" and execute service function
	RD -- RD --	Firmware update:	Repeat firmware update
	Red RD RD RD RD	Booting phase	Wait until booting phase is over (approx. 2 minutes)
		System error (F9xxx, E0800)	• Switch off and on; replace hardware, if necessary • Check whether the programming module is inserted; if necessary replace KSM/KMS crosswise to check whether the programming module is defective

1) A square in the illustrated flashing patterns corresponds to a time period of 250 ms.

Tab. 11-4: LED Displays H14

Diagnostic display with MPx-2x

See tab. 11-2 "LED displays" on page 355.

LED H25 H26

Use

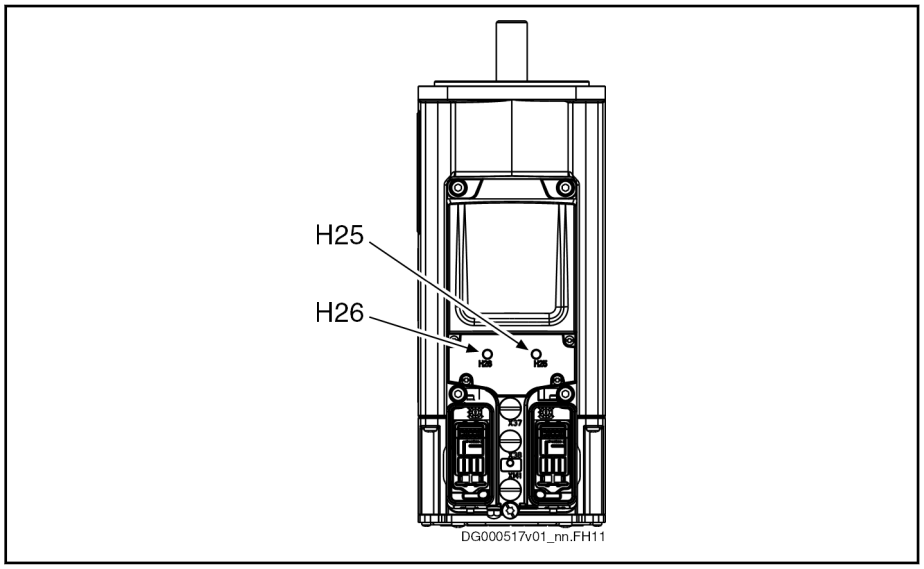


Fig. 11-4: LED H25 H26 (KSM example)

- **H25** → safety technology
- **H26** → network

  The significance of the network displays depends on the field bus system.

☞ The LEDs provide general diagnostic information for commissioning or troubleshooting in the scope of safety technology.

These pieces of status information do not provide any safety-relevant information in terms of functional safety.

LED H25, displays

Color / flashing pattern [1]	Safety technology status [3] (Safety Supervisor State / Event)	Connection status [3]
 Off	• Not active • Safety bus communication not configured	• Not ready • Safety bus communication not configured
 Flashing green	Active, no connection (safety default)	Ready and no active connection
 Permanently lit green	Active, at least one safe connection	Ready and at least one active connection
 Flashing red-green	• Waiting for TUNID [2] • Self test and initialization • Identifying the axis identifier	• Waiting for TUNID [2] • Self test and initialization • Identifying the axis identifier
 Flashing red-green	Indentifying the safety technology	-
 Flashing red-green	TUNID [2] not yet set	-
 Flashing red	Abortion of connections	Faulty abortion of at least one active connection
 Permanently lit red	Critical error	Critical connection error

1) Flashing pattern: One square corresponds to a duration of 250 ms; the arrow marks the end of a cycle; abbreviations on the squares: GN = LED permanently lit green, RD = LED permanently lit red, -- = LED is off
2) TUNID = Target Unique Network Identifier
3) The LED display is only active with safety bus communication via the master communication

Tab. 11-5: LED display

LED H26, displays

Ethernet/IP

LED: Color / flashing pattern	Significance
 Off	The device does not have a valid IP address or has been switched off.
 Flashing green	The device has run up with a valid IP address, but does not have a cyclic connection.
 Permanently lit green	The I/O connection has been established without error.
 Flashing red	The existing I/O connection was unexpectedly aborted (e.g., watchdog).
 Permanently lit red	The "Duplicate-IP-Adress-Check" showed that the IP address which was set already exists in the network.
 Flashing red-green	The device is running up and carries out a self test.

Tab. 11-6: Diagnostic LED

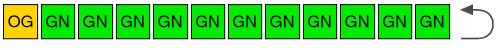
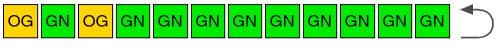
EtherCAT

LED: Color / flashing pattern [1]	Significance	Description
 Off	Status INIT	• Cyclic process data and acyclic data channel are not transmitted • No error
 Flashing green	Status PRE-OPERATIONAL	Acyclic data channel is transmitted
 Green, lighting up once	Status SAFE-OPERATIONAL	Acyclic data channel is transmitted
 Permanently lit green	Status OPERATIONAL	Cyclic process data and acyclic data channel are transmitted
 Flashing red	Configuration error	General EtherCAT configuration error
 Red, lighting up once	Synchronization error	• The drive controller has not been synchronized to the EtherCAT master • Communication error of the drive controller
 Red, lighting up twice	Timeout - watchdog	• Timeout while cyclic process data are monitored • Watchdog of the EtherCAT master

1) Flashing pattern: One square corresponds to a duration of 200 ms; the arrow marks the end of a cycle; abbreviations on the squares: GN = LED permanently lit green, RD = LED permanently lit red, -- = LED is off

Tab. 11-7: Diagnostic LED

Sercos

LED: Color / flashing pattern [1]	Description	Prio [2]
 Off	NRT mode (no Sercos communication) [3]	6
 Permanently lit orange	CP0 (communication phase 0 active)	6
 Flashing orange-green	CP1 (communication phase 1 active)	6
 Flashing orange-green	CP2 (communication phase 2 active)	6
 Flashing orange-green	CP3 (communication phase 3 active)	6
 Permanently lit green	CP4 (communication phase 4 active)	6
 Flashing orange-green	HP0 (hot-plug phase 0 active)	6
 Flashing orange-green	HP1 (hot-plug phase 1 active)	6
 Flashing orange-green	HP2 (hot-plug phase 2 active)	6
 Flashing green	Transition from Fast forward to Loopback	5
 Flashing red-orange	Application error (sub-device/device error [C1D])	4
 Flashing red-green	MST warning [4] (S-0-1045, Sercos: Device Status [S-Dev], bit15)	3
 Permanently lit red	Communication error (sub-device/device error [C1D])	2

LED: Color / flashing pattern [1]	Description	Prio [2]
 Flashing orange	Identification (S-0-1044, Sercos: Device Control [C-Dev], bit15)	1
 Flashing red	Internal watchdog	0

1) Flashing pattern: One square corresponds to a duration of 250 ms; the arrow marks the end of a cycle; abbreviations on the squares: GN = LED permanently lit green, OG = LED permanently lit orange, RD = LED permanently lit red, -- = LED is off

2) Display priority (1 = highest priority); the state of the highest priority is displayed

3) NRT = **N**one **R**eal **T**ime

4) MST = **M**aster **s**ynchronization **t**elegram

Tab. 11-8: Diagnostic LED

PROFINET IO

LED: Color / flashing pattern	Significance
Off	The device does not have a valid IP address or has been switched off.
Flashing green	The device has run up with a valid IP address, but does not have a cyclic connection.
Permanently lit green	The I/O connection has been established without error.
Flashing red	The existing I/O connection was unexpectedly aborted (e.g., watchdog).
Permanently lit red	The "Duplicate-IP-Adress-Check" showed that the IP address which was set already exists in the network.
Flashing red-green	The device is running up and carries out a self test.

Tab. 11-9: Diagnostic LED

POWERLINK

LED: Color / flashing pattern	Significance
 Off	OFF INITIALISATION NOT_ACTIVE No error
 Flickering green [1)]	BASIC_ETHERNET
 Green, lighting up once [2)]	PRE_OPERATIONAL_1
 Green, lighting up twice [2)]	PRE_OPERATIONAL_2
 Green, lighting up three times [2)]	READY_TO_OPERATE
 Permanently lit green	OPERATIONAL
 Flashing green [2)]	STOPPED
 Permanently lit red	State machine error

1) One square corresponds to a duration of 50 ms
2) One square corresponds to a duration of 200 ms

Tab. 11-10: Diagnostic LED

11.3.4 Diagnostic messages via parameters

The usual diagnostic parameters are used:

- S-0-0095
- S-0-0390
- P-0-0009
- …

See also parameter description of firmware.

11.3.5 Firmware functions

Easy startup mode

The easy startup mode is intended for initial commissioning. Easy startup can be carried out with the "Rexroth IndraWorks D" commissioning software.

For easy startup, the digital inputs have been preset as follows:

- E1 (X37.4): +24 V to activate positive direction of rotation
- E2 (X37.2): +24 V to activate negative direction of rotation

- E3 (X38.4): +24 V to activate drive enable

See Functional Description of firmware → "Easy startup mode".

Analog outputs

KSM/KMS have **no** analog outputs!

Oscilloscope function

It is possible to use the oscilloscope function integrated in the drive and described in the Functional Description of the firmware!

See Functional Description of firmware → "Oscilloscope function".

Patch function

With the patch function you can read or write controller-internal memory cells.

See Functional Description of firmware → "Patch function".

Monitoring function

The monitoring function provides extended diagnostic possibilities.

See Functional Description of firmware → "Monitoring function".

Logbook function

With the logbook function you can reproduce the internal firmware sequence.

See Functional Description of firmware → "Logbook function".

11.4 Service functions/troubleshooting

11.4.1 General information

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working on live parts: De-energize installation and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.

Wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

Check whether voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

The following section explains the tasks required to eliminate errors or malfunction.

We distinguish the following actions:

- Replacing fuses F4 and F5
- Deactivation
- Dismounting
- Replacing the component

11.4.2 Replacing fuses F4 and F5

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Before working on live parts: De-energize installation and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.

Wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

Check whether voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

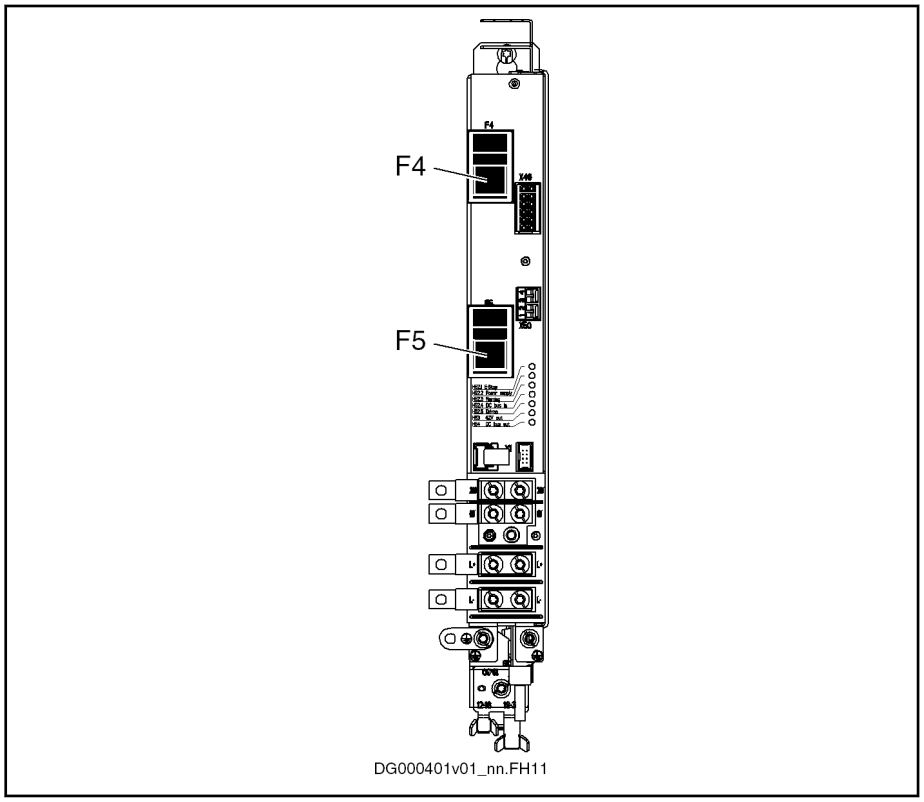


Fig. 11-5: Fuses F4 and F5

Replacing fuses F4 and F5

1. Switch off power voltage to drive system.
2. Wait at least 30 minutes to allow discharging.
3. Open fuse carriers F4 and F5.
4. Remove fuses F4 and F5.

   Note: Always replace both fuses, even if only one of them is defective. The intact fuse probably was already damaged,
5. Insert new fuses (material number: R911319963) **FWP-30A14Fa** by BUSSMANN.
6. Close fuse carriers F4 and F5.

11.4.3 KMV03, replacing the fuse

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

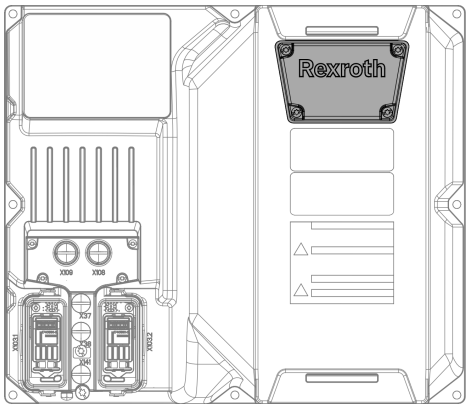
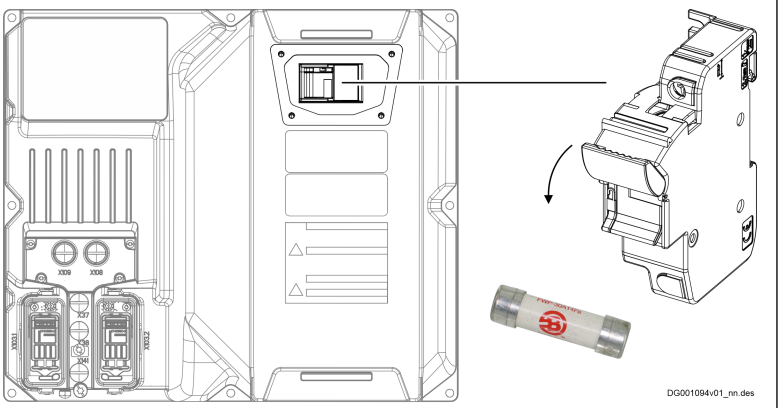
Before working on live parts: De-energize installation and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.

Wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

Check whether voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

Replacing the fuse

1. Switch off power voltage to drive system.
2. Wait at least 30 minutes to allow discharging.
3. Dismount cover.
4. Open fuse carrier.
5. Remove fuse.
6. Insert new fuse (material number: R911319963) **FWP-30A14Fa** by BUSSMANN.
7. Mounting cover (screws: M4, 2.5 Nm).

Cover of fuse	Replacing the fuse
	

Tab. 11-11: Fuse

11.4.4 KLC03, replacing the fuses

⚠ WARNING **Lethal electric shock by live parts with more than 50 V!**

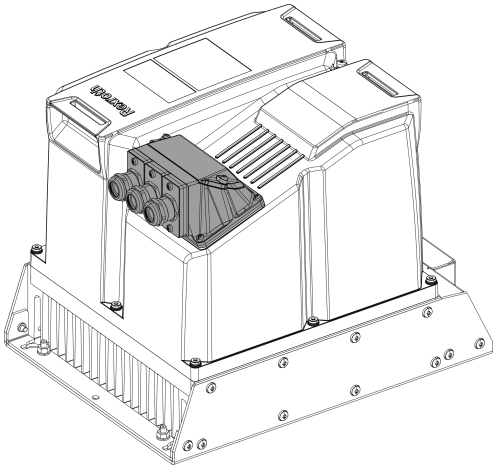
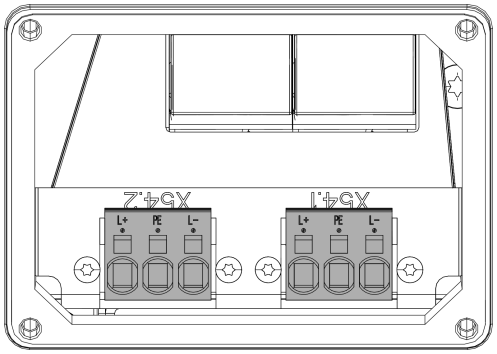
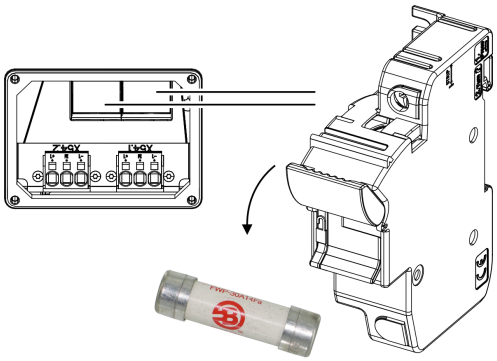
Before working on live parts: De-energize installation and secure power switch against unintentional or unauthorized re-energization.

Wait at least **30 minutes** after switching off the supply voltages to allow **discharging**.

Check whether voltage has fallen below 50 V before touching live parts!

Replacing the fuse

1. Switch off power voltage to drive system.
2. Wait at least 30 minutes to allow discharging.
3. Dismount connection cover.
4. Remove connector X54.1 and, if applicable, connector X54.2.
5. Open fuse carrier.
6. Remove fuse.
7. Insert new fuse (material number: R911319963) **FWP-30A14Fa** by BUSSMANN.
8. Mount connection cover (screws: M4, 2.5 Nm).

	Dismount connection cover.
	Remove connector X54.1 and, if applicable, connector X54.2.
	Always replace both fuses, even if only one of them is defective. The intact fuse probably was already damaged.

Tab. 11-12: Replacing the fuses

11.4.5 Deactivating and Dismounting the Drive

Deactivation

In the case of malfunction, maintenance measures or to deactivate the motors, proceed as follows:

1. Observe the instructions contained in the machine documentation.
2. Use the machine-side control commands to bring the drive to a controlled standstill.
3. Switch off the power voltage and control voltage of the controller.
4. Switch off the main switch of the machine.
5. Secure the machine against accidental movements and against unauthorized operation.
6. Wait to allow the electric systems to discharge and then disconnect all electrical connections.
7. Before dismounting them, secure the motor and, if necessary, the fan unit against falling or movements, before unfastening the mechanical connections.

Dismounting

⚠ WARNING **Lethal injury caused by errors when controlling motors and working at moving parts!**

- Do not work at running or unsecured installations.
- Before starting to dismount, secure the machine against accidental movements and unauthorized operation.
- Before dismounting them, secure the motor and the supply lines unit against falling or movements, before unfastening the mechanical connections.

⚠ CAUTION **Burns caused by hot surfaces with temperatures of more than 100 °C!**

- Before beginning to work, let the motors cool down. The thermal time constant specified in the Technical Data is a measure for the time required for cooling down. Cooling down can require up to 140 minutes!
- Do not work at hot surfaces.
- Wear safety gloves.

1. Observe the instructions contained in the machine documentation.
2. Observe the Safety Instructions and carry out all steps according to the instructions for "deactivation".
3. Before dismounting them, secure the motor and the supply lines unit against falling or movements, before unfastening the mechanical connections.
4. Dismount the motor from the machine.
5. Store the motor appropriately.

11.4.6 Replacing the component

☞ Always replace a defective component with a new component of the same type.

1. De-energize the machine (switch off 24V supply, too!)
2. Make sure main switch cannot be switched on again
3. **WARNING!** High electrical voltage! Danger to life by electric shock!

   Wait 30 minutes to allow discharging before you start replacing the component.
4. Verify zero potential
5. Dismount defective component
6. If available: Write down address selector switch positions of the defective component
7. If available: Remove cover from slot X107 of defective component and take out programming module
8. If available: Set address selector switch of new component like the one of defective component
9. If housing of new component is dirty: Clean housing
10. When carrying out the next step, take care that dirt and moisture are prevented from penetrating the inside of the housing.

    If available: Remove cover from slot X107, plug programming module of defective component in slot X107 of new component, check sealing ring of cover for damage (if sealing ring damaged: provide new sealing ring), mount cover (screw tightening torque: 1 Nm)
11. Mount new component
12. Connect new component according to machine circuit diagram
13. Switch on 24V supply
14. Put machine into ready-for-operation state again according to machine manufacturer's instructions
15. Check functions of drive

11.4.7 "Release holding brake" service function

⚠ WARNING **Lethal injury caused by errors when controlling motors and working at moving parts!**

- Do not work at running or unsecured installations.
- Before starting to dismount, secure the machine against accidental movements and unauthorized operation.
- Before dismounting them, secure the motor and the supply lines unit against falling or movements, before unfastening the mechanical connections.

Via the X141 interface, it is possible to "release" the integrated holding brake:

- A voltage of 30 … 46 V has to be applied at X103.1 (pins 11 and 12).
- Short-circuit pin 3 with pin 9 at X141.

- The holding brake is released after the system has been booted up (H14 LED flashing).

The "release holding brake" service function may only be used provided that communication with other drive components or with an Engineering tool has not been established.

With operational communication established, the holding system check command can be used to release the holding brake (parameter "P-0-0541, C2100 Holding system check command").

11.4.8 Saving Parameters

For servicing, the drive parameters must be saved and archived on initial commissioning (e.g. with software Rexroth IndraWorks D) because it must be expected that the parameters of the defective drive cannot be read any longer.

Parameters can be managed in the control unit or saved and loaded with the "Rexroth IndraWorks D" software.

11.4.9 Firmware Update

See Functional Description of firmware → "Firmware Replacement".

11.4.10 Replacing the programming module

The programming module sits underneath a cover of the housing (see chapter 6.3.4 "X107, programming module" on page 171).

The programming module contains the firmware and parameters so that the drive can be easily programmed during commissioning. Use the "Rexroth IndraWorks D" software to configure the data transfer from the programming module after the control voltage has been switched on.

11.5 Maintenance

11.5.1 Maintenance of the Motor Component

General Information

The **motors** operate in a maintenance-free way within the given operating conditions and service life. However, operation under unfavorable conditions can lead to limitations in availability.

- Increase the availability with regular preventive maintenance measures. Observe the information in the maintenance schedule of the machine manufacturer and the maintenance measures described below.

⚠ CAUTION **Risk of burns by hot surfaces with temperatures of more than 100 °C!**

Before beginning to work, let the motors cool down. The thermal time constant specified in the Technical Data is a measure for the time required for cooling down. Cooling down can require up to 140 minutes!

Do not work at hot surfaces.

Wear safety gloves.

Cleaning

Excessive dirt, dust or shavings may affect the function of the motors adversely, may in extreme cases even cause a failure of the motors. For that reason, you should clean the cooling ribs of the motors in regular intervals (at the latest, after one year is over).

Bearings

The nominal service life of the bearings is L10h > 30000 h (according to DIN ISO 281, ed. 1990), if the permissible radial and axial forces are not exceeded.

The motor bearings should be replaced, if

- the nominal bearing service life has been reached
- running noise can be heard

☞ We recommend that you have the bearings replaced by Rexroth.

Connection Cables

Check connection cables for damage in regular intervals and replace them, if necessary.

Check any optionally present flexible cable tracks for damage and replace them, if necessary.

⚠ WARNING **Danger to life by live parts with more than 50 V!**

Do not repair any connection cables provisionally. If the slightest damage is detected in the cable sheath, you must immediately put the installation out of operation and replace the connection cable.

Check the equipment grounding conductor for proper connection and tight fit in regular intervals.

Holding Brake – Commissioning and Maintenance Instructions

In order to ensure proper functioning of the holding brake, it must be checked before the motors are commissioned. The test as well as the resurfacing may be carried out "mechanically by hand" **or** "automatically by means of the software function".

Checking and resurfacing of holding brakes by hand

Measure the holding torque (M4) of the holding brake. If necessary, resurface the holding brake.

Measuring the Holding Torque (M4) of the Holding Brake

1. De-energize the motor and secure it against re-energization.
2. Measure the transferable holding torque of the holding brake with a torque wrench. For holding torque (M4) refer to the technical data.

   If the holding torque (M4) is achieved, the motor is ready for assembly.
   If the holding torque (M4) **is not achieved**, the subsequent resurfacing-process can be used to reconstitute the holding torque.

Resurfacing the Holding Brake

1. At closed holding brake, turn the output shaft by hand, e.g. with the help of a torque wrench, by about 5 revolutions.
2. Measure the holding torque (M4).

   If the holding torque (M4) is achieved, the motor is ready for assembly.
   If the specified holding torque (M4) is not attained after several grinding-in processes, the holding brake is not operable. Please, contact the Rexroth Service.

Checking and resurfacing of holding brakes by means of the software function

Checking the Holding Torque (M4) via P-0-0541, C2100 Command Holding system check

1. The efficiency of the holding brake and the opened state are checked by the control device by starting the routine "P-0-0541, C2100 Command Holding system check".

   If the holding brake is operational, the drive is in an operational state after the routine was run through. If the braking torque is too low, the control device outputs a corresponding message.

☞ The brake test can also be carried out cyclically in the framework of a preventive maintenance.

Restoring the Holding Torque (M4) by means of the Software Function

The following possibilities are available:

1. Realization of the resurfacing routine IndraDrive "Restoring the holding torque "(see"P-0-0544, C3900 Command Resurfacing of motor holding brake"). A repeated realization of the resurfacing routine is possible.

   Upon the execution of the command C3900 it is not checked whether the resurfacing of the holding brake was successful. It is recommended to execute the command C2100 (Command Holding system check) once again.
2. Resurfacing routine by superior control. Here, special control programs adapted to the machine and system concepts are required. If necessary, please contact your Bosch Rexroth distribution partner and discuss the resurfacing routine parameters for your application.

📖 For further information on software functions, see Functional Description of firmware.

11.5.2 Maintenance of the Electronic System of the Drive

The electronic system of the drive (power section and control section) operates without wear within the given operating conditions and service life. However, operation under unfavorable conditions (e.g. increased ambient temperature) can lead to limitations in availability.

⚠ CAUTION **Risk of burns by hot surfaces with temperatures of more than 60 °C!**

After switching the devices off, wait 15 minutes to allow them to cool down before touching them. Do not work at hot surfaces.

In regular intervals (at the latest, after one year is over), check the heat sink of the electronic system of the drive for accumulated dirt (e.g. dust deposits). Remove accumulated dirt.

12 Environmental protection and disposal

12.1 Environmental protection

Production processes

The products are manufactured in energy- and resource-optimized production processes which allow re-using and recycling the resulting waste. We regularly try to replace pollutant-loaded raw materials and supplies by more environment-friendly alternatives.

No release of hazardous substances

Our products do not contain any hazardous substances which may be released in case of appropriate use. Normally, our products will not have any negative influences on the environment.

Significant components

Significant components of our products are:

Electronic devices
- Steel
- Aluminum
- Copper
- Plastics
- Electronic components

Motors
- Steel / Stainless steel
- Aluminum
- Copper
- Brass
- Magnetic materials
- Elektronic components

12.2 Disposal

Return of products

Our products can be returned to us for disposal free of charge. However, this requires that the products be free from oil, grease or other dirt.

Furthermore, the products returned for disposal may not contain any undue foreign material or foreign components.

Deliver the products "free domicile" to the following address:

Bosch Rexroth AG
Electric Drives and Controls
Buergermeister-Dr.-Nebel-Straße 2
97816 Lohr am Main, Germany

Packaging

Packaging materials consist of cardboard, wood and polystyrene They can be recycled anywhere without any problem.

For ecological reasons, please refrain from returning the empty packages to us.

Batteries and accumulators

Batteries and accumulators can be labeled with this symbol.

The symbol indicating "separate collection" for all batteries and accumulators is the crossed-out wheeled bin.

End users in the EU are legally bound to return used batteries and accumulators. Outside the validity of the EU Directive 2006/66/EC, the particularly applicable regulations must be followed.

Batteries and accumulators can contain hazardous substances which can harm the environment or people's health when improperly stored or disposed of.

After use, the batteries or accumulators contained in Rexroth products must be properly disposed of according to the country-specific collection systems.

Recycling

Most of the products can be recycled due to their high content of metal. In order to recycle the metal in the best possible way, the products must be disassembled into individual assemblies.

Metals contained in electric and electronic assemblies can also be recycled by means of special separation processes.

Plastic parts of the products may contain flame retardants. These plastic parts are labeled according to EN ISO 1043. They have to be recycled separately or disposed of according to the applicable legal provisions.

13 Service and support

Our worldwide service network provides an optimized and efficient support. Our experts offer you advice and assistance should you have any queries. You can contact us **24/7**.

Service Germany

Our technology-oriented Competence Center in Lohr, Germany, is responsible for all your service-related queries for electric drive and controls.

Contact the **Service Hotline** and **Service Helpdesk** under:

Phone:	**+49 9352 40 5060**
Fax:	**+49 9352 18 4941**
E-mail:	service.svc@boschrexroth.de
Internet:	http://www.boschrexroth.com

Additional information on service, repair (e.g. delivery addresses) and training can be found on our internet sites.

Service worldwide

Outside Germany, please contact your local service office first. For hotline numbers, refer to the sales office addresses on the internet.

Preparing information

To be able to help you more quickly and efficiently, please have the following information ready:

- Detailed description of malfunction and circumstances
- Type plate specifications of the affected products, in particular type codes and serial numbers
- Your contact data (phone and fax number as well as your e-mail address)

14 Appendix

14.1 Digital inputs

14.1.1 Digital inputs type A (standard)

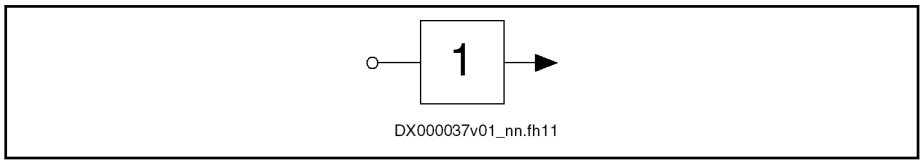


Fig. 14-1: Symbol

Data	Unit	Min.	Max.
Allowed input voltage	V	-3	30
High	V	15	30
Low	V	-3	5
Current consumption	mA	2	5
Control delay	µs		1000 + position controller clock 200 + position controller clock [1)]

1) Applies to optional I/O extension DA

Tab. 14-1: Digital inputs type A

14.1.2 Digital inputs (safety technology L options)

The digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131, type 2.

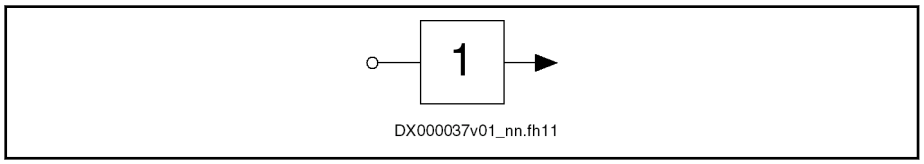


Fig. 14-2: Symbol

Data	Unit	Min.	Max.
Allowed input voltage	V	-3	30
High	V	11	30
Low	V	-3	5
Current consumption [1)]	mA	7	15

1) For KCU02, the specified values must be multiplied with the number of zone nodes of the drive line.

Tab. 14-2: Digital inputs (safety technology L options)

14.1.3 Digital inputs (safety technology S options)

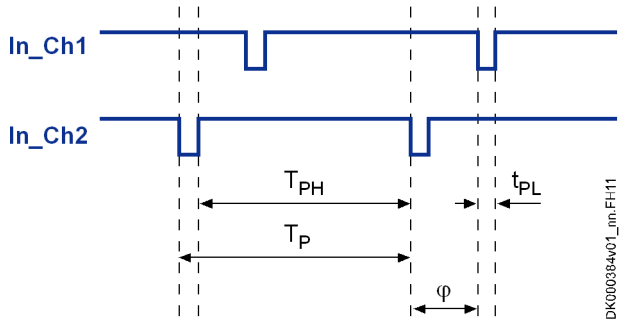
The digital inputs correspond to IEC 61131, type 1.

Data	Unit	min.	max.
Allowed input voltage	V	-3	30
High	V	15	30
Low	V	-3	5
Current consumption	mA	2	5

Tab. 14-3: Digital inputs (safety technology S options)

Time behavior

Description	Unit	min.	max.
Test pulse width (t_{PL})	µs	0	1000
Percentage of High time ($T_{PH}/T_P \times 100\%$)	%	90	100
Phase shift between two test pulses on both channels (φ)	ms	-	-



Tab. 14-4: Time behavior

14.2 Digital outputs

14.2.1 Digital outputs (safety technology L options)

The digital outputs are compatible with digital inputs of types 1, 2 and 3 (IEC 61131).

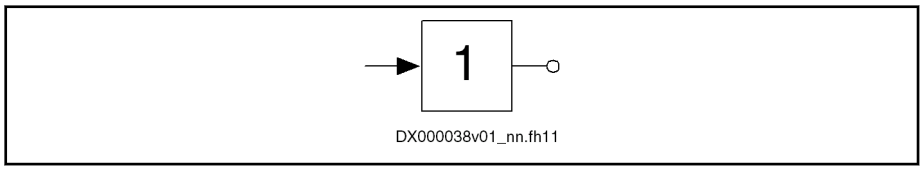


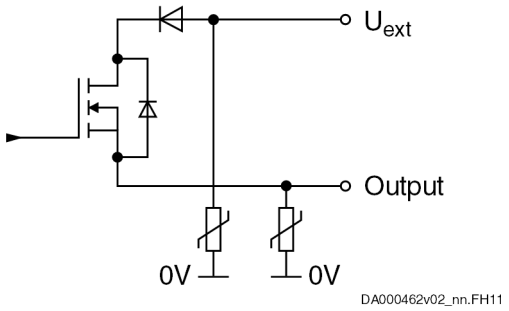
Fig. 14-3: Symbol

Data	Unit	Min.	Max.
Supply voltage (U_{ext})	V	19,2	30
Current consumption (I_{ext})	mA		700
Output voltage ON	V	18,2	30
Output voltage OFF	V		5
Output current ON	mA		350
Allowed energy content of connected inductive loads, e.g. relay coils; only allowed as single pulse	mJ		400
Short circuit protection		Available	
Overload protection		Available	

Tab. 14-5: Digital outputs (safety technology L options)

14.2.2 Digital outputs (safety technology S options)

The digital outputs are compatible with digital inputs of types 1, 2 and 3 (IEC 61131).

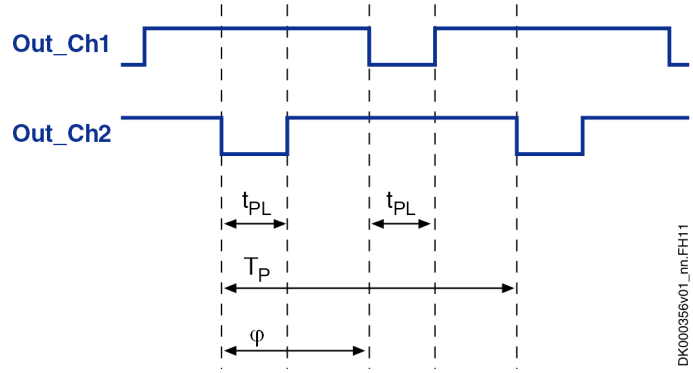
Data	Unit	min.	max.
Output voltage ON	V	U_{ext} - 1	U_{ext}
Output voltage OFF	V		2
Allowed output current per output	mA		350
Allowed energy content of connected inductive loads, e.g. relay coils	mJ		400 1) 2)
Capacitive load	nF		320
Short circuit protection		Present	
Overload protection		Present	
Block diagram output:			
Error detection	The following errors are detected: • Wiring error with short circuit to high • Wiring error with short circuit to low • Wiring error with short circuit between the two channels • Internal errors In the case of an error, the control panel shows the corresponding error message: F83xx		

1) At a maximum switching frequency of 1 Hz
2) In the case of inductive loads with currents > 200 mA or in the case of inductive loads with a greater energy content, an external free-wheeling arm has to be installed. The effective terminal voltage has to be < 25 V.

Tab. 14-6: Digital outputs

Time behavior

Description	Unit	min.	max.
Test pulse width (t_{PL})	µs	100	200
Periodic time (T_P)	ms	500	1000
Phase shift between two test pulses on both channels (φ)	ms	50	-



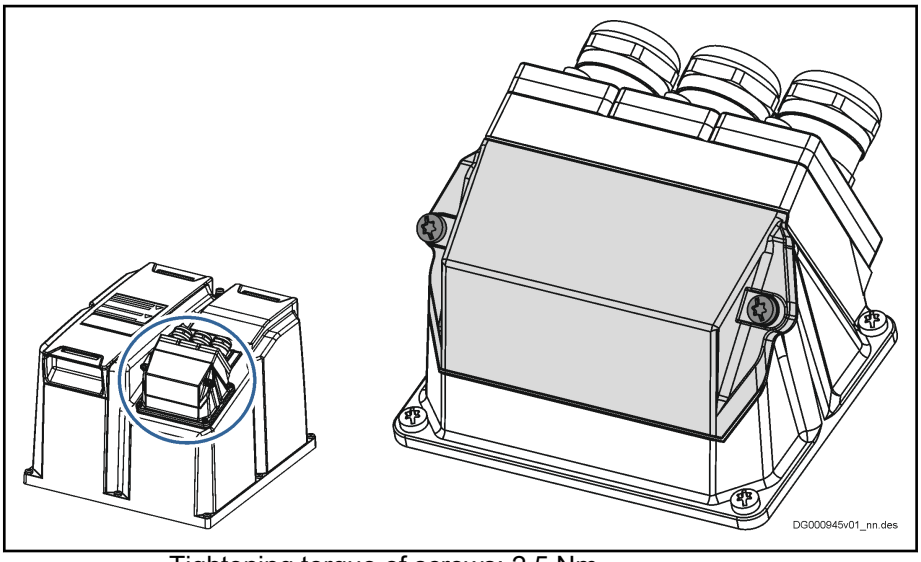
Tab. 14-7: Time behavior

14.3 Two-piece connection cover

More recent devices have a two-piece connection cover.

Advantages

- Improved handling for plugging in and removing the connectors
- Easy access to the connection points (e.g., for measurements)



Tightening torque of screws: 2.5 Nm

Fig. 14-4: Two-piece connection cover

14.4 Sizing mains filters (drive system)

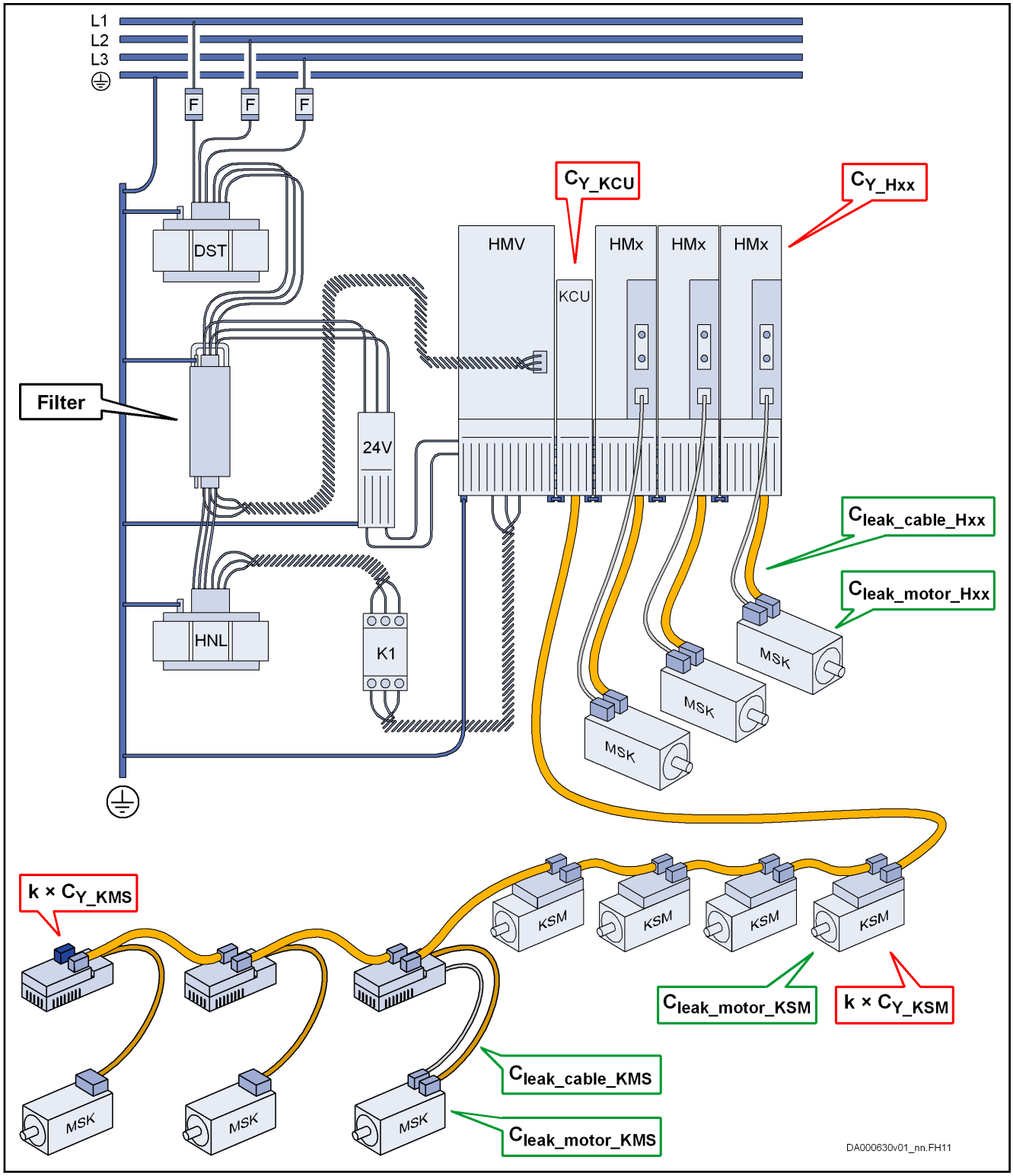
☞ The data are not binding. Further criteria are relevant for sizing mains filters (mains voltage, mains current, mains frequency, ambient temperature, harmonics on the mains voltage, EMC limit value class, PWM of the drives …).

Therefore, check the determined values using the up-to-date specifications in the corresponding product documentation, and observe the Project Planning Manual "Rexroth IndraDrive Drive Systems with HMV01/02 HMS01/02, HMD01, HCS02/03" (R911309636) or "ctrlX DRIVE Drive Systems" (R911386579).

An Excel-based tool is available for sizing mains filters. If required, please ask our sales representative ("FAQ_EMC_mains_filter_application_tool_EN").

Drive system

In the drive system described below, the components IndraDrive M (HMV, HMS) are operated together with IndraDrive Mi (KCU, KSM, KMS) components.



C_Y	Y-capacitance
C_{leak}	Leakage capacitance
k	Hybrid cable damping factor

Fig. 14-5: Drive system

☞ For the C_Y and C_{leak} capacitances of the components please see the end of this chapter.

Mains filter: Sizing rule

$C_{Y\_limit} \geq C_{Y\_sum}$	$C_{leak\_limit} \geq C_{leak\_sum}$
C_{Y_limit}: Limit value of mains filter regarding C_Y C_{Y_sum}: C_Y sum of drive system	C_{leak_limit}: Limit value of mains filter regarding leakage capacitance C_{leak_sum}: Sum of leakage capacitances of drive system

Tab. 14-8: Mains filter: Sizing rule

Mains filter: Limit values

Mains filter	C_{Y_limit} [nF]	C_{leak_limit} [nF]
HNF01.2D-M900	4080	1100
HNF01.2D-F240	2450	290
HNF01.1A-H350	2040	450
NFD03.1	1200	100
NFE02.1 1)	378	90
KNK03	2200	226
XNF1-1*-0100N-E0080	1000	100
XNF1-1*-0150N-E0140	1000	150
XNF1-1*-0240N-E0185	1000	240
XLI1-1R-W0048N	2000	252
XLI1-1R-W0072N	8000	1100
XLI1-1R-W0100N	8000	1100

1) Cannot be used with IndraDrive Mi; can only be used for single-phase operation (1 × 230 V AC, nominal current: 8 A)

Tab. 14-9: Mains filter: Limit values

C_{Y_sum}

$C_{Y\_sum} = C_{Y\_KCU} + C_{Y\_Hxx} + k \times [C_{Y\_KMS} + C_{Y\_KSM}]$
C_{Y_sum}: C_Y sum
C_{Y_KCU}: C_Y KCU
C_{Y_Hxx}: C_Y HMS/HMD or HCS sum
C_{Y_KMS}: C_Y KMS sum
C_{Y_KSM}: C_Y KSM sum
k: Hybrid cable damping factor

Tab. 14-10: C_{Y_sum}

Hybrid cable damping factor

Mains filter	k
HNF01.2D-F0240-Rxx	1.20
HNF01.2D-F0240-Exx	0.72
HNF01.2D-M900-Rxx	0.80
HNF01.2D-M900-Exx	0.61
HNF01.1A-H350-Rxx	1.00
NFD03.1	1.15
NFE02.1 1)	-
KNK03.1	1.00
XNF1-1	1.00
XLI1-1	1.00

1) Cannot be used with IndraDrive Mi

Tab. 14-11: Hybrid cable damping factor

C_{leak_sum}

$C_{leak\_sum} = C_{leak\_cable\_Hxx} + C_{leak\_motor\_Hxx} + C_{leak\_cable\_KMS} + C_{leak\_motor\_KMS} + C_{leak\_motor\_KSM}$
C_{leak_sum}: Sum of leakage capacitances
$C_{leak\_cable\_Hxx}$: Sum of leakage capacitance, standard motor power cable by Rexroth at HMS/HMD or HCS
$C_{leak\_motor\_Hxx}$: Sum of leakage capacitance, MSK motor by Rexroth at HMS/HMD or HCS
$C_{leak\_cable\_KMS}$: Sum of leakage capacitance, standard motor power cable by Rexroth at KMS
$C_{leak\_motor\_KMS}$: Sum of leakage capacitance, MSK motor by Rexroth at KMS
$C_{leak\_motor\_KSM}$: Sum of leakage capacitance, KSM

Tab. 14-12: C_{leak_sum}

IndraDrive Mi capacitances

Component	C_Y [nF]	$C_{leak\_motor\_KSM}$ [nF]
KSM02.1B-041C-42	150	1.4
KSM02.1B-061C-35	150	2.4
KSM02.1B-061C-61	150	2.2
KSM02.1B-071C-24	150	5.0
KSM02.1B-071C-35	150	4.7
KSM02.1B-076C-35	150	6.9
KMS02.1B-A018	218	-
KMS03.1B-A036	200	-
KMS03.1B-B036	200	-
KCU02.1N	200	-

Component	C_Y [nF]	$C_{leak\_motor\_KSM}$ [nF]
KCU02.2N	200	-
KMV03	350	-

Tab. 14-13: IndraDrive Mi capacitances

IndraDrive C/Cs capacitances

Component	C_Y [nF]
HCS01.1E-W0003-A-02	136
HCS01.1E-W0006-A-02	136
HCS01.1E-W0009-A-02	136
HCS01.1E-W0013-A-02	136
HCS01.1E-W0018-A-02	200
HCS01.1E-W0005-A-03	136
HCS01.1E-W0008-A-03	136
HCS01.1E-W0018-A-03	200
HCS01.1E-W0028-A-03	200
HCS01.1E-W0054-A-03	200
HCS02.1E-W0012	200
HCS02.1E-W0028	200
HCS02.1E-W0054	200
HCS02.1E-W0070	200
HCS02.1E-W0100	200
HCS03.1E-W0070	200
HCS03.1E-W0150	200
HCS03.1E-W0210	200
HCS03.1E-W0280	200
HCS03.1E-W0350	200

Tab. 14-14: IndraDrive C/Cs capacitances

IndraDrive M capacitances

Component	C_Y [nF]
HMS01.1N-W0020	136
HMS01.1N-W0036	136
HMS01.1N-W0054	136
HMS01.1N-W0070	136
HMS01.1N-W0110	200
HMS01.1N-W0150	200
HMS01.1N-W0210	200

Component	C_Y [nF]
HMS01.1N-W0300	200
HMS01.1N-W0350	200
HMS01.2N-W0028	136
HMS01.2N-W0054	136
HMD01.1N-W0012	136
HMD01.1N-W0020	136
HMD01.1N-W0036	136

Tab. 14-15: IndraDrive M capacitances

ctrlX DRIVE capacitances

Component	C_Y [nF]
XCS	200
XCD	300
XMS	200
XMD	300
XVE*-W0075	200
XVR*-W0048	200
XVR*-W0072	200
XVR*-W0100	200

Tab. 14-16: ctrlX DRIVE capacitances

Cables, capacitances

Cable	C_{leak_cable} [nF/m]
INK653 (1.0 mm^2)	0.6
INK650 (1.5 mm^2)	0.8
INK602 (2.5 mm^2)	0.7
INK603 (4.0 mm^2)	0.8
INK604 (6.0 mm^2)	0.8
INK605 (10.0 mm^2)	1.0
INK606 (16.0 mm^2)	1.2
INK607 (25.0 mm^2)	1.1
INK667 (35.0 mm^2)	1.2
INK668 (50.0 mm^2)	1.3
REL0105 (1.0 mm^2)	0.4
REL0753 (1.0 mm^2)	0.4
REL0106 (1.5 mm^2)	0.4

Cable	C_{leak_cable} [nF/m]
REL0107 (2.5 mm^2)	0.4
REL0108 (4.0 mm^2)	0.5
REL0109 (6.0 mm^2)	0.5
REL0110 (10.0 mm^2)	0.5
REL0111 (16.0 mm^2)	0.6
REL0112 (25.0 mm^2)	0.6
REL0113 (35.0 mm^2)	0.6
REH0804 (1.5 mm^2)	0.4
REH0803 (2.5 mm^2)	0.25
REH0800 (2.5 mm^2)	0.2

Tab. 14-17: Cables, capacitances

Motor, capacitances

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MAD100B-0050	6.0
MAD100B-0100	5.7
MAD100B-0150	5.7
MAD100B-0200	6.0
MAD100B-0250	6.0
MAD100C-0050	9.0
MAD100C-0100	8.5
MAD100C-0150	8.1
MAD100C-0200	8.5
MAD100C-0250	9.2
MAD100D-0050	11.0
MAD100D-0100	11.0
MAD100D-0150	10.2
MAD100D-0200	11.5
MAD100D-0250	11.9
MAD130B-0050	16.0
MAD130B-0100	15.8
MAD130B-0150	15.8
MAD130B-0200	16.1
MAD130B-0250	17.4
MAD130C-0050	20.0
MAD130C-0100	20.9

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MAD130C-0150	20.5
MAD130C-0200	19.3
MAD130C-0250	20.1
MAD130D-0050	27.5
MAD130D-0100	27.3
MAD130D-0150	30.5
MAD130D-0200	27.5
MAD130D-0250	26.4
MAD160B-0050	25.5
MAD160B-0100	35.0
MAD160B-0150	35.0
MAD160B-0200	34.4
MAD160C-0050	28.0
MAD160C-0100	24.4
MAD160C-0150	27.2
MAD160C-0200	32.3
MAD180C-0050	29.2
MAD180C-0100	25.2
MAD180C-0150	28.3
MAD180C-0200	31.6
MAD180D-0050	38.0
MAD180D-0100	38.4
MAD180D-0150	35.9
MAD180D-0200	38.0
MAD225C-0050	120.0
MAD225C-0100	48.5
MAD225C-0150	126.0
MAF100B-0050	6.0
MAF100B-0100	6.0
MAF100B-0150	6.0
MAF100B-0200	6.0
MAF100B-0250	6.0
MAF100C-0050	8.5
MAF100C-0100	8.5
MAF100C-0150	8.6
MAF100C-0200	8.5

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MAF100C-0250	9.4
MAF100D-0050	11.0
MAF100D-0100	11.2
MAF100D-0150	11.0
MAF100D-0200	10.0
MAF100D-0250	9.2
MAF130B-0050	16.0
MAF130B-0100	16.0
MAF130B-0150	16.0
MAF130B-0200	11.6
MAF130B-0250	13.2
MAF130C-0050	20.0
MAF130C-0100	15.4
MAF130C-0150	20.0
MAF130C-0200	16.8
MAF130C-0250	20.0
MAF130D-0050	27.5
MAF130D-0100	26.7
MAF130D-0150	27.5
MAF130D-0200	25.1
MAF130D-0250	28.6
MAF160B-0050	26.9
MAF160B-0100	35.0
MAF160B-0150	35.0
MAF160B-0200	21.7
MAF160C-0050	28.0
MAF160C-0100	28.0
MAF160C-0150	28.8
MAF160C-0200	25.3
MAF180C-0050	32.5
MAF180C-0100	35.9
MAF180C-0150	30.0
MAF180C-0200	38.9
MAF180D-0050	37.4
MAF180D-0100	38.0
MAF180D-0150	30.3

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MAF180D-0200	50.0
MAF225C-0050	40.0
MAF225C-0100	39.7
MAF225C-0150	43.9
MCP015A-L040	0.3
MCP015B-L040	0.3
MCP020B-V180	0.2
MCP020B-V720	0.3
MCP020C-V180	0.3
MCP020D-V720	0.3
MCP030B-V180	0.4
MCP030B-V390	0.4
MCP030C-V180	0.4
MCP030C-V390	0.4
MCP030D-V180	0.4
MCP030D-V390	0.4
MCP040A-V300	0.2
MCP040B-V070	0.3
MCP040B-V300	0.3
MCP040C-V070	0.4
MCP040C-V300	0.4
MCP040E-V070	0.5
MCP040E-V300	0.5
MCP040G-V070	0.4
MCP040G-V300	0.4
MCP070C-V050	0.4
MCP070C-V300	0.4
MCP070D-V050	0.5
MCP070D-V300	0.7
MCP070F-V050	0.6
MCP070F-V300	0.7
MCP070M-V050	1.4
MCP070M-V230	1.4
MLP040A-0300	0.9
MLP040B-0150	1.3
MLP040B-0250	1.3

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MLP040B-0300	1.6
MLP052A-0300	1.8
MLP052B-0300	3.1
MLP070A-0150	2.2
MLP070A-0220	2.2
MLP070A-0300	2.3
MLP070B-0100	2.9
MLP070B-0120	2.9
MLP070B-0150	2.9
MLP070B-0250	2.9
MLP070B-0300	2.9
MLP070C-0120	4.2
MLP070C-0150	4.2
MLP070C-0240	4.2
MLP070C-0300	4.2
MLP100A-0090	4.1
MLP100A-0120	4.1
MLP100A-0150	4.1
MLP100A-0190	4.1
MLP100B-0120	6.0
MLP100B-0250	6.0
MLP100C-0090	7.9
MLP100C-0120	7.9
MLP100C-0190	7.9
MLP100K-0040	4.1
MLP102B-0060	6.0
MLP102C-0060	7.9
MLP102D-0060	9.8
MLP140A-0120	5.8
MLP140B-0090	8.4
MLP140B-0120	8.2
MLP140C-0050	11.1
MLP140C-0120	11.1
MLP140C-0170	11.1
MLP140C-0350	11.1
MLP140Z-0060	3.0

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MLP152A-0060	18.0
MLP152B-0060	20.0
MLP152C-0060	22.0
MLP152D-0060	23.7
MLP200A-0090	8.2
MLP200A-0120	8.2
MLP200B-0040	12.0
MLP200B-0120	12.0
MLP200C-0090	15.8
MLP200C-0120	15.9
MLP200C-0170	15.8
MLP200D-0060	19.2
MLP200D-0100	19.6
MLP200D-0120	19.6
MLP300A-0090	12.3
MLP300A-0120	12.3
MLP300B-0070	18.0
MLP300B-0120	18.0
MLP300C-0060	23.7
MLP300C-0090	23.7
MLP300Z-0090	9.5
ML3P03-A_BW	1.4
ML3P03-B_BW	1.6
ML3P03-D_BW	2.1
ML3P03-F_BN	2.5
ML3P03-F_BU	2.5
ML3P06-B_BK	1.2
ML3P06-B_BR	1.2
ML3P06-C_BC	1.6
ML3P06-C_BR	1.6
ML3P06-D_BK	2.0
ML3P06-D_BR	2.0
ML3P06-E_BK	2.3
ML3P06-E_BR	2.3
ML3P06-F_BK	2.7
ML3P06-F_BR	2.7

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
ML3P06-H_BK	3.4
ML3P06-H_BR	3.4
ML3P11-D_BF	2.9
ML3P11-D_BQ	2.9
ML3P11-E_BC	3.5
ML3P11-E_BQ	3.5
ML3P11-L_BC	6.4
ML3P11-L_BQ	6.4
MSK030B-0900	0.7
MSK030C-0900	1.3
MSK040B-0450	1.3
MSK040B-0600	1.5
MSK040C-0450	2.0
MSK040C-0600	2.0
MSK050B-0300	2.1
MSK050B-0450	1.4
MSK050B-0600	2.1
MSK050C-0300	2.6
MSK050C-0450	2.4
MSK050C-0600	2.6
MSK060B-0300	2.1
MSK060B-0600	2.1
MSK060C-0300	2.1
MSK060C-0600	2.2
MSK061B-0300	1.8
MSK061C-0200	2.7
MSK061C-0300	2.4
MSK061C-0600	2.1
MSK070C-0150	3.8
MSK070C-0300	4.0
MSK070C-0450	3.1
MSK070D-0150	5.0
MSK070D-0300	4.5
MSK070D-0450	4.5
MSK070E-0150	6.3
MSK070E-0300	3.5

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MSK070E-0450	6.7
MSK071C-0200	4.6
MSK071C-0300	4.6
MSK071C-0450	4.2
MSK071D-0200	6.9
MSK071D-0300	7.2
MSK071D-0450	7.8
MSK071E-0200	8.9
MSK071E-0300	9.3
MSK071E-0450	9.5
MSK075C-0300	3.2
MSK075C-0450	3.5
MSK075D-0200	4.6
MSK075D-0300	4.7
MSK075D-0450	4.7
MSK075E-0200	5.8
MSK075E-0300	6.5
MSK076C-0300	6.5
MSK076C-0450	6.0
MSK100A-0200	4.8
MSK100A-0300	4.6
MSK100A-0450	4.9
MSK100B-0200	10.3
MSK100B-0300	9.3
MSK100B-0400	10.3
MSK100B-0450	10.3
MSK100C-0200	12.8
MSK100C-0300	14.3
MSK100C-0450	13.2
MSK100D-0200	17.6
MSK100D-0300	16.0
MSK100D-0350	18.0
MSK101C-0200	6.2
MSK101C-0300	6.2
MSK101C-0450	6.8
MSK101D-0200	13.2

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MSK101D-0300	9.1
MSK101D-0450	13.2
MSK101E-0200	15.2
MSK101E-0300	16.7
MSK101E-0450	16.7
MSK103A-0300	1.5
MSK103B-0300	2.1
MSK103D-0300	6.0
MSK131B-0200	14.3
MSK131D-0200	27.7
MSK133B-0202	14.4
MSK133B-0203	10.7
MSK133C-0202	15.2
MSK133C-0203	15.2
MSK133D-0202	16.4
MSK133D-0203	18.4
MSK133E-0202	24.3
MSK133E-0203	22.6
MSM019A-0300	0.3
MSM019B-0300	0.7
MSM031B-0300	0.7
MSM031C-0300	1.4
MSM041B-0300	1.3
MSS102B-0800	
MSS102D-0800	
MSS102F-0300	
MSS102F-0800	
MSS142B-0700	
MSS142D-0700	
MSS142F-0700	7.4
MSS162B-0400	2.5
MSS162D-0400	3.9
MSS162F-0310	7.0
MSS162J-0200	6.3
MSS182A-0100	1.0
MSS182A-0250	0.6

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MSS182B-0280	4.2
MSS182D-0260	5.4
MSS182F-0200	7.8
MSS202A-0200	4.4
MSS202B-0150	5.9
MSS202B-0210	5.9
MSS202D-0170	7.3
MSS202F-0120	10.2
MSS242B-0100	8.2
MSS242D-0070	7.8
MSS242F-0060	14.4
MSS272B-0065	12.8
MSS272B-0080	
MSS272D-0050	10.3
MSS272F-0040	20.5
MSS312B-0035	19.9
MSS312D-0028	24.9
MSS312D-0060	24.9
MSS312F-0028	29.8
MSS312H-0025	36.5
MSS312H-0085	36.5
MSS382B-0025	34.0
MSS382D-0020	44.8
MSS382F-0018	53.4
MST130A-0200	2.2
MST130A-0250	2.2
MST130C-0050	6.6
MST130C-0075	6.6
MST130C-0200	
MST130E-0020	10.9
MST130E-0035	10.9
MST130G-0035	15.3
MST160A-0050	4.4
MST160C-0050	11.7
MST160E-0050	17.5
MST210A-0027	4.8

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MST210C-0027	9.5
MST210C-0050	9.5
MST210D-0070	13.3
MST210E-0027	19.0
MST210R-0010	8.2
MST210E-0035	8.2
MST290B-0018	8.4
MST290D-0002	15.6
MST290D-0004	12.6
MST290D-0018	14.7
MST290E-0004	21.0
MST290E-0018	20.0
MST360B-0018	9.0
MST360D-0012	13.5
MST360D-0018	13.5
MST360D-0045	14.0
MST360E-0018	20.0
MST450B-0012	9.6
MST450D-0006	14.5
MST450D-0012	14.5
MST450E-0006	24.1
MST450E-0012	24.1
MST530B-0010	10.1
MST530C-0010	15.2
MST530E-0010	23.0
MST530G-0006	50.7
MST530G-0007	50.7
MST530G-0010	50.7
MST530L-0006	76.1
MST530L-0007	76.1
MS2C03-K0BYN	3.0
MS2E03-B0BYN	0.8
MS2E03-D0BYN	1.6
MS2E04-B0BNN	1.1
MS2E04-B0BTN	1.1
MS2E04-C0BTN	1.8

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MS2E05-B0BTN	1.2
MS2E05-C0BTN	1.5
MS2E05-D0BRN	3.3
MS2E06-C0BNN	1.2
MS2E06-D0BNN	5.0
MS2E06-D0BRN	2.6
MS2E06-E0BRN	3.9
MS2E07-C0BQN	2.2
MS2E07-D0BNN	4.0
MS2E07-D0BRN	4.0
MS2E07-E0BNN	6.1
MS2E07-B0BQN	6.2
MS2N03-B0BYN	0.8
MS2N03-D0BYN	1.6
MS2N04-B0BNN	1.1
MS2N04-B0BTN	1.1
MS2N04-C0BNN	2.2
MS2N04-C0BTN	1.8
MS2N04-D0BHN	3.0
MS2N04-D0BQN	3.2
MS2N05-B0BNN	1.3
MS2N05-BOBTN	1.2
MS2N05-C0BNN	1.8
MS2N05-C0BTN	1.5
MS2N05-D0BHN	3.3
MS2N05-D0BRN	3.3
MS2N06-B1BNN	0.6
MS2N06-C0BNN	1.2
MS2N06-C0BTN	1.2
MS2N06-D0BNN	5.0
MS2N06-D1BNN	1.8
MS2N06-D0BRN	2.6
MS2N06-E0BHN	3.0
MS2N06-E0BRN	3.9
MS2N07-C0BQN	2.2
MS2N07-C1BNN	1.9

Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MS2N07-D0BHN	4.1
MS2N07-D1BHN	3.1
MS2N07-D0BRN	4.0
MS2N07-D1BNN	3.0
MS2N07-E0BHN	7.1
MS2N07-E0BNN	6.1
MS2N07-E0BQN	6.2
MS2N07-E1BNN	4.7
MS2N07-E1BHA	4.7
MS2N07-D0BNN	4.0
MS2N07-D1BHA	3.1
MS2N07-D1BHB	3.1
MS2N07-D1BNA	3.0
MS2N07-D1BNB	3.0
MS2N07-E0BNA	6.1
MS2N07-E0BNB	6.1
MS2N07-E0BQA	6.2
MS2N07-E0BQB	6.2
MS2N10-C0BHN	1.9
MS2N10-C0BNN	2.0
MS2N10-D0BHN	3.2
MS2N10-D0BNN	4.1
MS2N10-E0BNN	6.2
MS2N10-E1BNN	5.0
MS2N10-F0BHN	8.7
MS2N10-C0BNA	2.0
MS2N10-C0BNB	2.0
MS2N10-D0BHA	3.2
MS2N10-D0BHB	3.2
MS2N10-D0BNA	4.1
MS2N10-D0BNB	4.1
MS2N10-D1BNA	3.3
MS2N10-D1BNB	3.3
MS2N10-E0BHA	6.2
MS2N10-E0BHB	6.2
MS2N10-E0BNA	6.2

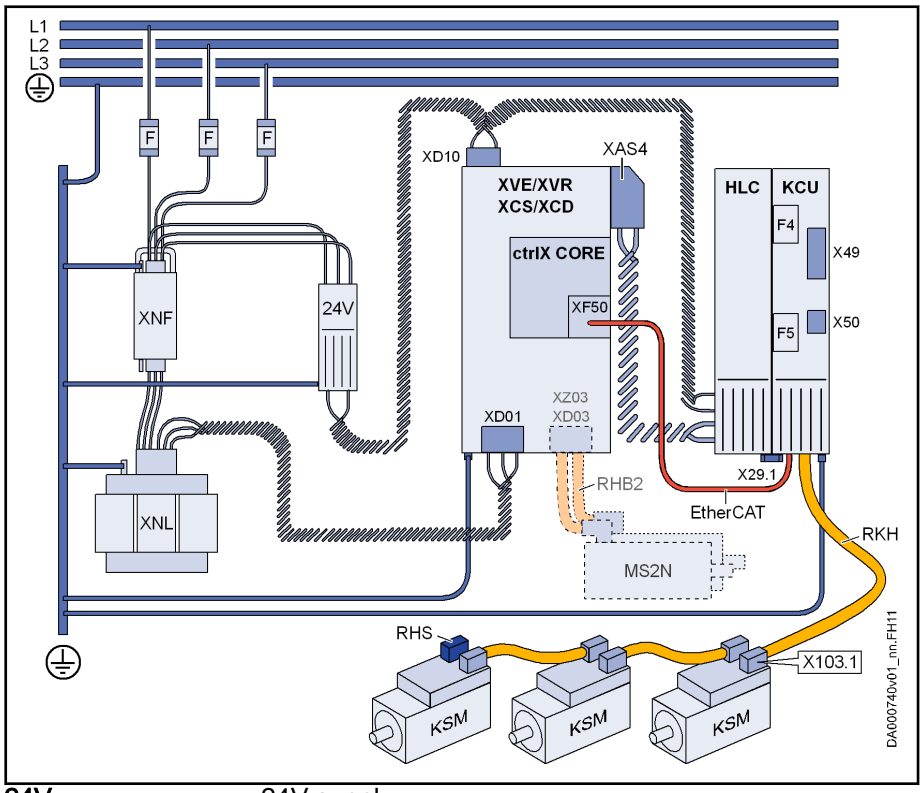
Motor	C_{leak_motor} [nF]
MS2N10-E0BNB	6.2
MS2N10-E1BNA	5.0
MS2N10-E1BNB	5.0
MS2N10-F0BHA	8.7
MS2N10-F0BHB	8.7
MS2N10-F1BHA	6.7
MS2N10-F1BHB	6.7

Tab. 14-18: Motor, capacitances

14.5 ctrlX DRIVE and IndraDrive Mi

14.5.1 Drive system

IndraDrive Mi drive system with ctrlX DRIVE (e.g., XVR or XCS) as supply unit



24V	24V supply
ctrlX CORE	Internal control
F	Fuses
HLC	HLC01.1C DC bus capacitor unit
KCU	Drive connection box
KSM	Motor-integrated servo drive (alternative: KMS near motor servo drive and motor)
MS2N	Servo motor
RHB2	Motor cable
RHS	Terminal connector
RKH	Hybrid cable
X103.1	Connection of hybrid cable at first KSM
XAS4	DC bus adapter (ctrlX DRIVE connection accessory for DC bus connection with cables)
XD01	Mains connection
XD03	Motor connection
XD10	Control voltage supply connection
XF50	EtherCAT master output
XNF	Mains filter; depending on the Y-capacitances of KSM/KMS
XNL	Mains choke (optional)
XVE/XVR/XCS/XCD	ctrlX DRIVE supply unit/drive controller
XZ03	Motor connection (hybrid connection: power, motor temperature, motor holding brake)

Fig. 14-6: IndraDrive Mi drive system with ctrlX DRIVE

14.5.2 ctrlX DRIVE documentation

Title	Type of documentation	Document typecode[1)]	Material number
ctrlX DRIVE Drive Systems	Project Planning Manual	DOK-XDRV**-X**********-PRxx-EN-P	R911386579

1) In the document typecodes, "xx" is a placeholder for the current edition of the documentation (e.g.: PR01 is the first edition of a Project Planning Manual)

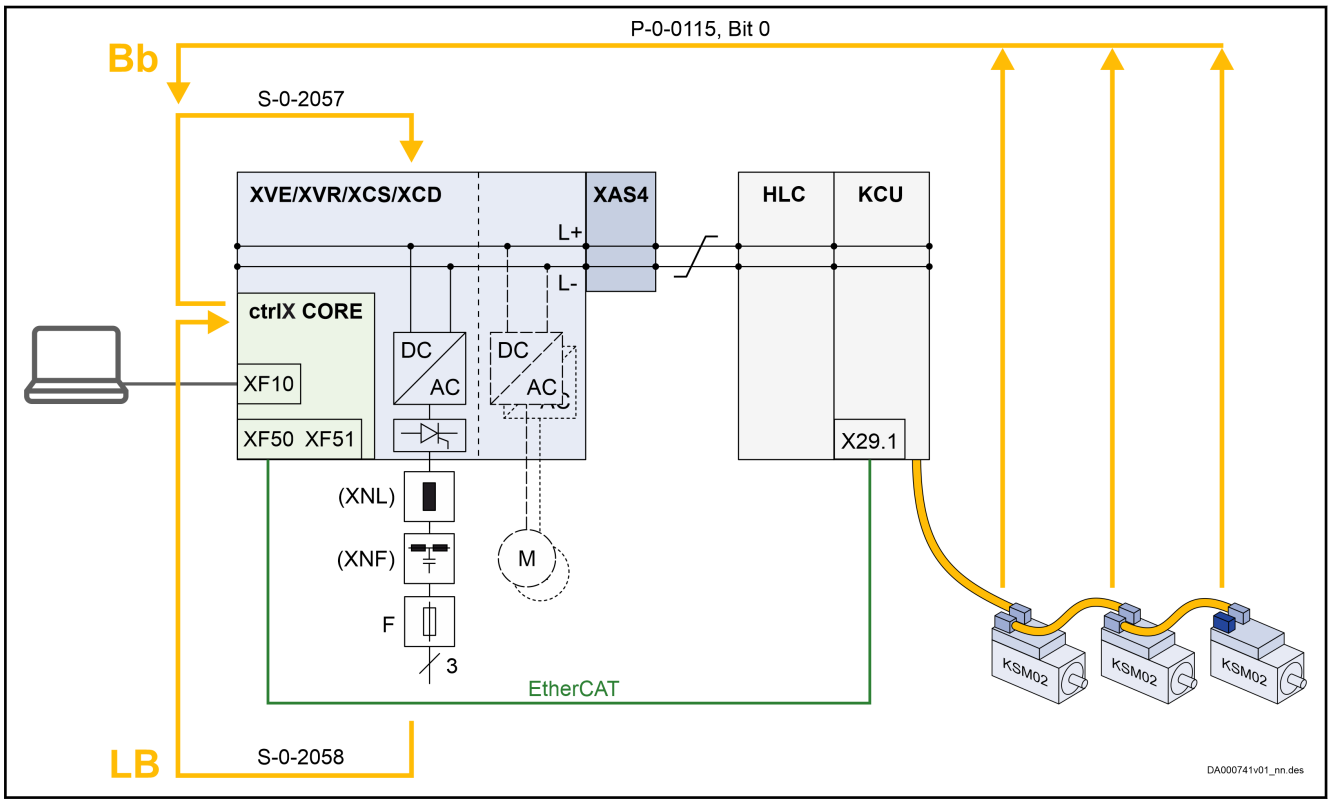
Tab. 14-19: ctrlX DRIVE documentations

Chapters regarding DC bus connection with cables:

- Combining the individual components → Electrical project planning → DC bus coupling → Multiple-line arrangement of devices
- Accessories, additional components, panel → Accessories → XAS4, DC bus adapter

14.5.3 Software settings

Field bus solution



Bb	Readiness for operation
LB	Readiness for power output
P-0-0115	Device control: Status word (bit 0)
S-0-2057	Power supply control word
S-0-2058	Power supply status word
XF10	Fast Ethernet interface for network connection (Ethernet Engineering)
XF50	EtherCAT master output
XNF	XVE/XCS/XCD: mains filter (optional); XVR: XNF contained in upstream XLI mains connection component (not pictured)
XNL	XVE/XCS/XCD: mains choke (optional); XVR: XNL contained in upstream XLI mains connection component (not pictured)

Fig. 14-7: Field bus solution

ctrlX Drive Engineering

Required actions:

- **Deactivate module bus** at each IndraDrive Mi drive controller (KSM and/or KMS):

  P-0-0118 bit 15

- **Change communication to "Servodrive Profile over EtherCAT (SoE)"** at each IndraDrive Mi drive controller (KSM and/or KMS):

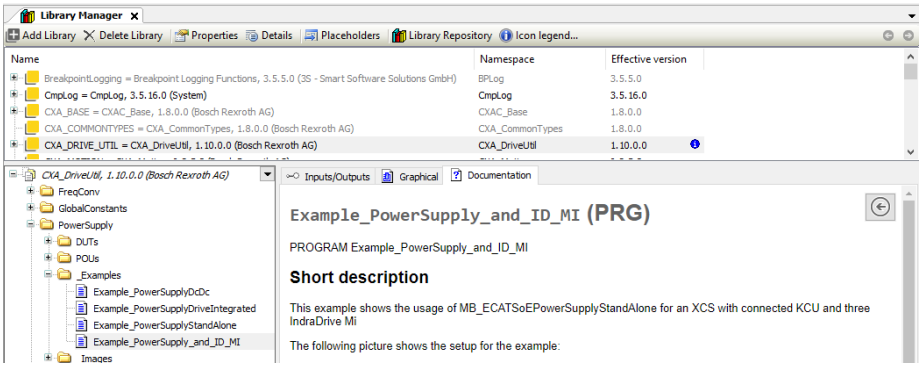
  P-0-4089.0.1 bit 5

14.5.4 ctrlX PLC

Change exemplary template according to the required application.

For exemplary template see here:

Library Manager ▸ CXA_Drive_UTIL ▸ PowerSupply ▸ Examples ▸ Example_PowerSupply_and_ID_Mi



14.5.5 Components

ctrlX DRIVE

From the ctrlX DRIVE product range, **supply units (XVE, XVR)** or **converters (XCS, XCD)** are suited for supplying the IndraDrive Mi devices.

The connected IndraDrive Mi devices have to be adjusted to the supplied power and to the connected maximum power of KCU.

An **XVR** supply unit always needs an **XLI** mains connection module. The mains connection module includes mains filter, mains choke, mains contactor and electronics. The mains connection module communicates with the XVR supply unit via FireWire. Leakage capacitances up to a maximum of 1100 nF are possible here.

IndraDrive

Operating IndraDrive Mi devices with ctrlX DRIVE devices always requires an **HLC DC bus capacitor unit**.

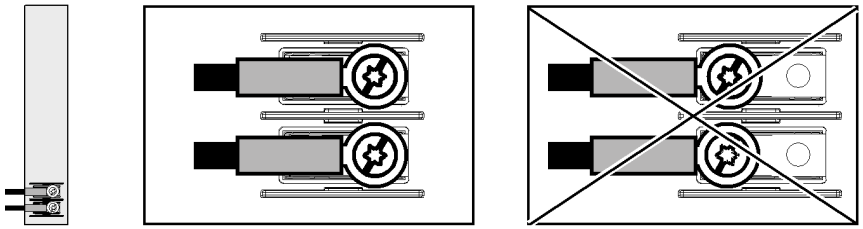
The HLC DC bus capacitor unit is installed next to KCU.

DC bus connection

- Line cross section: **≥ 6 mm²**
- Length: **≤ 2 m**
- Electric strength: 750 V DC
- Insulate ring cable lugs and connection cables with heat shrink sleeve.

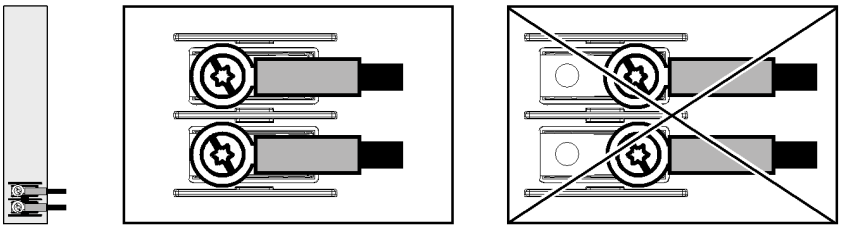
  Make sure the heat shrink sleeve overlaps sufficiently with the cable jacket so that IP20 finger protection is achieved.
- Twist cables of DC bus connection.
- Cables are always installed at the HLC DC bus capacitor unit.

  Installing the cables with **cable outlet to the left**:



DA000742v01_nn.FH11

Installing the cables with **cable outlet to the right**:



DA000743v01_nn.FH11

Mains filter

Mains filter for ctrlX DRIVE devices with nominal current < 80 A:

XNF1-1* -0100N-E0080

Place mains filter as near as possible to the ctrlX DRIVE device.

HNF/NFD/NFE filters are not allowed. Observe the allowed leakage capacitances of the mains filters in combination with IndraDrive Mi (drive controllers, cable lengths).

HLC DC bus capacitor unit

The HLC01.1C DC bus capacitor unit smooths the voltage and current ripples in the DC bus.

Operating IndraDrive Mi devices with ctrlX DRIVE devices always requires an HLC DC bus capacitor unit.

Mains fuse

Mains fuse: See ctrlX DRIVE Project Planning Manual

The mains fuse at the three-phase mains with and without mains choke is, for example, 32 A for XCS*-W0054.

KCU is protected in both branches with an internal DC voltage fuse of 30 A each.

Mains choke

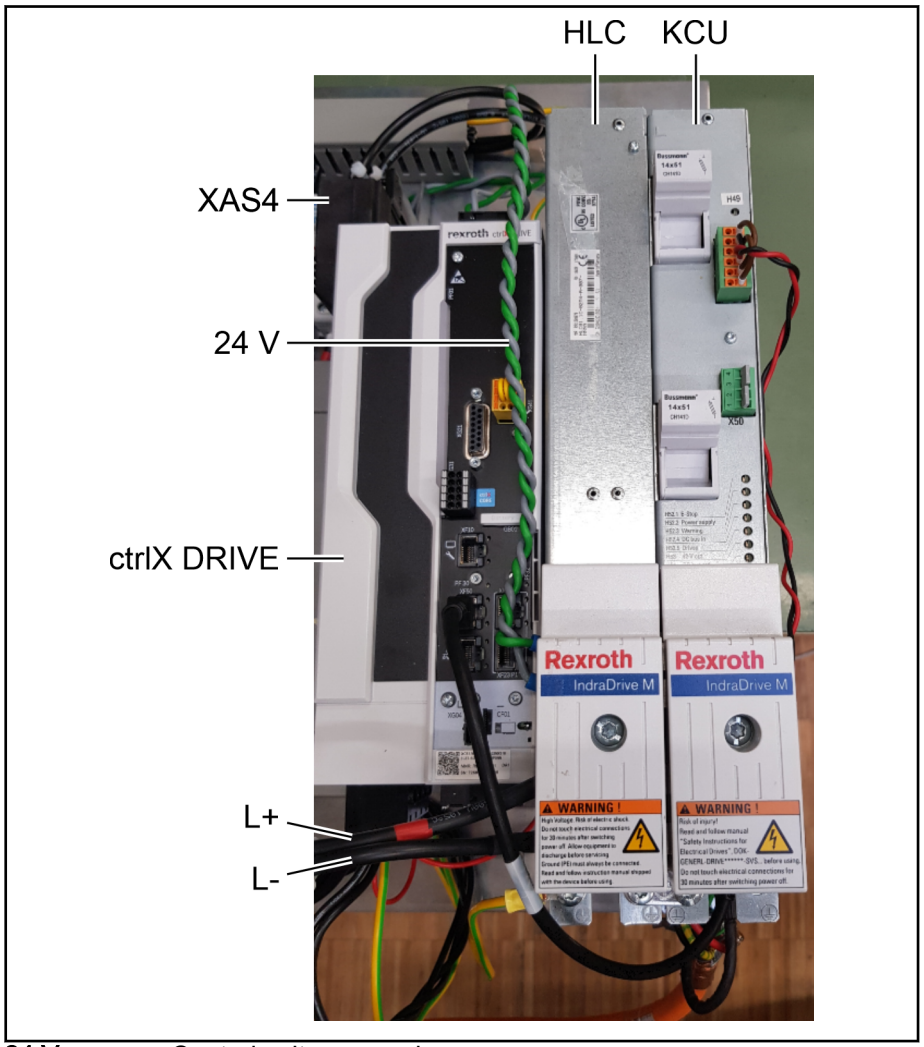
Exclusively **XNL** mains chokes are allowed.

Mains choke	U_N [V]	I_N [A]	L_N [µH]	P_V [W]	I_{max} [A]	L_{min} at I_{max}	IP
XNL1-1E-0362-N0080-B-500	520	80	362	< 210	160	50% of L_N	IP10
XNL1-1E-0170-N0146-B-500	520	146	170	< 325	292		
XNL1-1E-0135-N0185-B-500	520	185	135	< 460	370		

Tab. 14-20: Electrical data

14.5.6 Notes on project planning

- For DC bus connection with cables, exclusively use the accessory "XAS4 DC bus adapter".
- Place HLC/KCU as near as possible to the ctrlX DRIVE device.
- Twist cables of DC bus connection.
- Twist cables of 24 V control voltage supply.
- Make sure the hybrid cable has a good shield connection.
- Connect ctrlX DRIVE device and HLC/KCU with low impedance to the mounting plate in the control cabinet.
- Connect equipment grounding conductor with a sufficient cross section to all drive controllers, the mounting plate in the control cabinet and touchable metallic surfaces.



24 V	Control voltage supply
ctrlX DRIVE	Supply unit or converter
HLC	DC bus capacitor unit
KCU	Drive connection box
L+ L-	DC bus connection
XAS4	DC bus adapter

Fig. 14-8: ctrlX DRIVE and IndraDrive Mi

Index

Symbols

0 … 9

A

B

C

D

E

F

S

T

U

V

X

Z

Notes

Notes

Bosch Rexroth AG
Bgm.-Dr.-Nebel-Str. 2
97816 Lohr a.Main
Germany
Tel. +49 9352 18 0
Fax +49 9352 18 8400
www.boschrexroth.com/electrics

DOK-INDRV*-KCU02+KSM02-PR05-EN-P